



# USB Library

Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA)

# Table of Contents

<b>1 USB Library</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>1.1 Introduction</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>1.2 Legal Information</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>1.3 Release Notes</b>	<b>18</b>
1.3.1 Revision History	18
1.3.1.1 v2.11	18
1.3.1.2 v2.10	18
1.3.1.3 v2.9j	19
1.3.1.4 v2.9i	19
1.3.1.5 v2.9h	19
1.3.1.6 v2.9g	20
1.3.1.7 v2.9f	20
1.3.1.8 v2.9e	21
1.3.1.9 v2.9d	21
1.3.1.10 v2.9c	22
1.3.1.11 v2.9b	22
1.3.1.12 v2.9a	23
1.3.1.13 v2.9	23
1.3.1.14 v2.8	24
1.3.1.15 v2.7a	25
1.3.1.16 v2.7	25
1.3.2 What's Next	27
1.3.3 Support	27
1.3.4 Online Reference and Resources	28
1.3.5 Device (Slave) Demo Board Support and Limitations	28
1.3.6 Host Demo Board Support and Limitations	29
1.3.7 Operating System Support and Limitations	30
1.3.8 Tool Information	32
1.3.9 Library Migration	32
1.3.9.1 From v2.10 to v2.11	32
1.3.9.2 From v2.9j to v2.10	32
1.3.9.3 From v2.9i to v2.9j	33
1.3.9.4 From v2.9h to v2.9i	33
1.3.9.5 From v2.9g to v2.9h	34
1.3.9.6 From v2.9f to v2.9g	34
1.3.9.7 From v2.9e to v2.9f	34
1.3.9.8 From v2.9d to v2.9e	34

1.3.9.9 From v2.9c to v2.9d	34
1.3.9.10 From v2.9b to v2.9c	34
1.3.9.11 From v2.9a to v2.9b	34
1.3.9.12 From v2.9 to v2.9a	34
1.3.9.13 From v2.8 to v2.9	34
1.3.9.14 From v2.7a to v2.8	34
1.3.9.15 From v2.7 to v2.7a	35
1.3.9.16 From v2.6a to v2.7	35
1.3.9.17 From v2.6 to v2.6a	35
1.3.9.18 From v2.5 to v2.6	35
<b>1.4 Library Interface</b>	<b>37</b>
1.4.1 Device/Peripheral	37
1.4.1.1 Device Stack	37
1.4.1.1.1 Functions	37
1.4.1.1.1.1 USB_APPLICATION_EVENT_HANDLER Function	40
1.4.1.1.1.2 USBCancelIO Function	40
1.4.1.1.1.3 USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage Function	41
1.4.1.1.1.4 USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage Function	41
1.4.1.1.1.5 USBDeferINDataStage Function	41
1.4.1.1.1.6 USBDeferOUTDataStage Function	43
1.4.1.1.1.7 USBDeferStatusStage Function	44
1.4.1.1.1.8 USBDeviceAttach Function	44
1.4.1.1.1.9 USBDeviceDetach Function	45
1.4.1.1.1.10 USBDeviceInit Function	46
1.4.1.1.1.11 USBDeviceTasks Function	47
1.4.1.1.1.12 USBEnableEndpoint Function	48
1.4.1.1.1.13 USBEP0Receive Function	49
1.4.1.1.1.14 USBEP0SendRAMPtr Function	49
1.4.1.1.1.15 USBEP0SendROMPtr Function	50
1.4.1.1.1.16 USBEP0Transmit Function	50
1.4.1.1.1.17 USBGetDeviceState Function	51
1.4.1.1.1.18 USBGetNextHandle Function	52
1.4.1.1.1.19 USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus Function	53
1.4.1.1.1.20 USBGetSuspendState Function	54
1.4.1.1.1.21 USBHandleBusy Function	55
1.4.1.1.1.22 USBHandleGetAddr Function	56
1.4.1.1.1.23 USBHandleGetLength Function	56
1.4.1.1.1.24 USBINDataStageDeferred Function	57
1.4.1.1.1.25 USBIsBusSuspended Function	57
1.4.1.1.1.26 USBIsDeviceSuspended Function	58
1.4.1.1.1.27 USBOUTDataStageDeferred Function	59
1.4.1.1.1.28 USBRxOnePacket Function	59

1.4.1.1.1.29 USBSoftDetach Function	60
1.4.1.1.1.30 USBStallEndpoint Function	60
1.4.1.1.1.31 USBTransferOnePacket Function	61
1.4.1.1.1.32 USBTxOnePacket Function	62
1.4.1.1.2 Data Types and Constants	63
1.4.1.1.2.1 USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS Type	63
1.4.1.1.2.2 USB_DEVICE_STATE Type	64
1.4.1.1.2.3 DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t Macro	64
1.4.1.1.2.4 DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t Macro	64
1.4.1.1.2.5 DESC_CONFIG_WORD Macro	64
1.4.1.1.2.6 USB_EP0_BUSY Macro	65
1.4.1.1.2.7 USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO Macro	65
1.4.1.1.2.8 USB_EP0_NO_DATA Macro	65
1.4.1.1.2.9 USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS Macro	65
1.4.1.1.2.10 USB_EP0_RAM Macro	65
1.4.1.1.2.11 USB_EP0_ROM Macro	66
1.4.1.1.2.12 USB_HANDLE Macro	66
1.4.1.1.3 usb_device.h	66
1.4.1.2 Audio Function Driver	69
1.4.1.2.1 Functions	69
1.4.1.2.1.1 USBCheckAudioRequest Function	70
1.4.1.2.2 usb_device_audio.h	70
1.4.1.3 CDC Function Driver	70
1.4.1.3.1 usb_device_cdc.h	71
1.4.1.3.2 Functions	72
1.4.1.3.2.1 CDCInitEP Function	73
1.4.1.3.2.2 CDCNotificationHandler Function	74
1.4.1.3.2.3 CDCTxService Function	74
1.4.1.3.2.4 getsUSBUSART Function	75
1.4.1.3.2.5 putsUSBUSART Function	76
1.4.1.3.2.6 putsUSBUSART Function	77
1.4.1.3.2.7 putUSBUSART Function	77
1.4.1.3.2.8 USBCDCEventHandler Function	78
1.4.1.3.2.9 USBCheckCDCRequest Function	78
1.4.1.3.2.10 CDCSetBaudRate Macro	79
1.4.1.3.2.11 CDCSetCharacterFormat Macro	79
1.4.1.3.2.12 CDCSetDataSize Macro	80
1.4.1.3.2.13 CDCSetLineCoding Macro	80
1.4.1.3.2.14 CDCSetParity Macro	81
1.4.1.3.2.15 mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady Macro	81
1.4.1.3.2.16 mUSBUSARTTxRam Macro	82
1.4.1.3.2.17 mUSBUSARTTxRom Macro	82

1.4.1.3.2.18 USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady Macro	83
1.4.1.3.3 Data Types and Constants	84
1.4.1.3.3.1 NUM_STOP_BITS_1 Macro	84
1.4.1.3.3.2 NUM_STOP_BITS_1_5 Macro	84
1.4.1.3.3.3 NUM_STOP_BITS_2 Macro	84
1.4.1.3.3.4 PARITY_EVEN Macro	85
1.4.1.3.3.5 PARITY_MARK Macro	85
1.4.1.3.3.6 PARITY_NONE Macro	85
1.4.1.3.3.7 PARITY_ODD Macro	85
1.4.1.3.3.8 PARITY_SPACE Macro	85
1.4.1.4 HID Function Driver	86
1.4.1.4.1 Functions	86
1.4.1.4.1.1 HIDRxHandleBusy Macro	86
1.4.1.4.1.2 HIDRxPacket Macro	87
1.4.1.4.1.3 HIDTxHandleBusy Macro	87
1.4.1.4.1.4 HIDTxPacket Macro	88
1.4.1.4.2 Data Types and Constants	89
1.4.1.4.2.1 BOOT_INTF_SUBCLASS Macro	89
1.4.1.4.2.2 BOOT_PROTOCOL Macro	89
1.4.1.4.2.3 HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD Macro	89
1.4.1.4.2.4 HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE Macro	90
1.4.1.4.2.5 HID_PROTOCOL_NONE Macro	90
1.4.1.4.3 usb_device_hid.h	90
1.4.1.5 MSD Function Driver	91
1.4.1.5.1 Functions	91
1.4.1.5.1.1 MSDTasks Function	91
1.4.1.5.1.2 USBCheckMSDRequest Function	91
1.4.1.5.1.3 USBMSDInit Function	91
1.4.1.5.2 Data Types and Constants	92
1.4.1.5.2.1 LUN_FUNCTIONS Structure	92
1.4.1.5.3 usb_device_msd.h	93
1.4.1.6 Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver	93
1.4.1.6.1 Functions	94
1.4.1.6.1.1 USBCheckVendorRequest Function	94
1.4.1.6.1.2 USBGEN_H Macro	95
1.4.1.6.1.3 USBGenRead Macro	95
1.4.1.6.1.4 USBGenWrite Macro	95
1.4.1.6.2 usb_device_generic.h	96
1.4.2 Embedded Host API	97
1.4.2.1 Embedded Host Stack	97
1.4.2.1.1 Functions	97
1.4.2.1.1.1 USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER Function	98

1.4.2.1.1.2 USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER Function	99
1.4.2.1.1.3 USB_HostInterruptHandler Function	100
1.4.2.1.1.4 USBHostClearEndpointErrors Function	100
1.4.2.1.1.5 USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver Function	101
1.4.2.1.1.6 USBHostDeviceStatus Function	101
1.4.2.1.1.7 USBHostInit Function	102
1.4.2.1.1.8 USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate Function	103
1.4.2.1.1.9 USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy Function	103
1.4.2.1.1.10 USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset Function	104
1.4.2.1.1.11 USBHostIssueDeviceRequest Function	104
1.4.2.1.1.12 USBHostRead Function	105
1.4.2.1.1.13 USBHostResetDevice Function	106
1.4.2.1.1.14 USBHostResumeDevice Function	106
1.4.2.1.1.15 USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration Function	107
1.4.2.1.1.16 USBHostSetNAKTimeout Function	107
1.4.2.1.1.17 USBHostShutdown Function	108
1.4.2.1.1.18 USBHostSuspendDevice Function	108
1.4.2.1.1.19 USBHostTasks Function	109
1.4.2.1.1.20 USBHostTerminateTransfer Function	110
1.4.2.1.1.21 USBHostTransferIsComplete Function	110
1.4.2.1.1.22 USBHostVbusEvent Function	111
1.4.2.1.1.23 USBHostWrite Function	111
1.4.2.1.1.24 USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor Macro	112
1.4.2.1.1.25 USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor Macro	113
1.4.2.1.1.26 USBHostGetStringDescriptor Macro	113
1.4.2.1.1.27 USBHostReadIsochronous Macro	114
1.4.2.1.1.28 USBHostWriteIsochronous Macro	115
1.4.2.1.2 Data Types and Constants	116
1.4.2.1.2.1 CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE Structure	117
1.4.2.1.2.2 HOST_TRANSFER_DATA Structure	118
1.4.2.1.2.3 TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES Type	118
1.4.2.1.2.4 USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER Type	118
1.4.2.1.2.5 USB_CLIENT_INIT Type	119
1.4.2.1.2.6 USB_TPL Type	120
1.4.2.1.2.7 INIT_CL_SC_P Macro	120
1.4.2.1.2.8 INIT_VID_PID Macro	120
1.4.2.1.2.9 TPL_ALLOW_HNP Macro	120
1.4.2.1.2.10 TPL_CLASS_DRV Macro	120
1.4.2.1.2.11 TPL_EP0_ONLY_CUSTOM_DRIVER Macro	121
1.4.2.1.2.12 TPL_IGNORE_CLASS Macro	121
1.4.2.1.2.13 TPL_IGNORE_PID Macro	121
1.4.2.1.2.14 TPL_IGNORE_PROTOCOL Macro	121

1.4.2.1.2.15 TPL_IGNORE_SUBCLASS Macro	121
1.4.2.1.2.16 TPL_SET_CONFIG Macro	122
1.4.2.1.2.17 USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER Macro	122
1.4.2.1.2.18 USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER Macro	122
1.4.2.1.2.19 USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS Macro	122
1.4.2.1.2.20 USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES Macro	122
1.4.2.1.2.21 USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS Macro	123
1.4.2.1.2.22 USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES Macro	123
1.4.2.1.2.23 USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS Macro	123
1.4.2.1.3 usb_host.h	123
1.4.2.1.4 __USBHOST_H__ Macro	126
1.4.2.2 CDC Client Driver	126
1.4.2.2.1 Functions	128
1.4.2.2.1.1 USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request Function	128
1.4.2.2.1.2 USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data Function	129
1.4.2.2.1.3 USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data Function	129
1.4.2.2.1.4 USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect Function	130
1.4.2.2.1.5 USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete Function	130
1.4.2.2.1.6 USBHostCDCDeviceStatus Function	131
1.4.2.2.1.7 USBHostCDCEventHandler Function	131
1.4.2.2.1.8 USBHostCDCInitAddress Function	132
1.4.2.2.1.9 USBHostCDCInitialize Function	132
1.4.2.2.1.10 USBHostCDCResetDevice Function	133
1.4.2.2.1.11 USBHostCDCTasks Function	133
1.4.2.2.1.12 USBHostCDCTransfer Function	134
1.4.2.2.1.13 USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete Function	134
1.4.2.2.2 Data Types and Constants	135
1.4.2.2.2.1 COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS Structure	137
1.4.2.2.2.2 DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS Structure	138
1.4.2.2.2.3 USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC Structure	138
1.4.2.2.2.4 USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC Structure	139
1.4.2.2.2.5 USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP Union	139
1.4.2.2.2.6 USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO Structure	140
1.4.2.2.2.7 USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC Structure	141
1.4.2.2.2.8 USB_CDC_LINE_CODING Union	141
1.4.2.2.2.9 USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC Structure	142
1.4.2.2.2.10 DEVICE_CLASS_CDC Macro	142
1.4.2.2.2.11 EVENT_CDC_ATTACH Macro	142
1.4.2.2.2.12 EVENT_CDC_COMM_READ_DONE Macro	142
1.4.2.2.2.13 EVENT_CDC_COMM_WRITE_DONE Macro	143
1.4.2.2.2.14 EVENT_CDC_DATA_READ_DONE Macro	143
1.4.2.2.2.15 EVENT_CDC_DATA_WRITE_DONE Macro	143

1.4.2.2.2.16 EVENT_CDC_NAK_TIMEOUT Macro	143
1.4.2.2.2.17 EVENT_CDC_NONE Macro	143
1.4.2.2.2.18 EVENT_CDC_OFFSET Macro	144
1.4.2.2.2.19 EVENT_CDC_RESET Macro	144
1.4.2.2.2.20 USB_CDC_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	144
1.4.2.2.2.21 USB_CDC_ATM_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	144
1.4.2.2.2.22 USB_CDC_CAPI_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	144
1.4.2.2.2.23 USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR Macro	145
1.4.2.2.2.24 USB_CDC_COMM_INTF Macro	145
1.4.2.2.2.25 USB_CDC_COMMAND_FAILED Macro	145
1.4.2.2.2.26 USB_CDC_COMMAND_PASSED Macro	145
1.4.2.2.2.27 USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_LENGTH Macro	145
1.4.2.2.2.28 USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT Macro	146
1.4.2.2.2.29 USB_CDC_CS_INTERFACE Macro	146
1.4.2.2.2.30 USB_CDC_DATA_INTF Macro	146
1.4.2.2.2.31 USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY Macro	146
1.4.2.2.2.32 USB_CDC_DEVICE_DETACHED Macro	146
1.4.2.2.2.33 USB_CDC_DEVICE_HOLDING Macro	147
1.4.2.2.2.34 USB_CDC_DEVICE_MANAGEMENT Macro	147
1.4.2.2.2.35 USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND Macro	147
1.4.2.2.2.36 USB_CDC_DIRECT_LINE_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	147
1.4.2.2.2.37 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_ACM Macro	147
1.4.2.2.2.38 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT Macro	148
1.4.2.2.2.39 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION Macro	148
1.4.2.2.2.40 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_DLM Macro	148
1.4.2.2.2.41 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_HEADER Macro	148
1.4.2.2.2.42 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES Macro	148
1.4.2.2.2.43 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES Macro	149
1.4.2.2.2.44 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER Macro	149
1.4.2.2.2.45 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION Macro	149
1.4.2.2.2.46 USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL Macro	149
1.4.2.2.2.47 USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL Macro	149
1.4.2.2.2.48 USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	150
1.4.2.2.2.49 USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE Macro	150
1.4.2.2.2.50 USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST Macro	150
1.4.2.2.2.51 USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING Macro	150
1.4.2.2.2.52 USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST Macro	150
1.4.2.2.2.53 USB_CDC_INITIALIZING Macro	151
1.4.2.2.2.54 USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR Macro	151
1.4.2.2.2.55 USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH Macro	151
1.4.2.2.2.56 USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE Macro	151
1.4.2.2.2.57 USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL Macro	152

1.4.2.2.58 USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	152
1.4.2.2.59 USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL Macro	152
1.4.2.2.60 USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR Macro	152
1.4.2.2.61 USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING Macro	152
1.4.2.2.62 USB_CDC_OBEX Macro	153
1.4.2.2.63 USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR Macro	153
1.4.2.2.64 USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD Macro	153
1.4.2.2.65 USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR Macro	153
1.4.2.2.66 USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE Macro	153
1.4.2.2.67 USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK Macro	154
1.4.2.2.68 USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND Macro	154
1.4.2.2.69 USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE Macro	154
1.4.2.2.70 USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE Macro	154
1.4.2.2.71 USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING Macro	154
1.4.2.2.72 USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	155
1.4.2.2.73 USB_CDC_V25TER Macro	155
1.4.2.2.74 USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL Macro	155
1.4.2.2.3 usb_host_cdc.h	155
1.4.2.2.4 usb_host_cdc_interface.h	158
1.4.2.3 HID Client Driver	158
1.4.2.3.1 Functions	159
1.4.2.3.1.1 USBHostHID_ApiFindBit Function	160
1.4.2.3.1.2 USBHostHID_ApiFindValue Function	160
1.4.2.3.1.3 USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum Function	161
1.4.2.3.1.4 USBHostHID_ApiImportData Function	161
1.4.2.3.1.5 USBHostHID_HasUsage Function	162
1.4.2.3.1.6 USBHostHIDDeviceDetect Function	162
1.4.2.3.1.7 USBHostHIDDeviceStatus Function	163
1.4.2.3.1.8 USBHostHIDEventHandler Function	163
1.4.2.3.1.9 USBHostHIDInitialize Function	164
1.4.2.3.1.10 USBHostHIDResetDevice Function	164
1.4.2.3.1.11 USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait Function	165
1.4.2.3.1.12 USBHostHIDTasks Function	165
1.4.2.3.1.13 USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer Function	166
1.4.2.3.1.14 USBHostHIDTransfer Function	166
1.4.2.3.1.15 USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete Function	167
1.4.2.3.1.16 USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect Macro	167
1.4.2.3.1.17 USBHostHID_ApiGetReport Macro	167
1.4.2.3.1.18 USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice Macro	168
1.4.2.3.1.19 USBHostHID_ApiSendReport Macro	168
1.4.2.3.1.20 USBHostHID_ApiTransferIsComplete Macro	168
1.4.2.3.1.21 USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo Macro	168

1.4.2.3.1.22 USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers Macro	169
1.4.2.3.1.23 USBHostHIDRead Macro	169
1.4.2.3.1.24 USBHostHIDWrite Macro	170
1.4.2.3.2 Data Types and Constants	170
1.4.2.3.2.1 HID_COLLECTION Structure	173
1.4.2.3.2.2 HID_DATA_DETAILS Structure	174
1.4.2.3.2.3 HID_DESIGITEM Structure	174
1.4.2.3.2.4 HID_GLOBALS Structure	175
1.4.2.3.2.5 HID_ITEM_INFO Structure	176
1.4.2.3.2.6 HID_REPORT Structure	176
1.4.2.3.2.7 HID_REPORTITEM Structure	177
1.4.2.3.2.8 HID_STRINGITEM Structure	177
1.4.2.3.2.9 HID_TRANSFER_DATA Structure	178
1.4.2.3.2.10 HID_USAGEITEM Structure	178
1.4.2.3.2.11 HID_USER_DATA_SIZE Type	179
1.4.2.3.2.12 HIDReportTypeEnum Enumeration	179
1.4.2.3.2.13 USB_HID_DEVICE_ID Structure	179
1.4.2.3.2.14 USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO Structure	180
1.4.2.3.2.15 USB_HID_ITEM_LIST Structure	181
1.4.2.3.2.16 USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR Enumeration	182
1.4.2.3.2.17 deviceRptInfo Variable	183
1.4.2.3.2.18 itemListPtrs Variable	183
1.4.2.3.2.19 DEVICE_CLASS_HID Macro	183
1.4.2.3.2.20 DSC_HID Macro	184
1.4.2.3.2.21 DSC_PHY Macro	184
1.4.2.3.2.22 EVENT_HID_ATTACH Macro	184
1.4.2.3.2.23 EVENT_HID_BAD_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR Macro	184
1.4.2.3.2.24 EVENT_HID_DETACH Macro	184
1.4.2.3.2.25 EVENT_HID_NONE Macro	185
1.4.2.3.2.26 EVENT_HID_OFFSET Macro	185
1.4.2.3.2.27 EVENT_HID_READ_DONE Macro	185
1.4.2.3.2.28 EVENT_HID_RESET Macro	185
1.4.2.3.2.29 EVENT_HID_RESET_ERROR Macro	185
1.4.2.3.2.30 EVENT_HID_RPT_DESC_PARSED Macro	186
1.4.2.3.2.31 EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE Macro	186
1.4.2.3.2.32 HOST_DSC_RPT Macro	186
1.4.2.3.2.33 USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR Macro	186
1.4.2.3.2.34 USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED Macro	186
1.4.2.3.2.35 USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED Macro	187
1.4.2.3.2.36 USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY Macro	187
1.4.2.3.2.37 USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED Macro	187
1.4.2.3.2.38 USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING Macro	187

1.4.2.3.2.39	USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND Macro	187
1.4.2.3.2.40	USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST Macro	188
1.4.2.3.2.41	USB_HID_INITIALIZING Macro	188
1.4.2.3.2.42	USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR Macro	188
1.4.2.3.2.43	USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR Macro	188
1.4.2.3.2.44	USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING Macro	188
1.4.2.3.2.45	USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR Macro	189
1.4.2.3.2.46	USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD Macro	189
1.4.2.3.2.47	USB_HID_RESET_ERROR Macro	189
1.4.2.3.2.48	USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE Macro	189
1.4.2.3.2.49	USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR Macro	190
1.4.2.3.3	usb_host_hid.h	190
1.4.2.3.4	usb_host_hid_parser.h	192
1.4.2.4	Mass Storage Client Driver	194
1.4.2.4.1	Functions	194
1.4.2.4.1.1	USBHostMSDDeviceStatus Function	195
1.4.2.4.1.2	USBHostMSDEventHandler Function	195
1.4.2.4.1.3	USBHostMSDInitialize Function	196
1.4.2.4.1.4	USBHostMSDResetDevice Function	196
1.4.2.4.1.5	USBHostMSDTasks Function	197
1.4.2.4.1.6	USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer Function	198
1.4.2.4.1.7	USBHostMSDTransfer Function	198
1.4.2.4.1.8	USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete Function	199
1.4.2.4.1.9	USBHostMSDRead Macro	199
1.4.2.4.1.10	USBHostMSDWrite Macro	200
1.4.2.4.2	Data Types and Constants	200
1.4.2.4.2.1	DEVICE_CLASS_MASS_STORAGE Macro	201
1.4.2.4.2.2	DEVICE_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL_BULK_ONLY Macro	201
1.4.2.4.2.3	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_CD_DVD Macro	202
1.4.2.4.2.4	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_FLOPPY_INTERFACE Macro	202
1.4.2.4.2.5	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_RBC Macro	202
1.4.2.4.2.6	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_REMOVABLE Macro	202
1.4.2.4.2.7	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_SCSI Macro	202
1.4.2.4.2.8	DEVICE_SUBCLASS_TAPE_DRIVE Macro	203
1.4.2.4.2.9	EVENT_MSD_ATTACH Macro	203
1.4.2.4.2.10	EVENT_MSD_MAX_LUN Macro	203
1.4.2.4.2.11	EVENT_MSD_NONE Macro	203
1.4.2.4.2.12	EVENT_MSD_OFFSET Macro	203
1.4.2.4.2.13	EVENT_MSD_RESET Macro	204
1.4.2.4.2.14	EVENT_MSD_TRANSFER Macro	204
1.4.2.4.2.15	MSD_COMMAND_FAILED Macro	204
1.4.2.4.2.16	MSD_COMMAND_PASSED Macro	204

1.4.2.4.2.17 MSD_PHASE_ERROR Macro	204
1.4.2.4.2.18 USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR Macro	205
1.4.2.4.2.19 USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED Macro	205
1.4.2.4.2.20 USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED Macro	205
1.4.2.4.2.21 USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR Macro	205
1.4.2.4.2.22 USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY Macro	205
1.4.2.4.2.23 USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED Macro	206
1.4.2.4.2.24 USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND Macro	206
1.4.2.4.2.25 USB_MSD_ERROR Macro	206
1.4.2.4.2.26 USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE Macro	206
1.4.2.4.2.27 USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST Macro	206
1.4.2.4.2.28 USB_MSD_INITIALIZING Macro	207
1.4.2.4.2.29 USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN Macro	207
1.4.2.4.2.30 USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR Macro	207
1.4.2.4.2.31 USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING Macro	207
1.4.2.4.2.32 USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY Macro	207
1.4.2.4.2.33 USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR Macro	208
1.4.2.4.2.34 USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR Macro	208
1.4.2.4.2.35 USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE Macro	208
1.4.2.4.3 usb_host_msd.h	208
<b>1.5 Demo Board Information</b>	<b>210</b>
1.5.1 Low Pin Count USB Development Board	210
1.5.2 PICDEM FS USB Board	212
1.5.3 PIC18 Starter Kit	213
1.5.4 PIC18F46J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	214
1.5.5 PIC18F47J53 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	215
1.5.6 PIC18F87J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM) Demo Board	216
1.5.7 PIC24F Starter Kit	217
1.5.8 PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board	217
1.5.9 Explorer 16	219
1.5.9.1 PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	220
1.5.9.2 PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	220
1.5.9.3 PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	220
1.5.9.4 PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	221
1.5.9.5 dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	221
1.5.9.6 USB PICTail Plus Daughter Board	221
<b>1.6 Demos</b>	<b>223</b>
1.6.1 Device - Audio Microphone Basic Demo	223
1.6.2 Device - Audio MIDI Demo	225
1.6.2.1 Garage Band '08 [Macintosh Computers]	225
1.6.2.2 Using Linux MultiMedia Studio (LMMS) [Linux and Windows Computers]	227

1.6.3 Device - Boot Loader - HID	229
1.6.3.1 Customizing for an Application	230
1.6.3.1.1 Importance of Change the VID/PID	230
1.6.3.1.2 Safe Boot Loading Considerations	231
1.6.3.1.3 Configuration Bits	231
1.6.3.1.4 Application Version Information	232
1.6.3.1.5 Host Application Responsibilities	232
1.6.3.2 Implementation Details	233
1.6.3.2.1 Command Set	233
1.6.3.2.1.1 QUERY_DEVICE	233
1.6.3.2.1.2 UNLOCK_CONFIG	235
1.6.3.2.1.3 ERASE_DEVICE	235
1.6.3.2.1.4 PROGRAM_DEVICE	236
1.6.3.2.1.5 PROGRAM_COMPLETE	236
1.6.3.2.1.6 GET_DATA	236
1.6.3.2.1.7 RESET_DEVICE	237
1.6.3.2.1.8 SIGN_FLASH	237
1.6.3.2.1.9 QUERY_EXTENDED_INFO	238
1.6.3.2.2 Boot Loader Entry	238
1.6.3.2.2.1 Input Button/Hardware Entry	238
1.6.3.2.2.2 Software/Application Entry	239
1.6.3.2.3 Processor Specific Implementation Details	240
1.6.3.2.3.1 PIC16 and PIC18	240
1.6.3.2.3.2 PIC24F	249
1.6.3.2.4 Flash Signature	259
1.6.4 Device - CDC Basic Demo	260
1.6.4.1 Windows	261
1.6.4.2 Linux	261
1.6.4.3 Macintosh	262
1.6.5 Device - HID - Custom Demo	263
1.6.6 Device - HID - Digitizer Demos	266
1.6.7 Device - HID - Joystick Demo	267
1.6.8 Device - CDC - Serial Emulator	268
1.6.9 Device - HID - Keyboard Demo	269
1.6.10 Device - HID - Mouse Demo	269
1.6.11 Device - HID - Uninterruptible Power Supply	270
1.6.12 Device - Mass Storage - Internal Flash Demo	270
1.6.12.1 Troubleshooting	271
1.6.13 Device - Mass Storage - SD Card Reader	272
1.6.14 Device - Vendor Driver Basic Demo	272
1.6.14.1 Windows	273
1.6.14.2 Linux	274

1.6.14.3 Android 3.1+	275
1.6.15 Device - Vendor High Bandwidth Demo	277
1.6.16 Host - CDC Serial Demo	278
1.6.17 Host - HID - Keyboard Demo	279
1.6.18 Host - HID - Mouse Demo	279
1.6.19 Host - Mass Storage - Thumb Drive Data Logger	280
1.6.20 Host - Mass Storage (MSD) - Simple Demo	281
1.6.21 Configuring the Demo	281
1.6.22 Running the Demo	282
1.6.23 Supported Demo Boards	283
<b>1.7 Appendix (FAQs, Important Information, Reference Material, etc.)</b>	<b>285</b>
1.7.1 Using breakpoints in USB host applications	285
1.7.2 Notes on .inf Files	288
1.7.3 Vendor IDs (VID) and Product IDs (PID)	288
1.7.4 Using a Diff Tool	288
1.7.5 Driver Signing and Windows 8	289
1.7.5.1 What are "Signed" Drivers?	289
1.7.5.2 Minimum Driver Signature Requirements	290
1.7.5.3 Using Older Drivers with Windows 8	290
1.7.5.4 Driver Signatures in the Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA) Projects	292
1.7.5.5 Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate	293
1.7.5.6 Code Signing Certificates (Other Uses)	293
1.7.5.7 Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages	293
<b>Index</b>	<b>296</b>

# USB Library

## 1 USB Library

# 1.1 Introduction

A brief summary of what this library is and what it contains.

## Description

The USB specification was developed to replace many other non-standard buses and communication ports that used to be found on personal computers. Since its release USB has become standard on nearly all PCs and on many phones, tablets, TVs and various other hardware as a means for standardized communication.

The USB specification is available from the USB Implementer's Forum (USBIF) website, [www.usb.org](http://www.usb.org). The USB Library provided by Microchip interfaces to the USB modules on many Microchip microcontroller products providing a basic interface for developers to use to enable USB in their products. Beyond the physical layer interface, the USB Library also implements many of the protocol layers defined in the USB specification assisting designers to create products faster.

The examples include applications for both USB peripherals as well as embedded host examples. For USB peripheral demos, example .inf files and PC code are also provided where applicable.

## 1.2 Legal Information

Legal information pertinent to this project. Including the software license agreement and trademark information.

### Description

#### Software License Agreement

(c) 2004 - 2014 Microchip Technology Inc.

Microchip licenses this software to you solely for use with Microchip products. The software is owned by Microchip and its licensors, and is protected under applicable copyright laws. All rights reserved.

SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" MICROCHIP EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROCHIP BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST PROFITS OR LOST DATA, HARM TO YOUR EQUIPMENT, COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS, TECHNOLOGY OR SERVICES, ANY CLAIMS BY THIRD PARTIES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY DEFENSE THEREOF), ANY CLAIMS FOR INDEMNITY OR CONTRIBUTION, OR OTHER SIMILAR COSTS.

To the fullest extent allowed by law, Microchip and its licensors liability shall not exceed the amount of fees, if any, that you have paid directly to Microchip to use this software.

MICROCHIP PROVIDES THIS SOFTWARE CONDITIONALLY UPON YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

#### Trademark Information

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, MPLAB, and PIC are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

PICDEM and PICtail are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, and Authenticode are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

SD is a trademark of the SD Association in the U.S.A and other countries

---

## 1.3 Release Notes

Useful information about this release including revision history, what's next, library migration, demo board support information, operating system support information, links to tools, support, and other online references.

### Description

---

### 1.3.1 Revision History

This section describes in more detail the changes made between versions of the MCHPFSUSB stack.

### Description

This section describes in more detail the changes made between versions of the MCHPFSUSB stack. This section generally discusses only changes made to the core files (those found in the <install directory>\Microchip folder). This section generally doesn't include changes to the demo projects unless those changes are important to know about. This section also doesn't encompass minor changes to the stack files such as arrangement or locations of definitions or any other organizational changes.

For more information about how to compare the actual source of two different revisions, please see the Appendix - Using a diff tool section of this document.

#### 1.3.1.1 v2.11

- Added USB Device CDC serial emulator demo for 8-bit devices
- Added USB Windows driver installation/removal tools under: \apps\usb\device\utilities
- Implemented HID idle rate control in USB Device HID Keyboard demo
- Modifications to PIC16F145x USB HID device bootloader memory mapping
- Data transfer rate improvements in USB device msd\_sd\_card\_reader demo
- Bug fixes and project cleanup

#### 1.3.1.2 v2.10

- Major changes to folder structure
- Changed all type definitions and API used by the stack from GenericTypeDefs.h to standard C99 types.
- Better hardware abstraction of the demo board specific features from the example application code.
- Addition of new demo board platforms.
- Expanded demo support for some existing platforms
- PIC32 product support removed. PIC32 products are supported by the MPLAB(R)Harmony Framework ([www.microchip.com/Harmony](http://www.microchip.com/Harmony)).

### 1.3.1.3 v2.9j

Updated HID bootloader for PIC18 devices. Added software entry point at 0x001C and robustness features to allow re-entry into bootloader in the event of interrupted erase/program/verify sequence.

- Core USB stack files affected: None
- Individual project files: All PIC18 HID bootloader projects were updated. Additionally, all main.c (or equivalent) USB device project demo files were updated, to reserve the 0x1006 and 0x1016 flash words for storing the "flash signature" and application firmware version values. For usage details, see the inline comments at the top of the main.c file in the HID bootloader firmware project.
- Updated the cross platform PC application software intended to be used with the bootloader firmware. The updated version should be built with Qt 5.0.2 using MinGW 32-bit.

Added "Obtaining a WHQL Certified USB Driver Package" document to the \Microchip\Help folder, along with a reseller rights request form necessary for doing Microsoft Driver Update Acceptable (DUA) submissions to allow re-certification of drivers.

- stack files affected: none, documentation only

### 1.3.1.4 v2.9i

Android files changed to request for protocol version and to wait for a user configurable startup delay.

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c

In the WinUSB based device projects, changed Microsoft specific OS descriptors to reside in ROM

- stack files affected: none (only demo specific usb\_config.h and usb\_descriptors.c files affected)

Added conditional compilation definitions to support PIC16F1454, PIC16F1455, and 'LF' flavored PIC16F145x family devices

- stack files affected: usb\_function\_cdc.c

### 1.3.1.5 v2.9h

Android driver condensed to remove protocol specific drivers.

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c, usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.c (removed), usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1\_local.h (removed)

Support added for registering Android HID reports.

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c, usb\_host\_android.h

Added support to ignore protocol, subclass, and/or class in the TPL for a USB host

- stack files affected: usb\_host.c, usb\_host.h

Added support for a client driver to register for EP0 traffic only

- stack files affected: usb\_host.c, usb\_host.h

Removed unused variables

- stack files affected: usb\_function\_audio.c, usb\_function\_cdc.c

Added support for vendor class specific requests for MS descriptors

- stack files affected: usb\_function\_generic.c, usb\_function\_generic.h, usb\_device.c

Fixed folder capitalization issue:

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_printer\_primitives.c

Fixed an issue where if a USB host received a report of 0 configurations available on a device, it would cause system issues.

- stack files affected: usb\_host.c

### 1.3.1.6 v2.9g

Android audio and HID support added to accessory driver

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c, usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.c, usb\_host\_android.h, usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.h, usb\_host\_android\_local.h, usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1\_local.h

Cleaning up unused variables in the stack

- stack files affected: usb\_device\_cdc.c, usb\_device\_audio.c

Fixed build issue on Mac/Linux systems for printer host demo

- stack files affected: usb\_host\_printer\_primitives.c

Modifications to enable EP0 only driver

- stack files affected: usb\_host.h, usb\_host.c, usb\_host\_local.h

Modifications to allow wildcards on TPL table entries

- stack files affected: usb\_host.h, usb\_host.c

Fixed issue where a device reporting 0 configurations available would cause the host stack to crash.

- stack files affected: usb\_host.c

Added support for Microsoft OS Descriptors

- stack files affected: usb\_device.c, usb\_generic.c, usb\_generic.h

Fixed issue with interrupt enable for PIC32MX2 family devices

- stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic32.h

Write attempts to a drive that is write protected does not report the status correct.

- Stack files affected: usb\_function\_msd\_multi\_sector.c

### 1.3.1.7 v2.9f

XC16 and XC32 support added.

- stack files affected: usb\_hal.h, usb\_ch9.h, usb\_hal\_\*.h, usb\_host\_printer.h, usb\_host\_printer\_esc\_pos.h, usb\_function\_msd.c, usb\_function\_msd\_multi\_sector.c, usb\_function\_phdc\_com\_model.c, usb\_host\_printer\_esc\_pos.c, usb\_host\_printer\_pcl\_5.c, usb\_host\_printer\_postscript.c, usb\_device.c, usb\_device\_local.h, usb\_hal\_local.h, usb\_hal\_pic24.c, usb\_hal\_pic24f.c, usb\_host\_local.h, usb\_otg.c

Fixed issue with PIC32 access to USB registers not being atomic.

- stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic32.h

Support for PIC16F1459 family devices.

- stack files affected: usb\_hal.h, usb\_device.c, usb\_hal\_pic16f1.h, usb\_device\_local.h

Removed hid\_report\_in[] and hid\_report\_out[] buffers from stack files. All HID demos responsible for allocating their own data buffers.

- stack files affected: usb\_function\_hid.h, usb\_device.c

Moved part specific mapping of BDT to HAL files.

- stack files affected: usb\_hal\_dspic33e.h, usb\_hal\_pic16f1.h, usb\_hal\_pic18.h, usb\_hal\_pic24.h, usb\_hal\_pic24e.h, usb\_hal\_pic24f.h, usb\_hal\_pic32.h

### 1.3.1.8 v2.9e

1. Read-modify-write race condition in the way the USB interrupt flag was getting cleared on the PIC32 devices.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic32.h
2. Added option to disable NAK timeouts for CDC host transfers (USB\_HOST\_CDC\_NAK\_TIMEOUT)
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_cdc.c
3. The ALLOW\_GLOBAL\_VID\_AND\_PID option does not issue the EVENT\_OVERRIDE\_CLIENT\_DRIVER\_SELECTION event.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
4. USB host isochronous writes did not function correctly
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
5. USB host isochronous writes and reads could not occur during the same frame
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
6. NULL pointer dereference could occur if a malloc() call failed during device enumeration in USB host stack while creating the endpoint data structure.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
7. Optimazation settings other than -O0 for C30 could cause MSD internal flash demos not to work.
  - Stack files affected: None (Files.c in user folder updated)

### 1.3.1.9 v2.9d

1. Data event handler of Android driver not passing events to protocol handler resulting in possible memory leak.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c
2. Issues with mass storage demos on OS X 10.7 when SD-card is read-only.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_msd.c
3. Fixed compile warnings when -Wall option selected on C32
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_msd.c
4. Fixed issue with call back redirection macro for EPO request handler.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device\_local.h
5. Added configuration option to disable DTS checking in hardware
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
6. Fixed a race condition between the 1msec interrupt and the detach interrupt. If the detach interrupt occurs just before the 1msec interrupt, the interrupt handler could cause the host stack state machine to go into an unknown state requiring a reset of the system to recover. Typically only seen when rapidly attaching/detaching a device repeatedly.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
7. Added an error handling case to check for a size larger than 256.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_phdc.c
8. Write attempts to a drive that is write protected does not report the status correct.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_msd.c
9. Updated PHDC code to pass Continua testing

- Stack files affected: usb\_function\_phdc.c, usb\_function\_phdc.h, usb\_function\_phdc\_com\_model.c/.h added

### 1.3.1.10 v2.9c

1. Added example showing how to connect to custom HID, LibUSB, WinUSB, and MCHPUSB demos from an Android v3.1+ host.
  - Stack files affected: none
2. Updated libusb driver INF to be signed, so now it can be installed with Windows 7
  - Stack files affected: none
3. Some dsPIC projects not building correctly
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_dspic33e.h, usb\_hal\_pic24e.h

### 1.3.1.11 v2.9b

1. UART RX functionality fixed on several demos using the PIC24FJ256DA210 development board.
  - Stack files affected: none
2. Race condition fixed in Android OpenAccessory framework that could lead to the accessory not attaching periodically.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.c
3. Added Android Accessory workaround for when Android device attaches in accessory mode without first attaching as the manufacturer's mode (happens when accessory is reset but not detached from bus).
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.c, usb\_host\_android.c, usb\_host\_android.h
4. Fixed issue where non-supported Android protocol versions would try to enumerate.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_android.c
5. PIC18F Starter Kit MSD SD card reader demo not working correctly.
  - Stack files affected: none
6. Null pointer dereference on Android OpenAccessory detach event.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_android\_protocol\_v1.c
7. Removed the restriction of MSD drives with the VID = 0x0930 and PID = 0x6545 for the USB MSD host data logging demo. These drives now show no issues with recent robustness enhancements in the past several releases.
  - Stack files affected: none
8. Link issues on Linux and Macintosh machines for PIC18 demos. The latest versions of the C18 compiler for Linux and Macintosh change the linker and library file capitalization scheme resulting in link errors when using older linker files. Linker files updated to use latest capitalization scheme.
  - Stack files affected: none
9. Cleaned up the configuration bits sections for several processors in several demos.
  - Stack files affected: none
10. CCID demo descriptors updated to enable operation on Macintosh machines.
  - Stack files affected: none
11. Update the precompiled MSD library to support .elf files.
  - Stack files affected: none
12. PCL5 printer host would send out a 0-length packet if an empty string was passed to it. This results in some PCL5 printers to lock up. The updated driver will not send out a text string to a printer if it is empty.
  - Stack files affected: none

13. USB\_HID\_FEATURE\_REPORT was assigned the incorrect value.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_hid.c
14. Some CDC device demos had incorrect USB\_MAX\_NUM\_INT definition.
  - Stack files affected: none
15. Added examples showing how to connect to various USB demos with the Android USB host API.
  - Stack files affected: none
16. Optional support for DTS signalling added
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_cdc.c, usb\_function\_cdc.h
17. Added MIDI host support
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_midi.c, usb\_host\_midi.h
18. Added Android OpenAccessory boot loader example
  - Stack files affected: none
19. Fixed issues with PIC32 support with the MSD host boot loader. Now supports C32 versions 2.x and later.
  - Stack files affected: none

### 1.3.1.12 v2.9a

1. Fixes issues in the cross-platform HID boot loader that caused certain hex files not to work if the various sections in the hex file were not order in increasing address in the .hex file.
  - Stack files affected: none
2. Added UART output support for PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board in Host – Printer Full sheet demo.
  - Stack files affected: none

### 1.3.1.13 v2.9

1. Adds PHDC peripheral support.
2. Adds Android accessory support for host mode accessories.
3. Added MPLAB X project files for most demo projects.
4. Added code to allow subclass 0x05 (SFF-8070i devices) to enumerate to the MSD host. Support limited to devices that use SCSI command set only.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_msd.c
5. Added additional logic to MSD SCSI host code to improve support for various MSD devices by trying to reset various error conditions that may occur.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_msd\_scsi.c
6. Fixed issue with CDC host where SET\_CONTROL\_LINE\_STATE command response was formatted incorrectly.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_cdc.c
7. Added support for both input and output functionality in the Audio host driver.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_audio.c
8. Added support for SOF, 1 millisecond timer, and data transfer event notifications to USB host drivers.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
9. Added mechanism for a host client driver to override or reject the stacks selection for the class driver associated with an attached device.

- Stack files affected: usb\_host.c, usb\_common.h
10. Fixed an issue with STALL handling behavior on non-EP0 endpoints for PIC24 and PIC32 devices.
    - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
  11. Fixed an issue where some variables/flags were not getting re-initialized correctly after a set configuration event leading to communication issues when ping-pong is enabled and multiple set configuration commands are received.
    - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
  12. Added mechanism to get the handle for the next available ping-pong transfer.
    - Stack files affected: usb\_device.h
  13. Fixed incorrect value for USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_LINE\_LENGTH Stack files affected: usb\_host\_cdc.h
  14. Updated MSD device driver to pass command verifier tests.
    - Stack files affected: usb\_device\_msd.c, usb\_device\_msd.h
  15. Change to CDC device driver to allow handling of terminated transfers.
    - Stack files affected: usb\_device\_cdc.c

### 1.3.1.14 v2.8

1. Fixed issue with SetFeature(ENDPOINT\_HALT) handling in the device stack. Error could cause one packet of data to get lost per endpoint after clearing a ENDPOINT\_HALT event on an endpoint. Issue could also cause the user to lose control of endpoints that may not have been enabled before the SetFeature(ENDPOINT\_HALT) was received. Parts of the issue described in the following forum thread: <http://www.microchip.com/forums/tm.aspx?m=503200>.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
2. Fixed stability issue in device stack when interrupts enabled related to the improper enabling of the interrupt control bits in an interrupt context.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
3. Fixed issue STALLs were not handled correctly when event transfers are enabled. This could result in the attached device remaining in a non-responsive state where their endpoints are STALLed.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_msd.c
4. Fixed issue where MSD function driver could not always reinitialize itself to a known state.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_msd.c
5. Added USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage(), USBDeferStatusStage(), USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(), USBDeferOUTDataStage(), USBOUTDataStageDeferred(), USBDeferInDataStage(), and USBINDataStageDeferred() functions. These functions allow users to defer the handling of control transfers received in interrupt context until a later point of time.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c, usb\_device.h
6. Fixed issue in PIC18F starter kit SD-card bootloader issue. Bootloader could have errors loading hex files if there was an hex entry starting at an odd address with an even number of bytes in the payload.
  - Stack files affected: none
7. Reorganization of many of the definitions and data types.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic18.h, usb\_hal\_pic24.h, usb\_hal\_pic32.h, usb\_device\_local.h, usb\_device.c, usb\_device.h
8. Changed the behavior of the PIC24F HID bootloader linker scripts. The remapping.s file is no longer required. Interrupt vector remapping is now handled by the provided linker scripts (no customization required). Applications should be able to run with the bootloader linker script when either programmed or loaded through the bootloader allowing for more easy development and debugging. Interrupt latency should also be the same when using the bootloader or the debugger. For more information about usage, please refer to the HID bootloader documentation.
9. Changed the behavior of the PIC32 HID bootloader linker scripts. The dual-linker script requirement has been replaced by a single required linker script that should be attached to the application project. Applications should be able to run with the

bootloader linker script when either programmed or loaded through the bootloader allowing for more easy development and debugging. Interrupt latency should also be the same when using the bootloader or the debugger. For more information about usage, please refer to the HID bootloader documentation.

10. Added files for the PIC18F starter kit contest winners. Located in "<INSTALL\_DIRECTORY>/PIC18F Starter Kit 1/Demos/Custom Submissions/Contest 1"
11. Added initial support for the PIC24FJ256DA210 development board.
12. Added initial support for the PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-in module.

### 1.3.1.15 v2.7a

1. Fixed USBSetBDTAddress() macro, so that it correctly loads the entire U1BDTPx register set, enabling the BDT to be anywhere in RAM. Previous implementation wouldn't work on a large RAM device if the linker decided to place the BDT[] array at an address > 64kB.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic32.h
2. Fixed initialization issue where HID parse result information wasn't cleared before loading with new parse result data.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_hid\_parser.c
3. Update to support the PIC18F47J53 A1 and later revision devices.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
4. Fixed an error on 16-bit and 32-bit processors where a word access could be performed on a byte pointer resulting in possible address errors with odd aligned pointers.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
5. Fixed issue where the USBSleepOnSuspend() function would cause the USB communication to fail after being called when \_IPL is equal to 0.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic24.c
6. Fixed issue where placing the micro in idle mode would cause the host stack to stop sending out SOF packets.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
7. Fixed several issues in the USBConfig.exe
8. Made changes to the starting address of the HID bootloader for PIC32. Reduced the size used by the bootloader. Also added application linker scripts for each processor.
9. Added a three point touch digitizer example
10. Updated some of the PC examples to build and run properly in the 2010 .net Express versions.
11. Added information and batch file showing how to enter a special mode of device manager that allows removal/uninstallation of devices that are not currently attached to the system.

### 1.3.1.16 v2.7

1. Fixed error where USBHandleGetAddr() didn't convert the return address from a physical address to a virtual address for PIC32.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.h
2. Added macro versions of USBDeviceAttach() and USBDeviceDetach() so they will compile without error when using polling mode.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.h
3. Fixes issue in dual role example where a device in polling mode can still have interrupts enabled from the host mode causing an incorrect vectoring to the host interrupt controller while in device mode.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic18.h, usb\_hal\_pic24.h, usb\_hal-pic32.h, usb\_device.c

4. Modified the SetConfigurationOptions() function for PIC32 to explicitly reconfigure the pull-up/pull-down settings for the D+/D- pins in case the host code leaves the pull-downs enabled when running in a dual role configuration.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic32.h
5. Fixed error where the USB error interrupt flag was not getting cleared properly for PIC32 resulting in extra error interrupts (<http://www.microchip.com/forums/tm.aspx?m=479085>).
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
6. Updated the device stack to move to the configuration state only after the user event completes.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
7. Fixed error in the part support list of the variables section where the address of the CDC variables are defined. The PIC18F2553 was incorrectly named PIC18F2453 and the PIC18F4558 was incorrectly named PIC18F4458 (<http://www.microchip.com/forums/fb.aspx?m=487397>).
  - Stack files affected: usb\_function\_cdc.c
8. Fixed an error where the USBHostClearEndpointErrors() function didn't properly return USB\_SUCCESS if the errors were successfully cleared (<http://www.microchip.com/forums/fb.aspx?m=490651>).
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
9. Fixed issue where deviceInfoHID[i].rptDescriptor was incorrectly freed twice. The second free results in possible issues in future malloc() calls in the C32 compiler.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_hid.c
10. Fixed an issue where the MSD client driver would issue a transfer events to an incorrect/invalid client driver number when transfer events are enabled.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_msdc.c
11. Fixed issue where a device that is already connected to the embedded host when the system is initialized may not enumerate.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
12. Fixed issue where the embedded host or OTG device did not properly check bmRequestType when it thinks that a HALT\_ENDPOINT request was sent to the device. This resulted in the DTS bits for the attached device getting reset causing possible communication issues.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host.c
13. Changed how the bus sensing works. In previous revisions it was impossible to use the USBDeviceDetach to detach from the bus if the bus voltage was still present. This is now possible. It was also possible to move the device to the ATTACHED state in interrupt mode even if the bus voltage wasn't available. This is now prohibited unless VBUS is present.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
14. Added USBSleepOnSuspend() function. This function shows how to put the PIC24F to sleep while the USB module is in suspend and have the USB module wake up the device on activity on the bus.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_hal\_pic24.h, usb\_hal\_pic24.c
15. Modified the code to allow connection of USB-RS232 dongles that do not fully comply with CDC specifications.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_cdc.h, usb\_host\_cdc.c, usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.c, usb\_host\_interface.h
16. Modified API USBHostCDC\_Api\_Send\_OUT\_Data to allow data transfers more than 256 bytes.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_cdc.h, usb\_host\_cdc.c, usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.c, usb\_host\_interface.h
17. Improved error case handling when the host sends more OUT bytes in a control transfer than the firmware was expecting to receive (based on the size parameter when calling USBEP0Receive()).
  - Stack files affected: usb\_device.c
18. Added CCID (Circuit Cards Interface Device) class device/function support.
  - Stack Files affected: usb\_function\_ccid.h, usb\_function\_ccid.c
19. Added Audio v1 class embedded host support.
  - Stack files affected: usb\_host\_audio\_v1.h, usb\_host\_audio\_v1.c

---

## 1.3.2 What's Next

Find out what the USB development team is working on and what will be out in the near future.

### Description

The following are the projects that are being worked on. These may not be released in the next release but are in development

- Working with Harmony team to define an API set that will meet their goals but still product size appropriate solutions for smaller micro-controllers and will easily migrate between the solutions. Migrating towards the new API as they are defined.

---

## 1.3.3 Support

Find out how to get help with your USB design, support questions, or USB training.

### Description

#### The Microchip Web Site

Microchip provides online support via our web site at <http://www.microchip.com>. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- Product Support - Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- General Technical Support - Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs), technical support requests (<http://support.microchip.com>), online discussion groups/forums (<http://forum.microchip.com>, or more specifically the USB forum topic), Microchip consultant program member listing
- Business of Microchip - Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

#### Development Systems Customer Change Notification Service

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com), click on Customer Change Notification and follow the registration instructions.

#### Additional Support

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is available on our website.

Technical support is available through the web site at: <http://support.microchip.com>

#### Training

- Regional Training Centers: <http://www.microchip.com/rtc>
- MASTERS Conference: <http://www.microchip.com/masters>
- Webseminars: <http://techtrain.microchip.com/webseminars/QuickList.aspx>

---

## 1.3.4 Online Reference and Resources

This section includes useful links to online USB development resources.

### Description

Note: Newer versions of the documents below may be available. Please check [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com) for the latest version.

#### **USB Design Center**

<http://www.microchip.com/usb>

#### **Application Notes**

[Microchip USB Device Firmware Framework User's Guide](#)

[AN950 – Power Management for PIC18 USB Microcontrollers with nanoWatt Technology](#)

[AN956 – Migrating Applications to USB from RS-232 UART with Minimal Impact on PC Software](#)

[AN1140 – USB Embedded Host Stack](#)

[AN1141 – USB Embedded Host Stack Programmer's Guide](#)

[AN1142 – USB Mass Storage Class on an Embedded Host](#)

[AN1143 – Generic Client Driver for a USB Embedded Host](#)

[AN1144 - USB Human Interface Device Class on an Embedded Host](#)

[AN1145 – Using a USB Flash Drive on an Embedded Host](#)

[AN1189 – Implementing a Mass Storage Device Using the Microchip](#)

[AN1212 – Using USB Keyboard with an Embedded Host](#)

[AN1233 – USB Printer Class on an Embedded Host](#)

#### **USB Demonstration Videos**

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ljF4KQ2mfD0>

[http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cmtjKUv\\_yPs&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cmtjKUv_yPs&feature=related)

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BOosLeO7D58&feature=related>

---

## 1.3.5 Device (Slave) Demo Board Support and Limitations

This section shows which USB device demos are supported on each of the USB demo boards.

### Description

This section shows which USB device demos are supported on each of the USB demo boards.

**Legend**

- Supported
- See Limitations
- Not Supported

	Audio - Microphone	Audio - MIDI	Bootloader	Composite - HID + MSD	CDC - Basic	HID - Custom	HID - Digitizer Multi Touch	HID - Digitizer Single Touch	HID - Joystick	HID - Keyboard	HID - Mouse	HID - Uninterruptable Power Supply (UPS)	MSD - Internal Flash	MSD - SD Card Reader	Vendor Class - Basic	Vendor Class - High Throughput
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P
<b>8-bit demo boards (PIC16 and PIC18 families)</b>																
Low Pin Count USB Development Kit (PIC16F1459 Family)			2													
Low Pin Count USB Development Kit (PIC18F14K50 Family)																
PIC18F46J50 Full Speed USB Development Board (PIM)																
PIC18F47J53 Full Speed USB Development Board (PIM)																
PIC18F87J50 Full Speed USB Development Board (PIM)																
PIC18F87J94 Full Speed USB Development Board (PIM)																
PIC18F97J94 Full Speed USB Development Board (PIM)																
PIC18F Starter Kit 1 (PIC18F46J50 Family)																
PICDEM Full Speed USB (PIC18F4550 Family)																
PICDEM Full Speed USB (PIC18F45K50 Family)																
<b>16-bit demo boards (PIC24 and dsPIC families)</b>																
PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
PIC24FJ128GB204 Plug-In Module (PIM)																
PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
dsPIC33EP256MU506 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)																
PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board																
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24F	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24F Intelligent Integrated Analog																
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24E MCUs																
MPLAB Starter Kit for dsPIC33E DSCs																

**Limitations**

- 1) The PIC24F starter kit does not have a physical push button. The board uses capacitive touch buttons instead. The cap touch functionality has not been added to the demos yet so the functionality required by the demos so some or all of the features of this demo are limited.
- 2) Bootloader operation with the PIC16F145x device family requires the use of revision A5 or later silicon

## 1.3.6 Host Demo Board Support and Limitations

This section shows which USB host demos are supported on each of the USB demo boards.

**Description**

This section shows which USB host demos are supported on each of the USB demo boards.

**Legend**

- Supported
- See Limitations
- Not Supported

	CDC - Basic				
	A	B	C	D	E
<b>16-bit demo boards (PIC24 and dsPIC families)</b>					
PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1	1	1	1	1
PIC24FJ128GB204 Plug-In Module (PIM)	2	1,2	2	1	1
PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1	1	1	1	1
PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1	1	1	1	1
PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1	1	1	1	1
dsPIC33EP256MU506 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	2	1,2	2	1	1
dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1	1	1	1	1
PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board	2	1,2	2	1	1
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24F	1	1	3	1	1
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24F Intelligent Integrated Analog	1	1	1	1	1
MPLAB Starter Kit for PIC24E MCUs	1	1	1	4	1
MPLAB Starter Kit for dsPIC33E DSCs	1	1	1	4	1

**Limitations**

1) Neither compound nor composite devices are supported. Some keyboards are either compound or composite.

The “~” prints as an arrow character instead (“->”). This is an effect of the LCD screen on the Explorer 16. The ascii character for “~” is remapped in the LCD controller.

The “\” prints as a “¥” character instead. This is an effect of the LCD screen on the Explorer 16. The ascii character for “\” is remapped in the LCD controller.

Backspace and arrow keys may have issues on Explorer 16 boards with certain LCD modules

2) The display features of this demo have not been ported to this board yet.

3) This board does not have a push button and the code required to implement the capacitive touch buttons has not been implemented yet.

4) There is no potentiometer available on this board. A fixed value of 512 is reported in place of the potentiometer data.

## 1.3.7 Operating System Support and Limitations

This section describes which operating systems support each of the provided demos.

**Description**

This section describes which operating systems support each of the provided demos.

**Legend**

- Supported
- Limited Support
- Not Supported
- Not Tested

**Operating System**

K	Android OS v3.1
J	Macintosh OS 10.7
I	Macintosh OS 10.5
H	Linux
G	Windows 7 (64-bit)
F	Windows 7 (32-bit)
E	Windows Vista (64-bit)
D	Windows Vista (32-bit)
C	Windows XP (64-bit)
B	Windows XP (32-bit)
A	Windows 2000

**Demos**

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
USB Device - Audio - Microphone	Not Tested	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Audio - MIDI	Not Tested	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Audio - Speaker	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Bootloaders	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Device - CCID - SmartCard Reader	Not Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - CDC - Basic Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	6	6	6	6	6	6	8
USB Device - CDC - Serial Emulator	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	6	6	6	6	6	6	8
USB Device - Composite - HID + MSD	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Composite - MSD + CDC	Not Supported	4	4	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	9	Supported	8
USB Device - HID - Custom Demos	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Device - HID - Digitizers	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported	3	3	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - HID - Joystick	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - HID - Keyboard	7	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - HID - Mouse	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - HID - Uninterruptible Power Supply	Not Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - LibUSB - Generic Driver Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	2	2	1
USB Device - Mass Storage - Internal Flash	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Mass Storage - SD Card data logger	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - Mass Storage - SD Card reader	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8
USB Device - PHDC Demos	Not Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	8	8	8	8
USB Device - MCHPUSB - Generic Driver Demo	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Device - WinUSB - Simple Custom Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Device - WinUSB - High Bandwidth Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Dual Role - MSD host + HID device	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB OTG - MCHPUSB - Generic Driver Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB PC - WM_DEVICECHANGE Demo	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1
USB Configuration Tool	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	1

**Limitations**

- 1) These devices enumerate successfully by the OS but currently there is not an example program to interface these devices.
- 2) Devices that implement the LibUSB demo will enumerate successfully on Macintosh based operating systems (provided the correct drivers are installed). Currently there is not an example program to communicate to these devices on these operating systems in this installation.
- 3) Only single touch gestures are supported in Windows Vista. For the multi touch demo only the single touch gestures will work as a gesture. The multi touch gestures in Vista will appear as two separate touch events that do not produce a usable pattern.
- 4) When used with Windows XP SP2 or earlier, this demo requires a Microsoft hotfix in order to run properly. This hotfix is linked from the demo folder. Windows XP SP3 works properly without needing any hotfix.
- 5) When adding a VID/PID string to the "%DESCRIPTION%=DriverInstall" and "%DESCRIPTION%=DriverInstall64" sections in the mchpusb.inf file, remove one or more of the pre-existing VID/PID strings from the list. There is a limit to the maximum number of VID/PID strings that can be supported simultaneously. If the list contains too many entries, the following error message will occur when installing the driver under Vista: "The Data Area Passed to a System Call Is Too Small"
- 6) The CDC PC example code does not run as implemented on the 64-bit version of the Windows Vista operating system with some versions of the .net framework. The .NET SerialPort object does not appear to receive data as implemented in these examples in the early versions of the .net framework for Vista.
- 7) The HID keyboard example does not work as implemented on the Windows 2000 operating system or any earlier revisions of the Windows operating systems.

8) Firmware successfully enumerates but test machine was unable to verify functionality. This is either due to lack of support in the OS for these types of devices or lack of an Application that uses these devices.

9) This demo uses the USB IAD specification. Some versions of Macintosh OSX do not support IAD.

## 1.3.8 Tool Information

Specifies the versions of the tools used to test this release.

### Description

This release was tested with the following tools:

Compiler	Version
MPLAB XC8	1.32
MPLAB XC16	1.21

IDE	Version
MPLAB X	2.10

Some demos in this release require the full versions of the above compilers (the boot loaders and a few of the demo applications). For most demos, either the commercial version, or the evaluation version can be used to build the example projects. Some The compilers may be obtained from <http://www.microchip.com/xc8> and <http://www.microchip.com/xc16>.

## 1.3.9 Library Migration

### 1.3.9.1 From v2.10 to v2.11

Any application projects targeting a PIC16F145x device that is also using the HID bootloader should be modified to use the new bootloader firmware and updated application linker settings. The application "codeoffset" has been changed to 0x904, and the "ROM ranges" has changed to "default,-0-903". The new settings resolve a potential linking problem that could previously occur if the application interrupt handler code section grew too large and would attempt to overlap the locations reserved for the signature word and version word.

### 1.3.9.2 From v2.9j to v2.10

- Type definition changes

In this release all type definitions were changed from GenericTypeDefs.h to the standard C99 types. The size and signedness of the variables remained the same. Applications that used the GenericTypeDefs.h file may need to port their types as well but it should not affect behavior at all. Below is a list of some of the most common usages and their transitions:

GenericTypeDefs.h (old)	C99 (new)	New Header Required
DWORD, UINT32	uint32_t	stdint.h
WORD, UINT16	uint16_t	stdint.h
BYTE, UINT8	uint8_t	stdint.h

BOOL	bool	stdbool.h
TRUE	true	stdbool.h
FALSE	false	stdbool.h

- All 16-bit peripheral/device applications:

Previous versions of the stack redefined the USBDeviceTasks() function to the interrupt vector function, \_USB1Interrupt(), when the stack was run in interrupt mode. This meant that users didn't have to call the USBDeviceTasks() function for 16-bit products in interrupt mode. The side effect, however, is that since the host stack took the same approach, dual role or OTG solutions could not use interrupt mode for their peripheral/device operation. In this release of the stack this redefinition has been removed. As such, 16-bit applications using interrupt mode must now define the USB interrupt handler function in the application space and call the USBDeviceTasks() function:

```
#if defined(USB_INTERRUPT)
void __attribute__((interrupt,auto_psv)) _USB1Interrupt()
{
    USBDeviceTasks();
}
#endif
```

- All 16-bit host applications:

Previous versions of the stack redefined the USB interrupt vector function, \_USB1Interrupt(), in the host stack in order to handle USB interrupts. The side effect, however, is that since the host stack took control over the USB interrupt vector, dual role or OTG solutions could not use interrupt mode for their peripheral/device operation. In this release of the stack this behavior has been changed so that the host stack doesn't take control over the USB interrupt vector. As such, 16-bit applications must now define the USB interrupt handler function in the application space and call the USB\_HostInterruptHandler() function:

```
void __attribute__((interrupt,auto_psv)) _USB1Interrupt()
{
    USB_HostInterruptHandler();
}
```

- Include paths

Since the overall folder structure of the MLA has changed, if porting between two versions of the USB Library, a user will need to modify the include paths so that the application points to the new library folder and to the application space. To point to the library, the include path should have a link to the "<MLA install directory>\framework" folder. To include a USB header file you would designate the "usb\" folder before specifying the header file required.

Example - #include "usb\usb.h"

### 1.3.9.3 From v2.9i to v2.9j

No changes required.

However, if using the new HID bootloader features for PIC18 devices, you must rebuild both the bootloader firmware, and the application firmware project (using the updated vector remapping section from the main.c file of the application project). You must also use the updated HID bootloader firmware + application firmware with the updated HID bootloader cross platform software.

### 1.3.9.4 From v2.9h to v2.9i

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.5 From v2.9g to v2.9h

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.6 From v2.9f to v2.9g

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.7 From v2.9e to v2.9f

1. hid\_report\_in and hid\_report\_out were removed from the stack. For HID based demos, the user buffers must be defined in user space. For certain product families that have specific USB RAM limitations, make sure that these buffers get located in that USB RAM space. Please refer to the existing HID demos to see how the hid\_report\_in and hid\_report\_out were moved to user space for those demos.

### 1.3.9.8 From v2.9d to v2.9e

No changes required

### 1.3.9.9 From v2.9c to v2.9d

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.10 From v2.9b to v2.9c

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.11 From v2.9a to v2.9b

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.12 From v2.9 to v2.9a

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.13 From v2.8 to v2.9

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.14 From v2.7a to v2.8

1. HID Bootloader for PIC32 devices

- An error was fixed in PIC32 bootloader. The previous implementations placed the interrupt vector table on a 1K-page aligned boundary. This table should be on a such a boundary. The user reset vector and the interrupt vector section

addresses were switched to meet this requirement. Applications/bootloaders using the old reset vector will not work with applications/bootloaders using the new bootloader linker files.

### 1.3.9.15 From v2.7 to v2.7a

#### 1. HID Bootloader for PIC32 devices

- The PIC32 bootloader was changed in this revision. The memory region used by the HID bootloader was reduced. This could result in issues loading application projects built with the new linker scripts on a system with the old bootloader. It could also result in issues loading an old application with the new bootloader.

### 1.3.9.16 From v2.6a to v2.7

No changes required.

### 1.3.9.17 From v2.6 to v2.6a

#### 1. HID Bootloader for PIC24F devices

- The HID Bootloader for PIC24F has been reworked for the v2.6a release. The change involve how interrupt remapping is handled and how applications relocate their code to make room for the bootloader. Applications built with the v2.6 or earlier PIC24F compiler should continue using the v2.6 bootloader and support files. It is recommended for new projects that new bootloader and support files should be used.
- In previous revisions of the stack there was a "PIC24F HID Bootloader Remapping.s" file that was added to any PIC24F project to relocate the application code out of the bootloader space. These files have been deprecated and should not be used with the new revision of the bootloader. Instead there is a custom linker script (boot\_hid\_p24fjxxxGBxxx.gld) file in the HID bootloader folder specifically designed for the application. These are located in the "Application Files" folder in each of the respective bootloader folders. Copy this file from this folder into the application folder and add it to the target project. All of the possible interrupts should already be remapped. To use an interrupt, merely define the interrupt handler as you normally would if you weren't using a bootloader.
- The bootloader for PIC18 and PIC32 devices were not modified.

### 1.3.9.18 From v2.5 to v2.6

#### 1. Include Files

- The files that must be included into a project has changed from v2.5 to v2.6.
- Version v2.5 of the MCHPFSUSB stack required multiple include files in order to work properly in device mode. The usb\_device.h, usb.h, usb\_config.h, and class specific files (i.e. - ".usb/usb\_function\_msd.h") had to be included in all of the application files that accessed the USB stack as well as other common include files like the GenericTypeDefs.h and Compiler.h files.
- In MCHPFSUSB v2.6, only the usb.h file and the class specific files (i.e. - ".usb/usb\_function\_msd.h") must be included in the project. The usb\_device.h and usb\_config.h files should no longer be included in the application specific files.

#### 2. Include Search Paths and Build Directory Policy

- The preferred include path list has changed since the initial v2.x release. MPLAB now support compiling projects with respect to the project file instead of the source file. This is now the preferred method. With this modification the required include paths are the following:

- .
- ../Microchip/Include
- If your project file located in a different format than the example projects, please add or remove the appropriate path modifiers such that the include path indirectly points to the /Microchip/Include folder.
- To change the build directory policy and set the include paths, go to the “Project->Build Options->Project” menu. On the directories tab, select the include directories from the show directories drop down box.

### 3. Disabling Interrupt Handlers

- In MCHPFSUSB v2.6, the interrupt handler routines are disabled through the usb\_config.h file using the following definitions:
  - USB\_DISABLE\_SET\_CONFIGURATION\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_SUSPEND\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_WAKEUP\_FROM\_SUSPEND\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_SOF\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_NONSTANDARD\_EP0\_REQUEST\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_SET\_DESCRIPTOR\_HANDLER
  - USB\_DISABLE\_TRANSFER\_COMPLETE\_HANDLER
- Defining any of these definitions in the usb\_config.h file will disable the callback from the stack during these events. Please note that some of these events are required to be USB compliant. For example all USB devices must go into suspend mode when requested. The suspend handler is how the stack notifies the user that the bus has requested the device to go into suspend mode.
- Also note that some device classes or demos may require certain handlers to be available in order to operate properly. For example, the audio class demo uses the start of frames provided by the SOF handler to properly synchronize the audio data playback.

## 1.4 Library Interface

This section describes the Application Programming Interface (API) functions of the USB Library.

Refer to each section for a detailed description.

### 1.4.1 Device/Peripheral

#### Modules

Name	Description
Device Stack	
Audio Function Driver	
CDC Function Driver	
HID Function Driver	
MSD Function Driver	
Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver	

#### Description

#### 1.4.1.1 Device Stack

##### Files

Name	Description
usb_device.h	Defines types and APIs associated with the USB device stack.

#### Description

#### 1.4.1.1.1 Functions

##### Functions

	Name	Description
≡◆	USB_APPLICATION_EVENT_HANDLER	This function is called whenever the USB stack wants to notify the user of an event.
≡◆	USBCancelIO	This function cancels the transfers pending on the specified endpoint. This function can only be used after a SETUP packet is received and before that setup packet is handled. This is the time period in which the EVENT_EP0_REQUEST is thrown, before the event handler function returns to the stack.

	USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage	<p>This function allows the data stage of either a host-to-device or device-to-host control transfer (with data stage) to complete. This function is meant to be used in conjunction with either the USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(). If the firmware does not call either USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(), then the firmware does not need to manually call USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(), as the USB stack will call this function instead.</p>
	USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage	<p>This function prepares the proper endpoint 0 IN or endpoint 0 OUT (based on the controlTransferState) to allow the status stage packet of a control transfer to complete. This function gets used internally by the USB stack itself, but it may also be called from the application firmware, IF the application firmware called the USBDeferStatusStage() function during the initial processing of the control transfer request. In this case, the application must call the USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage() once, after it has fully completed processing and handling the data stage portion of the request. If the application firmware has no need for delaying... more</p>
	USBDeferINDataStage	<p>This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the IN token packets sent from the host, during the data stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to process and prepare the IN data packets that will eventually be sent to the host. This is also useful, if the firmware needs to process/prepare the IN data in a different context than what the USBDeviceTasks() function executes at.</p> <p>Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches the... more</p>
	USBDeferOUTDataStage	<p>This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the OUT data packets sent from the host, during the data stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to prepare the RAM buffer that will eventually be used to receive the data from the host. This is also useful, if the firmware wishes to receive the OUT data in a different context than what the USBDeviceTasks() function executes at.</p> <p>Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches... more</p>
	USBDeferStatusStage	<p>Calling this function will prevent the USB stack from automatically enabling the status stage for the currently pending control transfer from completing immediately after all data bytes have been sent or received. This is useful if a class handler or USB application firmware project uses control transfers for sending/receiving data over EP0, but requires time in order to finish processing and/or to consume the data.</p> <p>For example: Consider an application which receives OUT data from the USB host, through EP0 using control transfers. Now assume that this application wishes to do something time consuming with this data (ex: transmit it... more</p>
	USBDeviceAttach	<p>Checks if VBUS is present, and that the USB module is not already initialized, and if so, enables the USB module so as to signal device attachment to the USB host.</p>
	USBDeviceDetach	<p>This function configures the USB module to "soft detach" itself from the USB host.</p>
	USBDeviceInit	<p>This function initializes the device stack it in the default state. The USB module will be completely reset including all of the internal variables, registers, and interrupt flags.</p>

◆	USBDeviceTasks	This function is the main state machine/transaction handler of the USB device side stack. When the USB stack is operated in "USB_POLLING" mode (usb_config.h user option) the USBDeviceTasks() function should be called periodically to receive and transmit packets through the stack. This function also takes care of control transfers associated with the USB enumeration process, and detecting various USB events (such as suspend). This function should be called at least once every 1.8ms during the USB enumeration process. After the enumeration process is complete (which can be determined when USBGetDeviceState() returns CONFIGURED_STATE), the USBDeviceTasks() handler may be called the... more
◆	USBEnableEndpoint	This function will enable the specified endpoint with the specified options
◆	USBEP0Receive	Sets the destination, size, and a function to call on the completion of the next control write.
◆	USBEP0SendRAMPtr	Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a RAM source
◆	USBEP0SendROMPtr	Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a const source
◆	USBEP0Transmit	Sets the address of the data to send over the control endpoint
◆	USBGetDeviceState	This function will return the current state of the device on the USB. This function should return CONFIGURED_STATE before an application tries to send information on the bus.
◆	USBGetNextHandle	Retrieves the handle to the next endpoint BDT entry that the USBTransferOnePacket() will use.
◆	USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus	This function indicates if remote wakeup has been enabled by the host. Devices that support remote wakeup should use this function to determine if it should send a remote wakeup.
◆	USBGetSuspendState	This function indicates if the USB port that this device is attached to is currently suspended. When suspended, it will not be able to transfer data over the bus.
◆	USBHandleBusy	Checks to see if the input handle is busy
◆	USBHandleGetAddr	Retrieves the address of the destination buffer of the input handle
◆	USBHandleGetLength	Retrieves the length of the destination buffer of the input handle
◆	USBINDataStageDeferred	Returns true if a control transfer with IN data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferINDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with IN data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferINDataStage() at the start of the control transfer. This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB_INTERRUPT option selected in usb_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main... more
◆	USBIsBusSuspended	This function indicates if the USB bus is in suspend mode.
◆	USBIsDeviceSuspended	This function indicates if the USB module is in suspend mode.
◆	USBOUTDataStageDeferred	Returns true if a control transfer with OUT data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferOUTDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with OUT data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferOUTDataStage() at the start of the control transfer. This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB_INTERRUPT option selected in usb_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main... more
◆	USBRxOnePacket	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint

	USBSoftDetach	This function performs a detach from the USB bus via software.
	USBStallEndpoint	Configures the specified endpoint to send STALL to the host, the next time the host tries to access the endpoint.
	USBTransferOnePacket	Transfers a single packet (one transaction) of data on the USB bus.
	USBTxOnePacket	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**Module**

Device Stack

**Description****1.4.1.1.1.1 USB\_APPLICATION\_EVENT\_HANDLER Function**

This function is called whenever the USB stack wants to notify the user of an event.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USB_APPLICATION_EVENT_HANDLER(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void *pdata, uint16_t size);
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function is called whenever the USB stack wants to notify the user of an event. This function should be implemented by the user.

Example Usage:

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
bool USB_APPLICATION_EVENT_HANDLER(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void *pdata, uint16_t size);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.2 USBCancelIO Function****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBCancelIO(uint8_t endpoint);
```

**Description**

This function cancels the transfers pending on the specified endpoint. This function can only be used after a SETUP packet is received and before that setup packet is handled. This is the time period in which the EVENT\_EP0\_REQUEST is thrown, before the event handler function returns to the stack.

**Remarks**

None

**Function**

```
void USBCancelIO(uint8_t endpoint)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.3 USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage Function**

This function allows the data stage of either a host-to-device or device-to-host control transfer (with data stage) to complete. This function is meant to be used in conjunction with either the USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(). If the firmware does not call either USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(), then the firmware does not need to manually call USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(), as the USB stack will call this function instead.

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage();
```

**Preconditions**

A control transfer (with data stage) should already be pending, if the firmware calls this function. Additionally, the firmware should have called either USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage() at the start of the control transfer, if the firmware will be calling this function manually.

**Function**

```
void USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(void);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.4 USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage Function**

This function prepares the proper endpoint 0 IN or endpoint 0 OUT (based on the controlTransferState) to allow the status stage packet of a control transfer to complete. This function gets used internally by the USB stack itself, but it may also be called from the application firmware, IF the application firmware called the USBDeferStatusStage() function during the initial processing of the control transfer request. In this case, the application must call the USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage() once, after it has fully completed processing and handling the data stage portion of the request.

If the application firmware has no need for delaying control transfers, and therefore never calls USBDeferStatusStage(), then the application firmware should not call USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage().

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage();
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage(void);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.5 USBDeferINDataStage Function**

This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the IN token packets sent from the host, during the data

stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to process and prepare the IN data packets that will eventually be sent to the host. This is also useful, if the firmware needs to process/prepare the IN data in a different context than what the `USBDeviceTasks()` function executes at.

Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches the data stage of the control transfer, even if the firmware has not (yet) called the `USBEP0SendRAMPtr()` or `USBEP0SendROMPtr()` API function. However, the application firmware must still (eventually, once it is ready) call one of the aforementioned API functions.

Example Usage:

1. Host sends a SETUP packet to the device, requesting a device to host control transfer, with data stage.
2. `USBDeviceTasks()` executes, and then calls the `USBCBCheckOtherReq()` callback event handler. The `USBCBCheckOtherReq()` calls the application specific/device class specific handler that detects the type of control transfer.
3. If the firmware needs more time to prepare the first IN data packet, or, if the firmware wishes to process the command in a different context (ex: if `USBDeviceTasks()` executes as an interrupt handler, but the IN data stage data needs to be prepared in the main loop context), then it may call `USBDeferINDataStage()`, in the context of the `USBCBCheckOtherReq()` handler function.
4. If the firmware called `USBDeferINDataStage()` in step #3 above, then the hardware will NAK the IN token packets sent by the host, for the IN data stage.
5. Once the firmware is ready, and has successfully prepared the data to be sent to the host in fulfillment of the control transfer, it should then call `USBEP0SendRAMPtr()` or `USBEP0SendROMPtr()`, to prepare the USB stack to know how many bytes to send to the host, and from what source location.
6. The firmware should now call `USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage()`. This will allow the data stage to complete. The USB stack will send the data buffer specified by the `USBEP0SendRAMPtr()` or `USBEP0SendROMPtr()` function, when it was called.
7. Once all data has been sent to the host, or if the host performs early termination, the status stage (a 0-byte OUT packet) will complete automatically (assuming the firmware did not call `USBDeferStatusStage()` during step #3).

#### File

`usb_device.h`

#### Syntax

```
void USBDeferINDataStage( ) ;
```

#### Remarks

Section 9.2.6 of the official USB 2.0 specifications indicates that the USB device must return the first IN data packet within 500ms of the start of the control transfer. In order to meet this specification, the firmware must call `USBEP0SendRAMPtr()` or `USBEP0SendROMPtr()`, and then call `USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage()`, in less than 500ms from the start of the control transfer.

If the firmware calls `USBDeferINDataStage()`, it must eventually call `USBEP0SendRAMPtr()` or `USBEP0SendROMPtr()`, and then call `USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage()`. If it does not do this, the control transfer will never be able to complete.

The firmware should never call both `USBDeferINDataStage()` and `USBDeferOUTDataStage()` during the same control transfer. These functions are mutually exclusive (a control transfer with data stage can never contain both IN and OUT data packets during the data stage).

#### Preconditions

Before calling `USBDeferINDataStage()`, the firmware should first verify that the control transfer has a data stage, and that it is of type device-to-host (IN).

#### Function

```
void USBDeferINDataStage(void);
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.6 USBDeferOUTDataStage Function

This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the OUT data packets sent from the host, during the data stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to prepare the RAM buffer that will eventually be used to receive the data from the host. This is also useful, if the firmware wishes to receive the OUT data in a different context than what the USBDeviceTasks() function executes at.

Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches the data stage of the control transfer, even if the firmware has not (yet) called the USBEP0Receive() API function. However, the application firmware must still (eventually, once it is ready) call one of the aforementioned API function.

Example Usage:

1. Host sends a SETUP packet to the device, requesting a host to device control transfer, with data stage (OUT data packets).
2. USBDeviceTasks() executes, and then calls the USBCBCheckOtherReq() callback event handler. The USBCBCheckOtherReq() calls the application specific/device class specific handler that detects the type of control transfer.
3. If the firmware needs more time before it wishes to receive the first OUT data packet, or, if the firmware wishes to process the command in a different context, then it may call USBDeferOUTDataStage(), in the context of the USBCBCheckOtherReq() handler function.
4. If the firmware called USBDeferOUTDataStage() in step #3 above, then the hardware will NAK the OUT data packets sent by the host, for the OUT data stage.
5. Once the firmware is ready, it should then call USBEP0Receive(), to prepare the USB stack to receive the OUT data from the host, and to write it to the user specified buffer.
6. The firmware should now call USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). This will allow the data stage to complete. Once all OUT data has been received, the user callback function (provided by the function pointer provided when calling USBEP0Receive()) will get called.
7. Once all data has been received from the host, the status stage (a 0-byte IN packet) will complete automatically (assuming the firmware did not call USBDeferStatusStage() during step #3).

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBDeferOUTDataStage ( ) ;
```

#### Remarks

Section 9.2.6 of the official USB 2.0 specifications indicates that the USB device must be able to receive all bytes and complete the control transfer within a maximum of 5 seconds.

If the firmware calls USBDeferOUTDataStage(), it must eventually call USBEP0Receive(), and then call USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). If it does not do this, the control transfer will never be able to complete. This will break the USB connection, as the host needs to be able to communicate over EPO, in order to perform basic tasks including enumeration.

The firmware should never call both USBDeferINDataStage() and USBDeferOUTDataStage() during the same control transfer. These functions are mutually exclusive (a control transfer with data stage can never contain both IN and OUT data packets during the data stage).

#### Preconditions

Before calling USBDeferOUTDataStage(), the firmware should first verify that the control transfer has a data stage, and that it is of type host-to-device (OUT).

#### Function

```
void USBDeferOUTDataStage(void);
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.7 USBDeferStatusStage Function

Calling this function will prevent the USB stack from automatically enabling the status stage for the currently pending control transfer from completing immediately after all data bytes have been sent or received. This is useful if a class handler or USB application firmware project uses control transfers for sending/receiving data over EPO, but requires time in order to finish processing and/or to consume the data.

For example: Consider an application which receives OUT data from the USB host, through EPO using control transfers. Now assume that this application wishes to do something time consuming with this data (ex: transmit it to and save it to an external EEPROM device, connected via SPI/I2C/etc.). In this case, it would typically be desirable to defer allowing the USB status stage of the control transfer to complete, until after the data has been fully sent to the EEPROM device and saved.

If the USB class handler firmware that processes the control transfer SETUP packet determines that it will need extra time to complete the control transfer, it may optionally call USBDeferStatusStage(). If it does so, it is then the responsibility of the application firmware to eventually call USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage(), once the firmware has finished processing the data associated with the control transfer.

If the firmware call USBDeferStatusStage(), but never calls USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage(), then one of two possibilities will occur.

1. If the "USB\_ENABLE\_STATUS\_STAGE\_TIMEOUTS" option is commented in usb\_config.h, then the status stage of the control transfer will never be able to complete. This is an error case and should be avoided.
2. If the "USB\_ENABLE\_STATUS\_STAGE\_TIMEOUTS" option is enabled in usb\_config.h, then the USBDeviceTasks() function will automatically call USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage(), after the "USB\_STATUS\_STAGE\_TIMEOUT" has elapsed, since the last quanta of "progress" has occurred in the control transfer. Progress is defined as the last successful transaction completing on EPO IN or EPO OUT. Although the timeouts feature allows the status stage to [eventually] complete, it is still preferable to manually call USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage() after the application firmware has finished processing/consuming the control transfer data, as this will allow for much faster processing of control transfers, and therefore much higher data rates and better user responsiveness.

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBDeferStatusStage();
```

#### Remarks

If this function is called, it should get called after the SETUP packet has arrived (the control transfer has started), but before the USBCtrlEPServiceComplete() function has been called by the USB stack. Therefore, the normal place to call USBDeferStatusStage() would be from within the USBCheckOtherReq() handler context. For example, in a HID application using control transfers, the USBDeferStatusStage() function would be called from within the USER\_GET\_REPORT\_HANDLER or USER\_SET\_REPORT\_HANDLER functions.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Function

```
void USBDeferStatusStage(void);
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.8 USBDeviceAttach Function

Checks if VBUS is present, and that the USB module is not already initialized, and if so, enables the USB module so as to signal device attachment to the USB host.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBDeviceAttach( );
```

**Description**

This function indicates to the USB host that the USB device has been attached to the bus. This function needs to be called in order for the device to start to enumerate on the bus.

**Remarks**

See also the USBDeviceDetach() API function documentation.

**Preconditions**

Should only be called when USB\_INTERRUPT is defined. Also, should only be called from the main() loop context. Do not call USBDeviceAttach() from within an interrupt handler, as the USBDeviceAttach() function may modify global interrupt enable bits and settings.

For normal USB devices: Make sure that if the module was previously on, that it has been turned off for a long time (ex: 100ms+) before calling this function to re-enable the module. If the device turns off the D+ (for full speed) or D- (for low speed) ~1.5k ohm pull up resistor, and then turns it back on very quickly, common hosts will sometimes reject this event, since no human could ever unplug and reattach a USB device in a microseconds (or nanoseconds) timescale. The host could simply treat this as some kind of glitch and ignore the event altogether.

**Function**

```
void USBDeviceAttach(void)
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.9 USBDeviceDetach Function

This function configures the USB module to "soft detach" itself from the USB host.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBDeviceDetach( );
```

**Description**

This function configures the USB module to perform a "soft detach" operation, by disabling the D+ (or D-) ~1.5k pull up resistor, which lets the host know the device is present and attached. This will make the host think that the device has been unplugged. This is potentially useful, as it allows the USB device to force the host to re-enumerate the device (on the firmware has re-enabled the USB module/pull up, by calling USBDeviceAttach(), to "soft re-attach" to the host).

**Remarks**

If the application firmware calls USBDeviceDetach(), it is strongly recommended that the firmware wait at least  $\geq 80$ ms before calling USBDeviceAttach(). If the firmware performs a soft detach, and then re-attaches too soon (ex: after a few micro seconds for instance), some hosts may interpret this as an unexpected "glitch" rather than as a physical removal/re-attachment of the USB device. In this case the host may simply ignore the event without re-enumerating the device. To ensure that the host properly detects and processes the device soft detach/re-attach, it is recommended to make sure the device remains detached long enough to mimic a real human controlled USB unplug/re-attach event (ex: after calling USBDeviceDetach(), do not call USBDeviceAttach() for at least 80+ms, preferably longer).

Neither the USBDeviceDetach() or USBDeviceAttach() functions are blocking or take long to execute. It is the application firmware's responsibility for adding the 80+ms delay, when using these API functions.

The Windows plug and play event handler processing is fairly slow, especially in certain versions of Windows, and for certain USB device classes. It has been observed that some device classes need to provide even more USB detach dwell interval

(before calling `USBDeviceAttach()`), in order to work correctly after re-enumeration. If the USB device is a CDC class device, it is recommended to wait at least 1.5 seconds or longer, before soft re-attaching to the host, to provide the plug and play event handler enough time to finish processing the removal event, before the re-attach occurs.

If the application is using the `USB_POLLING` mode option, then the `USBDeviceDetach()` and `USBDeviceAttach()` functions are not available. In this mode, the USB stack relies on the `#define USE_USB_BUS_SENSE_IO` and `#define USB_BUS_SENSE` options in the `HardwareProfile [platform name].h` file.

When using the `USB_POLLING` mode option, and the `#define USE_USB_BUS_SENSE_IO` definition has been commented out, then the USB stack assumes that it should always enable the USB module at pretty much all times. Basically, anytime the application firmware calls `USBDeviceTasks()`, the firmware will automatically enable the USB module. This mode would typically be selected if the application was designed to be a purely bus powered device. In this case, the application is powered from the +5V VBUS supply from the USB port, so it is correct and sensible in this type of application to power up and turn on the USB module, at anytime that the microcontroller is powered (which implies the USB cable is attached and the host is also powered).

In a self powered application, the USB stack is designed with the intention that the user will enable the `#define USE_USB_BUS_SENSE_IO` option in the `HardwareProfile [platform name].h` file. When this option is defined, then the `USBDeviceTasks()` function will automatically check the I/O pin port value of the designated pin (based on the `#define USB_BUS_SENSE` option in the `HardwareProfile [platform name].h` file), every time the application calls `USBDeviceTasks()`. If the `USBDeviceTasks()` function is executed and finds that the pin defined by the `#define USB_BUS_SENSE` is in a logic low state, then it will automatically disable the USB module and tri-state the D+ and D- pins. If however the `USBDeviceTasks()` function is executed and finds the pin defined by the `#define USB_BUS_SENSE` is in a logic high state, then it will automatically enable the USB module, if it has not already been enabled.

#### Preconditions

Should only be called when `USB_INTERRUPT` is defined. See remarks section if `USB_POLLING` mode option is being used (`usb_config.h` option).

Additionally, this function should only be called from the `main()` loop context. Do not call this function from within an interrupt handler, as this function may modify global interrupt enable bits and settings.

#### Function

```
void USBDeviceDetach(void)
```

### 1.4.1.1.10 USBDeviceInit Function

#### File

```
usb_device.h
```

#### Syntax

```
void USBDeviceInit();
```

#### Description

This function initializes the device stack it in the default state. The USB module will be completely reset including all of the internal variables, registers, and interrupt flags.

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

This function must be called before any of the other USB Device functions can be called, including `USBDeviceTasks()`.

#### Function

```
void USBDeviceInit(void)
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.11 USBDeviceTasks Function

This function is the main state machine/transaction handler of the USB device side stack. When the USB stack is operated in "USB\_POLLING" mode (usb\_config.h user option) the USBDeviceTasks() function should be called periodically to receive and transmit packets through the stack. This function also takes care of control transfers associated with the USB enumeration process, and detecting various USB events (such as suspend). This function should be called at least once every 1.8ms during the USB enumeration process. After the enumeration process is complete (which can be determined when USBGetDeviceState() returns CONFIGURED\_STATE), the USBDeviceTasks() handler may be called the faster of: either once every 9.8ms, or as often as needed to make sure that the hardware USTAT FIFO never gets full. A good rule of thumb is to call USBDeviceTasks() at a minimum rate of either the frequency that USBTransferOnePacket() gets called, or, once/1.8ms, whichever is faster. See the inline code comments near the top of usb\_device.c for more details about minimum timing requirements when calling USBDeviceTasks().

When the USB stack is operated in "USB\_INTERRUPT" mode, it is not necessary to call USBDeviceTasks() from the main loop context. In the USB\_INTERRUPT mode, the USBDeviceTasks() handler only needs to execute when a USB interrupt occurs, and therefore only needs to be called from the interrupt context.

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBDeviceTasks();
```

#### Description

This function is the main state machine/transaction handler of the USB device side stack. When the USB stack is operated in "USB\_POLLING" mode (usb\_config.h user option) the USBDeviceTasks() function should be called periodically to receive and transmit packets through the stack. This function also takes care of control transfers associated with the USB enumeration process, and detecting various USB events (such as suspend). This function should be called at least once every 1.8ms during the USB enumeration process. After the enumeration process is complete (which can be determined when USBGetDeviceState() returns CONFIGURED\_STATE), the USBDeviceTasks() handler may be called the faster of: either once every 9.8ms, or as often as needed to make sure that the hardware USTAT FIFO never gets full. A good rule of thumb is to call USBDeviceTasks() at a minimum rate of either the frequency that USBTransferOnePacket() gets called, or, once/1.8ms, whichever is faster. See the inline code comments near the top of usb\_device.c for more details about minimum timing requirements when calling USBDeviceTasks().

When the USB stack is operated in "USB\_INTERRUPT" mode, it is not necessary to call USBDeviceTasks() from the main loop context. In the USB\_INTERRUPT mode, the USBDeviceTasks() handler only needs to execute when a USB interrupt occurs, and therefore only needs to be called from the interrupt context.

Typical usage:

```
void main(void)
{
    USBDeviceInit();
    while(1)
    {
        USBDeviceTasks(); //Takes care of enumeration and other USB events
        if((USBGetDeviceState() < CONFIGURED_STATE) ||
           (USBIsDeviceSuspended() == true))
        {
            //Either the device is not configured or we are suspended,
            // so we don't want to execute any USB related application code
            continue; //go back to the top of the while loop
        }
        else
        {
            //Otherwise we are free to run USB and non-USB related user
            //application code.
            UserApplication();
        }
    }
}
```

**Remarks**

USBDeviceTasks() does not need to be called while in the USB suspend mode, if the user application firmware in the USBCBSuspend() callback function enables the ACTIVIF USB interrupt source and put the microcontroller into sleep mode. If the application firmware decides not to sleep the microcontroller core during USB suspend (ex: continues running at full frequency, or clock switches to a lower frequency), then the USBDeviceTasks() function must still be called periodically, at a rate frequent enough to ensure the 10ms resume recovery interval USB specification is met. Assuming a worst case primary oscillator and PLL start up time of <5ms, then USBDeviceTasks() should be called once every 5ms in this scenario.

When the USB cable is detached, or the USB host is not actively powering the VBUS line to +5V nominal, the application firmware does not always have to call USBDeviceTasks() frequently, as no USB activity will be taking place. However, if USBDeviceTasks() is not called regularly, some alternative means of promptly detecting when VBUS is powered (indicating host attachment), or not powered (host powered down or USB cable unplugged) is still needed. For self or dual self/bus powered USB applications, see the USBDeviceAttach() and USBDeviceDetach() API documentation for additional considerations.

**Preconditions**

Make sure the USBDeviceInit() function has been called prior to calling USBDeviceTasks() for the first time.

**Function**

```
void USBDeviceTasks(void)
```

**1.4.1.1.12 USBEnableEndpoint Function**

This function will enable the specified endpoint with the specified options

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void USBEnableEndpoint(uint8_t ep, uint8_t options);
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function will enable the specified endpoint with the specified options.

Typical Usage:

```
void USBCBInitEP(void)
{
    USBEnableEndpoint(MSD_DATA_IN_EP, USB_IN_ENABLED | USB_OUT_ENABLED | USB_HANDSHAKE_ENABLED | USB_DISABLE_SETUP);
    USBMSDInit();
}
```

In the above example endpoint number MSD\_DATA\_IN\_EP is being configured for both IN and OUT traffic with handshaking enabled. Also since MSD\_DATA\_IN\_EP is not endpoint 0 (MSD does not allow this), then we can explicitly disable SETUP packets on this endpoint.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBEnableEndpoint(uint8_t ep, uint8_t options)
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.13 USBEP0Receive Function

Sets the destination, size, and a function to call on the completion of the next control write.

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBEP0Receive(uint8_t* dest, uint16_t size, void (*function));
```

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Parameters

Parameters	Description
uint8_t* dest	address of where the incoming data will go (make sure that this address is directly accessible by the USB module for parts with dedicated USB RAM this address must be in that space)
uint16_t size	the size of the data being received (is almost always going to be presented by the preceding setup packet SetupPkt.wLength) (*function) - a function that you want called once the data is received. If this is specified as NULL then no function is called.

#### Function

```
void USBEP0Receive(uint8_t* dest, uint16_t size, void (*function))
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.14 USBEP0SendRAMPtr Function

Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a RAM source

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBEP0SendRAMPtr(uint8_t* src, uint16_t size, uint8_t Options);
```

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Parameters

Parameters	Description
uint8_t* src	address of the data to send
uint16_t size	the size of the data needing to be transmitted

options	<p>the various options that you want when sending the control data. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB_EP0_ROM</li> <li>• USB_EP0_RAM</li> <li>• USB_EP0_BUSY</li> <li>• USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO</li> <li>• USB_EP0_NO_DATA</li> <li>• USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS</li> </ul>
---------	--

**Function**

void USBEP0SendRAMPtr(uint8\_t\* src, uint16\_t size, uint8\_t Options)

**1.4.1.1.15 USBEP0SendROMPtr Function**

Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a const source

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

`void USBEP0SendROMPtr(uint8_t* src, uint16_t size, uint8_t Options);`

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
uint8_t* src	address of the data to send
uint16_t size	the size of the data needing to be transmitted
options	<p>the various options that you want when sending the control data. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB_EP0_ROM</li> <li>• USB_EP0_RAM</li> <li>• USB_EP0_BUSY</li> <li>• USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO</li> <li>• USB_EP0_NO_DATA</li> <li>• USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS</li> </ul>

**Function**

void USBEP0SendROMPtr(uint8\_t\* src, uint16\_t size, uint8\_t Options)

**1.4.1.1.16 USBEP0Transmit Function**

Sets the address of the data to send over the control endpoint

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBEP0Transmit(uint8_t options);
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

Parameters: options - the various options that you want when sending the control data. Options are: USB\_EP0\_ROM USB\_EP0\_RAM USB\_EP0\_BUSY USB\_EP0\_INCLUDE\_ZERO USB\_EP0\_NO\_DATA USB\_EP0\_NO\_OPTIONS

**Function**

```
void USBEP0Transmit(uint8_t options)
```

**1.4.1.1.17 USBGetDeviceState Function**

This function will return the current state of the device on the USB. This function should return CONFIGURED\_STATE before an application tries to send information on the bus.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
USB_DEVICE_STATE USBGetDeviceState();
```

**Description**

This function returns the current state of the device on the USB. This function is used to determine when the device is ready to communicate on the bus. Applications should not try to send or receive data until this function returns CONFIGURED\_STATE.

It is also important that applications yield as much time as possible to the USBDeviceTasks() function as possible while the this function returns any value between ATTACHED\_STATE through CONFIGURED\_STATE.

For more information about the various device states, please refer to the USB specification section 9.1 available from [www.usb.org](http://www.usb.org).

Typical usage:

```
void main(void)
{
    USBDeviceInit()
    while(1)
    {
        USBDeviceTasks();
        if((USBGetDeviceState() < CONFIGURED_STATE) ||
           (USBIsDeviceSuspended() == true))
        {
            //Either the device is not configured or we are suspended
            // so we don't want to do execute any application code
            continue; //go back to the top of the while loop
        }
        else
        {
            //Otherwise we are free to run user application code.
            UserApplication();
        }
    }
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_DEVICE_STATE	the current state of the device on the bus

**Function**

```
USB_DEVICE_STATE USBGetDeviceState(void)
```

**1.4.1.1.18 USBGetNextHandle Function**

Retrieves the handle to the next endpoint BDT entry that the USBTransferOnePacket() will use.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
USB_HANDLE USBGetNextHandle(uint8_t ep_num, uint8_t ep_dir);
```

**Description**

Retrieves the handle to the next endpoint BDT that the USBTransferOnePacket() will use. Useful for initialization and when ping pong buffering will be used on application endpoints.

**Remarks**

This API is useful for initializing USB\_HANDLES during initialization of the application firmware. It is also useful when ping-pong buffering is enabled, and the application firmware wishes to arm both the even and odd BDTs for an endpoint simultaneously. In this case, the application firmware for sending data to the host would typically be something like follows:

```

USB_HANDLE Handle1;
USB_HANDLE Handle2;
USB_HANDLE* pHandle = &Handle1;
uint8_t UserDataBuffer1[64];
uint8_t UserDataBuffer2[64];
uint8_t* pDataBuffer = &UserDataBuffer1[0];

//Add some code that loads UserDataBuffer1[] with useful data to send,
//using the pDataBuffer pointer, for example:
//for(i = 0; i < 64; i++)
//{
//  *pDataBuffer++ = [useful data value];
//}

//Check if the next USB endpoint BDT is available
if(!USBHandleBusy(USBGetNextHandle(ep_num, IN_TO_HOST))
{
  //The endpoint is available. Send the data.
  *pHandle = USBTransferOnePacket(ep_num, ep_dir, pDataBuffer, bytecount);
  //Toggle the handle and buffer pointer for the next transaction
  if(pHandle == &Handle1)
  {
    pHandle = &Handle2;
    pDataBuffer = &UserDataBuffer2[0];
  }
  else
  {
    pHandle = &Handle1;
    pDataBuffer = &UserDataBuffer1[0];
  }
}

```

```

}

//The firmware can then load the next data buffer (in this case
//UserDataBuffer2)with useful data, and send it using the same
//process. For example:

//Add some code that loads UserDataBuffer2[] with useful data to send,
//using the pDataBuffer pointer, for example:
//for(i = 0; i < 64; i++)
//{
//  *pDataBuffer++ = [useful data value];
//}

//Check if the next USB endpoint BDT is available
if(!USBHandleBusy(USBGetNextHandle(ep_num, IN_TO_HOST))
{
  //The endpoint is available. Send the data.
  *pHandle = USBTransferOnePacket(ep_num, ep_dir, pDataBuffer, bytecount);
  //Toggle the handle and buffer pointer for the next transaction
  if(pHandle == &Handle1)
  {
    pHandle = &Handle2;
    pDataBuffer = &UserDataBuffer2[0];
  }
  else
  {
    pHandle = &Handle1;
    pDataBuffer = &UserDataBuffer1[0];
  }
}
}

```

**Preconditions**

Will return NULL if the USB device has not yet been configured/the endpoint specified has not yet been initialized by USBEnableEndpoint().

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	Returns the USB_HANDLE (a pointer) to the BDT that will be used next time the USBTransferOnePacket() function is called, for the given ep_num and ep_dir

**Function**

USB\_HANDLE USBGetNextHandle(uint8\_t ep\_num, uint8\_t ep\_dir)

**1.4.1.1.19 USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus Function**

This function indicates if remote wakeup has been enabled by the host. Devices that support remote wakeup should use this function to determine if it should send a remote wakeup.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus();
```

**Description**

This function indicates if remote wakeup has been enabled by the host. Devices that support remote wakeup should use this function to determine if it should send a remote wakeup.

If a device does not support remote wakeup (the Remote wakeup bit, bit 5, of the bmAttributes field of the Configuration descriptor is set to 1), then it should not send a remote wakeup command to the PC and this function is not of any use to the device. If a device does support remote wakeup then it should use this function as described below.

If this function returns false and the device is suspended, it should not issue a remote wakeup (resume).

If this function returns true and the device is suspended, it should issue a remote wakeup (resume).

A device can add remote wakeup support by having the `_RWU` symbol added in the configuration descriptor (located in the `usb_descriptors.c` file in the project). This done in the 8th byte of the configuration descriptor. For example:

```
const uint8_t configDescriptor1[]={
    0x09,           // Size
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_CONFIGURATION, // descriptor type
    DESC_CONFIG_WORD(0x0022), // Total length
    1,             // Number of interfaces
    1,             // Index value of this cfg
    0,             // Configuration string index
    _DEFAULT | _SELF | _RWU, // Attributes, see usb_device.h
    50,           // Max power consumption in 2X mA(100mA)

    //The rest of the configuration descriptor should follow
```

For more information about remote wakeup, see the following section of the USB v2.0 specification available at [www.usb.org](http://www.usb.org):

- Section 9.2.5.2
- Table 9-10
- Section 7.1.7.7
- Section 9.4.5

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
true	Remote Wakeup has been enabled by the host
false	Remote Wakeup is not currently enabled

#### Function

```
bool USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus(void)
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.20 USBGetSuspendState Function

This function indicates if the USB port that this device is attached to is currently suspended. When suspended, it will not be able to transfer data over the bus.

#### File

`usb_device.h`

#### Syntax

```
bool USBGetSuspendState();
```

#### Description

This function indicates if the USB port that this device is attached to is currently suspended. When suspended, it will not be able to transfer data over the bus. This function can be used by the application to skip over section of code that do not need to execute if the device is unable to send data over the bus. This function can also be used to help determine when it is legal to perform USB remote wakeup signalling, for devices supporting this feature.

Typical usage:

```
void main(void)
{
    USBDeviceInit()
    while(1)
```

```

    {
        USBDeviceTasks();
        if((USBGetDeviceState() < CONFIGURED_STATE) ||
           (USBGetSuspendState() == true))
        {
            //Either the device is not configured or we are suspended
            // so we don't want to do execute any application code
            continue; //go back to the top of the while loop
        }
        else
        {
            //Otherwise we are free to run user application code.
            UserApplication();
        }
    }
}

```

**Remarks**

This function is the same as USBIsBusSuspended().

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	the USB port this device is attached to is suspended.
false	the USB port this device is attached to is not suspended.

**Function**

bool USBGetSuspendState(void)

**1.4.1.1.1.21 USBHandleBusy Function**

Checks to see if the input handle is busy

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHandleBusy(USB_HANDLE handle);
```

**Description**

Checks to see if the input handle is busy

Typical Usage

```

//make sure that the last transfer isn't busy by checking the handle
if(!USBHandleBusy(USBGenericInHandle))
{
    //Send the data contained in the INPacket[] array out on
    // endpoint USBGEN_EP_NUM
    USBGenericInHandle = USBGenWrite(USBGEN_EP_NUM, (uint8_t*)&INPacket[0], sizeof(INPacket));
}

```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	The specified handle is busy
false	The specified handle is free and available for a transfer

**Function**

```
bool USBHandleBusy( USB_HANDLE handle)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.22 USBHandleGetAddr Function**

Retrieves the address of the destination buffer of the input handle

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
uint16_t USBHandleGetAddr(USB_HANDLE);
```

**Description**

Retrieves the address of the destination buffer of the input handle

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
uint16_t	address of the current buffer that the input handle points to.

**Function**

```
uint16_t USBHandleGetAddr( USB_HANDLE)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.23 USBHandleGetLength Function**

Retrieves the length of the destination buffer of the input handle

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
uint16_t USBHandleGetLength(USB_HANDLE handle);
```

**Description**

Retrieves the length of the destination buffer of the input handle

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
uint16_t	length of the current buffer that the input handle points to. If the transfer is complete then this is the length of the data transmitted or the length of data actually received.

**Function**

```
uint16_t USBHandleGetLength( USB_HANDLE handle)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.24 USBINDataStageDeferred Function**

Returns true if a control transfer with IN data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferINDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with IN data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferINDataStage() at the start of the control transfer.

This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB\_INTERRUPT option selected in usb\_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main loop context.

In this scenario, typical usage would be:

1. Host starts a control transfer with IN data stage.
2. USBDeviceTasks() (in this scenario, interrupt context) executes.
3. USBDeviceTasks() calls USBCheckOtherReq(), which in turn determines that the control transfer is class specific, with IN data stage.
4. The user code in USBCheckOtherReq() (also in interrupt context, since it is called from USBDeviceTasks(), and therefore executes at the same priority/context) calls USBDeferINDataStage().
5. Meanwhile, in the main loop context, a polling handler may be periodically checking if(USBINDataStageDeferred() == true). Ordinarily, it would evaluate false, but when a control transfer becomes pending, and after the USBDeferINDataStage() macro has been called (ex: in the interrupt context), the if() statement will evaluate true. In this case, the main loop context can then take care of sending the data (when ready), by calling USBEP0SendRAMPtr() or USBEP0SendROMPtr() and USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage().

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
bool USBINDataStageDeferred( );
```

**Function**

```
bool USBINDataStageDeferred(void);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.25 USBIsBusSuspended Function**

This function indicates if the USB bus is in suspend mode.

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
bool USBIsBusSuspended( );
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function indicates if the USB bus is in suspend mode. This function is typically used for checking if the conditions are consistent with performing a USB remote wakeup sequence.

Typical Usage:

```
if((USBIsBusSuspended() == true) && (USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus() == true))
{
    //Check if some stimulus occurred, which will be used as the wakeup source
    if(sw3 == 0)
    {
        USBCBSendResume(); //Send the remote wakeup signalling to the host
    }
}
// otherwise do some other application specific tasks
```

**Remarks**

The USBIsBusSuspended() function relies on the USBBusIsSuspended boolean variable, which gets updated by the USBDeviceTasks() function. Therefore, in order to be sure the return value is not "stale", it is suggested to make sure USBDeviceTasks() has executed recently (if using USB polling mode).

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
bool USBIsBusSuspended(void);
```

### 1.4.1.1.1.26 USBIsDeviceSuspended Function

This function indicates if the USB module is in suspend mode.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBIsDeviceSuspended();
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function indicates if the USB module is in suspend mode. This function does NOT indicate that a suspend request has been received. It only reflects the state of the USB module.

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBIsDeviceSuspended() == true)
{
    return;
}
// otherwise do some application specific tasks
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
bool USBIsDeviceSuspended(void)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.27 USBOUTDataStageDeferred Function**

Returns true if a control transfer with OUT data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferOUTDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with OUT data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferOUTDataStage() at the start of the control transfer.

This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB\_INTERRUPT option selected in usb\_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main loop context.

In this scenario, typical usage would be:

1. Host starts a control transfer with OUT data stage.
2. USBDeviceTasks() (in this scenario, interrupt context) executes.
3. USBDeviceTasks() calls USBCBCheckOtherReq(), which in turn determines that the control transfer is class specific, with OUT data stage.
4. The user code in USBCBCheckOtherReq() (also in interrupt context, since it is called from USBDeviceTasks()), and therefore executes at the same priority/context) calls USBDeferOUTDataStage().
5. Meanwhile, in the main loop context, a polling handler may be periodically checking if(USBOUTDataStageDeferred() == true). Ordinarily, it would evaluate false, but when a control transfer becomes pending, and after the USBDeferOUTDataStage() macro has been called (ex: in the interrupt context), the if() statement will evaluate true. In this case, the main loop context can then take care of receiving the data, by calling USBEP0Receive() and USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage().

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
bool USBOUTDataStageDeferred( );
```

**Function**

```
bool USBOUTDataStageDeferred(void);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.28 USBRxOnePacket Function**

Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
USB_HANDLE USBRxOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len);
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
uint8_t ep	The endpoint number you want to receive the data on.
uint8_t* data	Pointer to a user buffer where the data will go when it arrives from the host. Note: This RAM must be USB module accessible.
uint16_t len	The len parameter should always be set to the maximum endpoint packet size, specified in the USB descriptor for this endpoint. The host may send <= the number of bytes as the endpoint size in the endpoint descriptor. After the transaction is complete, the application firmware can call USBHandleGetLength() to determine how many bytes the host actually sent in the last transaction on this endpoint.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	Returns a pointer to the BDT entry associated with the transaction. The firmware can check for completion of the transaction by using the USBHandleBusy() function, using the returned USB_HANDLE value.

**Function**

```
USB_HANDLE USBRxOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.29 USBSoftDetach Function**

This function performs a detach from the USB bus via software.

**File**

```
usb_device.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void USBSoftDetach();
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function performs a detach from the USB bus via software.

**Remarks**

Caution should be used when detaching from the bus. Some PC drivers and programs may require additional time after a detach before a device can be reattached to the bus.

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBSoftDetach(void);
```

**1.4.1.1.1.30 USBStallEndpoint Function**

Configures the specified endpoint to send STALL to the host, the next time the host tries to access the endpoint.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBStallEndpoint(uint8_t ep, uint8_t dir);
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBStallEndpoint(uint8_t ep, uint8_t dir)
```

**1.4.1.1.1.31 USBTransferOnePacket Function**

Transfers a single packet (one transaction) of data on the USB bus.

**File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
USB_HANDLE USBTransferOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t dir, uint8_t* data, uint8_t len);
```

**Description**

The USBTransferOnePacket() function prepares a USB endpoint so that it may send data to the host (an IN transaction), or receive data from the host (an OUT transaction). The USBTransferOnePacket() function can be used both to receive and send data to the host. This function is the primary API function provided by the USB stack firmware for sending or receiving application data over the USB port.

The USBTransferOnePacket() is intended for use with all application endpoints. It is not used for sending or receiving application data through endpoint 0 by using control transfers. Separate API functions, such as USBEP0Receive(), USBEP0SendRAMPtr(), and USBEP0SendROMPtr() are provided for this purpose.

The USBTransferOnePacket() writes to the Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) entry associated with an endpoint buffer, and sets the UOWN bit, which prepares the USB hardware to allow the transaction to complete. The application firmware can use the USBHandleBusy() macro to check the status of the transaction, to see if the data has been successfully transmitted yet.

**Typical Usage**

```
//make sure that the we are in the configured state
if(USBGetDeviceState() == CONFIGURED_STATE)
{
    //make sure that the last transaction isn't busy by checking the handle
    if(!USBHandleBusy(USBInHandle))
    {
        //Write the new data that we wish to send to the host to the INPacket[] array
        INPacket[0] = USEFUL_APPLICATION_VALUE1;
        INPacket[1] = USEFUL_APPLICATION_VALUE2;
        //INPacket[2] = ... (fill in the rest of the packet data)

        //Send the data contained in the INPacket[] array through endpoint "EP_NUM"
        USBInHandle =
        USBTransferOnePacket(EP_NUM, IN_TO_HOST, (uint8_t*)&INPacket[0], sizeof(INPacket));
    }
}
```

**Remarks**

If calling the USBTransferOnePacket() function from within the USBCBInitEP() callback function, the set configuration is still being processed and the USBDeviceState may not be == CONFIGURED\_STATE yet. In this special case, the

USBTransferOnePacket() may still be called, but make sure that the endpoint has been enabled and initialized by the USBEnableEndpoint() function first.

### Preconditions

Before calling USBTransferOnePacket(), the following should be true.

1. The USB stack has already been initialized (USBDeviceInit() was called).
2. A transaction is not already pending on the specified endpoint. This is done by checking the previous request using the USBHandleBusy() macro (see the typical usage example).
3. The host has already sent a set configuration request and the enumeration process is complete. This can be checked by verifying that the USBGetDeviceState() macro returns "CONFIGURED\_STATE", prior to calling USBTransferOnePacket().

### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	handle to the transfer. The handle is a pointer to the BDT entry associated with this transaction. The
status of the transaction (ex	if it is complete or still pending) can be checked using the USBHandleBusy() macro and supplying the USB_HANDLE provided by USBTransferOnePacket().

### Function

```
USB_HANDLE USBTransferOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t dir, uint8_t* data, uint8_t len)
```

#### 1.4.1.1.1.32 USBTxOnePacket Function

Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

### File

usb\_device.h

### Syntax

```
USB_HANDLE USBTxOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len);
```

### Remarks

None

### Preconditions

None

### Parameters

Parameters	Description
uint8_t ep	the endpoint number you want to send the data out of
uint8_t* data	pointer to a user buffer that contains the data that you wish to send to the host. Note: This RAM buffer must be accessible by the USB module.
uint16_t len	the number of bytes of data that you wish to send to the host, in the next transaction on this endpoint. Note: this value should always be less than or equal to the endpoint size, as specified in the USB endpoint descriptor.

### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	Returns a pointer to the BDT entry associated with the transaction. The firmware can check for completion of the transaction by using the USBHandleBusy() function, using the returned USB_HANDLE value.

**Function**

```
USB_HANDLE USBTxOnePacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len)
```

**1.4.1.1.2 Data Types and Constants****Macros**

Name	Description
DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t	The DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macro is implemented for convinence. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8_t in LSB format. The DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macro breaks up a uint32_t into the appropriate uint8_t entries in LSB.
DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t	The DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t() macro is implemented for convinence. The DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t() macro provides a consistant macro for use with a byte when generating a configuratin descriptor when using either the DESC_CONFIG_WORD() or DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macros.
DESC_CONFIG_WORD	The DESC_CONFIG_WORD() macro is implemented for convinence. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8_t in LSB format. The DESC_CONFIG_WORD() macro breaks up a uint16_t into the appropriate uint8_t entries in LSB. Typical Usage:
USB_EP0_BUSY	The PIPE is busy
USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO	include a trailing zero packet
USB_EP0_NO_DATA	no data to send
USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS	no options set
USB_EP0_RAM	Data comes from const
USB_EP0_ROM	Data comes from RAM
USB_HANDLE	USB_HANDLE is a pointer to an entry in the BDT. This pointer can be used to read the length of the last transfer, the status of the last transfer, and various other information. Insure to initialize USB_HANDLE objects to NULL so that they are in a known state during their first usage.

**Module**

Device Stack

**Types**

Name	Description
USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS	USB device stack events description here - DWF
USB_DEVICE_STATE	USB Device States as returned by USBGetDeviceState(). Only the defintions for these states should be used. The actual value for each state should not be relied upon as constant and may change based on the implementation.

**Description****1.4.1.1.2.1 USB\_DEVICE\_STACK\_EVENTS Type****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef enum USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS@1 USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS;
```

**Description**

USB device stack events description here - DWF

**1.4.1.1.2.2 USB\_DEVICE\_STATE Type****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef enum USB_DEVICE_STATE@1 USB_DEVICE_STATE;
```

**Description**

USB Device States as returned by USBGetDeviceState(). Only the definitions for these states should be used. The actual value for each state should not be relied upon as constant and may change based on the implementation.

**1.4.1.1.2.3 DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t Macro****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t(a) (a&0xFF), ((a>>8)&0xFF), ((a>>16)&0xFF), ((a>>24)&0xFF)
```

**Description**

The DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t() macro is implemented for convenience. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8\_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8\_t in LSB format. The DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t() macro breaks up a uint32\_t into the appropriate uint8\_t entries in LSB.

**1.4.1.1.2.4 DESC\_CONFIG\_uint8\_t Macro****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t(a) (a)
```

**Description**

The DESC\_CONFIG\_uint8\_t() macro is implemented for convenience. The DESC\_CONFIG\_uint8\_t() macro provides a consistent macro for use with a byte when generating a configuration descriptor when using either the DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD() or DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t() macros.

**1.4.1.1.2.5 DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD Macro****File**

usb\_device.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DESC_CONFIG_WORD(a) (a&0xFF), ((a>>8)&0xFF)
```

**Description**

The DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD() macro is implemented for convenience. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8\_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8\_t in LSB format. The DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD() macro breaks up a uint16\_t into the appropriate uint8\_t entries in LSB. Typical Usage:

```
const uint8_t configDescriptor1[]={
    0x09, // Size of this descriptor in bytes
    USB_DESCRIPTOR_CONFIGURATION, // CONFIGURATION descriptor type
```

```
DESC_CONFIG_WORD(0x0022), // Total length of data for this cfg
```

#### 1.4.1.1.2.6 USB\_EP0\_BUSY Macro

##### File

usb\_device.h

##### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_BUSY 0x80 //The PIPE is busy
```

##### Description

The PIPE is busy

#### 1.4.1.1.2.7 USB\_EP0\_INCLUDE\_ZERO Macro

##### File

usb\_device.h

##### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO 0x40 //include a trailing zero packet
```

##### Description

include a trailing zero packet

#### 1.4.1.1.2.8 USB\_EP0\_NO\_DATA Macro

##### File

usb\_device.h

##### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_NO_DATA 0x00 //no data to send
```

##### Description

no data to send

#### 1.4.1.1.2.9 USB\_EP0\_NO\_OPTIONS Macro

##### File

usb\_device.h

##### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS 0x00 //no options set
```

##### Description

no options set

#### 1.4.1.1.2.10 USB\_EP0\_RAM Macro

##### File

usb\_device.h

##### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_RAM 0x01 //Data comes from const
```

##### Description

Data comes from const

### 1.4.1.1.2.11 USB\_EP0\_ROM Macro

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
#define USB_EP0_ROM 0x00 //Data comes from RAM
```

#### Description

Data comes from RAM

### 1.4.1.1.2.12 USB\_HANDLE Macro

#### File

usb\_device.h

#### Syntax

```
#define USB_HANDLE void*
```

#### Description

USB\_HANDLE is a pointer to an entry in the BDT. This pointer can be used to read the length of the last transfer, the status of the last transfer, and various other information. Insure to initialize USB\_HANDLE objects to NULL so that they are in a known state during their first usage.

### 1.4.1.1.3 usb\_device.h

Defines types and APIs associated with the USB device stack.

#### Functions

	Name	Description
⇒	USB_APPLICATION_EVENT_HANDLER	This function is called whenever the USB stack wants to notify the user of an event.
⇒	USBCancelIO	This function cancels the transfers pending on the specified endpoint. This function can only be used after a SETUP packet is received and before that setup packet is handled. This is the time period in which the EVENT_EP0_REQUEST is thrown, before the event handler function returns to the stack.
⇒	USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage	This function allows the data stage of either a host-to-device or device-to-host control transfer (with data stage) to complete. This function is meant to be used in conjunction with either the USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(). If the firmware does not call either USBDeferOUTDataStage() or USBDeferINDataStage(), then the firmware does not need to manually call USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(), as the USB stack will call this function instead.
⇒	USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage	This function prepares the proper endpoint 0 IN or endpoint 0 OUT (based on the controlTransferState) to allow the status stage packet of a control transfer to complete. This function gets used internally by the USB stack itself, but it may also be called from the application firmware, IF the application firmware called the USBDeferStatusStage() function during the initial processing of the control transfer request. In this case, the application must call the USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage() once, after it has fully completed processing and handling the data stage portion of the request. If the application firmware has no need for delaying... more

◆	USBDeferINDataStage	<p>This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the IN token packets sent from the host, during the data stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to process and prepare the IN data packets that will eventually be sent to the host. This is also useful, if the firmware needs to process/prepare the IN data in a different context than what the USBDeviceTasks() function executes at.</p> <p>Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches the... more</p>
◆	USBDeferOUTDataStage	<p>This function will cause the USB hardware to continuously NAK the OUT data packets sent from the host, during the data stage of a device to host control transfer. This allows the firmware more time to prepare the RAM buffer that will eventually be used to receive the data from the host. This is also useful, if the firmware wishes to receive the OUT data in a different context than what the USBDeviceTasks() function executes at.</p> <p>Calling this function (macro) will assert ownership of the currently pending control transfer. Therefore, the USB stack will not STALL when it reaches... more</p>
◆	USBDeferStatusStage	<p>Calling this function will prevent the USB stack from automatically enabling the status stage for the currently pending control transfer from completing immediately after all data bytes have been sent or received. This is useful if a class handler or USB application firmware project uses control transfers for sending/receiving data over EPO, but requires time in order to finish processing and/or to consume the data.</p> <p>For example: Consider an application which receives OUT data from the USB host, through EPO using control transfers. Now assume that this application wishes to do something time consuming with this data (ex: transmit it... more</p>
◆	USBDeviceAttach	Checks if VBUS is present, and that the USB module is not already initialized, and if so, enables the USB module so as to signal device attachment to the USB host.
◆	USBDeviceDetach	This function configures the USB module to "soft detach" itself from the USB host.
◆	USBDeviceInit	This function initializes the device stack it in the default state. The USB module will be completely reset including all of the internal variables, registers, and interrupt flags.
◆	USBDeviceTasks	This function is the main state machine/transaction handler of the USB device side stack. When the USB stack is operated in "USB_POLLING" mode (usb_config.h user option) the USBDeviceTasks() function should be called periodically to receive and transmit packets through the stack. This function also takes care of control transfers associated with the USB enumeration process, and detecting various USB events (such as suspend). This function should be called at least once every 1.8ms during the USB enumeration process. After the enumeration process is complete (which can be determined when USBGetDeviceState() returns CONFIGURED_STATE), the USBDeviceTasks() handler may be called the... more
◆	USBEnableEndpoint	This function will enable the specified endpoint with the specified options
◆	USBEP0Receive	Sets the destination, size, and a function to call on the completion of the next control write.
◆	USBEP0SendRAMPtr	Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a RAM source
◆	USBEP0SendROMPtr	Sets the source, size, and options of the data you wish to send from a const source
◆	USBEP0Transmit	Sets the address of the data to send over the control endpoint

◆	USBGetDeviceState	This function will return the current state of the device on the USB. This function should return CONFIGURED_STATE before an application tries to send information on the bus.
◆	USBGetNextHandle	Retrieves the handle to the next endpoint BDT entry that the USBTransferOnePacket() will use.
◆	USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus	This function indicates if remote wakeup has been enabled by the host. Devices that support remote wakeup should use this function to determine if it should send a remote wakeup.
◆	USBGetSuspendState	This function indicates if the USB port that this device is attached to is currently suspended. When suspended, it will not be able to transfer data over the bus.
◆	USBHandleBusy	Checks to see if the input handle is busy
◆	USBHandleGetAddr	Retrieves the address of the destination buffer of the input handle
◆	USBHandleGetLength	Retrieves the length of the destination buffer of the input handle
◆	USBINDataStageDeferred	Returns true if a control transfer with IN data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferINDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with IN data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferINDataStage() at the start of the control transfer.  This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB_INTERRUPT option selected in usb_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main... more
◆	USBIsBusSuspended	This function indicates if the USB bus is in suspend mode.
◆	USBIsDeviceSuspended	This function indicates if the USB module is in suspend mode.
◆	USBOUTDataStageDeferred	Returns true if a control transfer with OUT data stage is pending, and the firmware has called USBDeferOUTDataStage(), but has not yet called USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage(). Returns false if a control transfer with OUT data stage is either not pending, or the firmware did not call USBDeferOUTDataStage() at the start of the control transfer.  This function (macro) would typically be used in the case where the USBDeviceTasks() function executes in the interrupt context (ex: USB_INTERRUPT option selected in usb_config.h), but the firmware wishes to take care of handling the data stage of the control transfer in the main... more
◆	USBRxOnePacket	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint
◆	USBSoftDetach	This function performs a detach from the USB bus via software.
◆	USBStallEndpoint	Configures the specified endpoint to send STALL to the host, the next time the host tries to access the endpoint.
◆	USBTransferOnePacket	Transfers a single packet (one transaction) of data on the USB bus.
◆	USBTxOnePacket	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

### Macros

Name	Description
DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t	The DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macro is implemented for convinence. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8_t in LSB format. The DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macro breaks up a uint32_t into the appropriate uint8_t entries in LSB.
DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t	The DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t() macro is implemented for convinence. The DESC_CONFIG_uint8_t() macro provides a consistant macro for use with a byte when generating a configuratin descriptor when using either the DESC_CONFIG_WORD() or DESC_CONFIG_uint32_t() macros.

DESC_CONFIG_WORD	The DESC_CONFIG_WORD() macro is implemented for convinence. Since the configuration descriptor array is a uint8_t array, each entry needs to be a uint8_t in LSB format. The DESC_CONFIG_WORD() macro breaks up a uint16_t into the appropriate uint8_t entries in LSB. Typical Usage:
USB_EP0_BUSY	The PIPE is busy
USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO	include a trailing zero packet
USB_EP0_NO_DATA	no data to send
USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS	no options set
USB_EP0_RAM	Data comes from const
USB_EP0_ROM	Data comes from RAM
USB_HANDLE	USB_HANDLE is a pointer to an entry in the BDT. This pointer can be used to read the length of the last transfer, the status of the last transfer, and various other information. Insure to initialize USB_HANDLE objects to NULL so that they are in a known state during their first usage.

**Module**

Device Stack

**Types**

Name	Description
USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS	USB device stack events description here - DWF
USB_DEVICE_STATE	USB Device States as returned by USBGetDeviceState(). Only the definitions for these states should be used. The actual value for each state should not be relied upon as constant and may change based on the implementation.

**Description**

Module for Microchip USB Library

Defines types and APIs associated with the USB device stack.

**File Name**

usb\_device.h

**Company**

Microchip Technology Inc.

## 1.4.1.2 Audio Function Driver

**Files**

Name	Description
usb_device_audio.h	This is file usb_device_audio.h.

**Description**

### 1.4.1.2.1 Functions

**Functions**

	Name	Description
	USBCheckAudioRequest	This routine checks the setup data packet to see if it knows how to handle it

**Module**

Audio Function Driver

**Description****1.4.1.2.1.1 USBCheckAudioRequest Function**

This routine checks the setup data packet to see if it knows how to handle it

**File**

usb\_device\_audio.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBCheckAudioRequest ( ) ;
```

**Description**

This routine checks the setup data packet to see if it knows how to handle it

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBCheckAudioRequest(void)
```

**1.4.1.2.2 usb\_device\_audio.h****Functions**

	Name	Description
	USBCheckAudioRequest	This routine checks the setup data packet to see if it knows how to handle it

**Module**

Audio Function Driver

**Description**

This is file usb\_device\_audio.h.

**1.4.1.3 CDC Function Driver****Files**

Name	Description
usb_device_cdc.h	This is file usb_device_cdc.h.

**Description**

### 1.4.1.3.1 usb\_device\_cdc.h

#### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	CDCInitEP	This function initializes the CDC function driver. This function should be called after the SET_CONFIGURATION command (ex: within the context of the USBCBInitEP() function).
≡	CDCNotificationHandler	Checks for changes in DSR status and reports them to the USB host.
≡	CDCTxService	CDCTxService handles device-to-host transaction(s). This function should be called once per Main Program loop after the device reaches the configured state.
≡	getsUSBUSART	getsUSBUSART copies a string of BYTEs received through USB CDC Bulk OUT endpoint to a user's specified location. It is a non-blocking function. It does not wait for data if there is no data available. Instead it returns '0' to notify the caller that there is no data available.
≡	putsUSBUSART	putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data literals and data located in program memory.
≡	putsUSBUSART	putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data from a RAM buffer.
≡	putUSBUSART	putUSBUSART writes an array of data to the USB. Use this version, is capable of transferring 0x00 (what is typically a NULL character in any of the string transfer functions).
≡	USBCDCEventHandler	Handles events from the USB stack, which may have an effect on the CDC endpoint(s).
≡	USBCheckCDCRequest	This routine checks the most recently received SETUP data packet to see if the request is specific to the CDC class. If the request was a CDC specific request, this function will take care of handling the request and responding appropriately.

#### Macros

Name	Description
CDCSetBaudRate	This macro is used set the baud rate reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetCharacterFormat	This macro is used manually set the character format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetDataSize	This function is used manually set the number of data bits reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetLineCoding	This function is used to manually set the data reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetParity	This function is used manually set the parity format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady	Deprecated in MCHPFSUSB v2.3. This macro has been replaced by USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady().
mUSBUSARTTxRam	Use this macro to transfer data located in data memory. Use this macro when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Data stream is not null-terminated</li> <li>2. Transfer length is known</li> </ol> Remember: <code>cdc_trf_state</code> must == <code>CDC_TX_READY</code> Unlike <code>putsUSBUSART</code> , there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when <code>cdc_trf_state != CDC_TX_READY</code> Typical Usage:

mUSBUSARTTxRom	Use this macro to transfer data located in program memory. Use this macro when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Data stream is not null-terminated</li> <li>2. Transfer length is known</li> </ol> Remember: <code>cdc_trf_state</code> must == <code>CDC_TX_READY</code> Unlike <code>putsUSBUSART</code> , there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when <code>cdc_trf_state != CDC_TX_READY</code>  Typical Usage:
NUM_STOP_BITS_1	1 stop bit - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetCharacterFormat()</code>
NUM_STOP_BITS_1_5	1.5 stop bit - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetCharacterFormat()</code>
NUM_STOP_BITS_2	2 stop bit - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetCharacterFormat()</code>
PARITY_EVEN	even parity - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetParity()</code>
PARITY_MARK	mark parity - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetParity()</code>
PARITY_NONE	no parity - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetParity()</code>
PARITY_ODD	odd parity - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetParity()</code>
PARITY_SPACE	space parity - used by <code>CDCSetLineCoding()</code> and <code>CDCSetParity()</code>
USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady	This macro is used to check if the CDC class is ready to send more data.

**Module**

CDC Function Driver

**Description**

This is file `usb_device_cdc.h`.

**1.4.1.3.2 Functions**

Functions and macro functions used to interface with the CDC module.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	<code>CDCInitEP</code>	This function initializes the CDC function driver. This function should be called after the <code>SET_CONFIGURATION</code> command (ex: within the context of the <code>USBCBInitEP()</code> function).
≡	<code>CDCNotificationHandler</code>	Checks for changes in DSR status and reports them to the USB host.
≡	<code>CDCTxService</code>	<code>CDCTxService</code> handles device-to-host transaction(s). This function should be called once per Main Program loop after the device reaches the configured state.
≡	<code>getsUSBUSART</code>	<code>getsUSBUSART</code> copies a string of BYTES received through USB CDC Bulk OUT endpoint to a user's specified location. It is a non-blocking function. It does not wait for data if there is no data available. Instead it returns '0' to notify the caller that there is no data available.
≡	<code>putsUSBUSART</code>	<code>putsUSBUSART</code> writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data literals and data located in program memory.
≡	<code>putsUSBUSART</code>	<code>putsUSBUSART</code> writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data from a RAM buffer.
≡	<code>putUSBUSART</code>	<code>putUSBUSART</code> writes an array of data to the USB. Use this version, is capable of transferring 0x00 (what is typically a NULL character in any of the string transfer functions).
≡	<code>USBCDCEventHandler</code>	Handles events from the USB stack, which may have an effect on the CDC endpoint(s).

	<b>USBCheckCDCRequest</b>	This routine checks the most recently received SETUP data packet to see if the request is specific to the CDC class. If the request was a CDC specific request, this function will take care of handling the request and responding appropriately.
---	---------------------------	--

**Macros**

Name	Description
CDCSetBaudRate	This macro is used set the baud rate reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetCharacterFormat	This macro is used manually set the character format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetDataSize	This function is used manually set the number of data bits reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetLineCoding	This function is used to manually set the data reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
CDCSetParity	This function is used manually set the parity format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)
mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady	Deprecated in MCHPFSUSB v2.3. This macro has been replaced by USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady().
mUSBUSARTTxRam	Use this macro to transfer data located in data memory. Use this macro when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Data stream is not null-terminated</li> <li>2. Transfer length is known</li> </ol> Remember: <code>cdc_trf_state</code> must == <code>CDC_TX_READY</code> Unlike <code>putsUSBUSART</code> , there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when <code>cdc_trf_state != CDC_TX_READY</code> Typical Usage:
mUSBUSARTTxRom	Use this macro to transfer data located in program memory. Use this macro when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Data stream is not null-terminated</li> <li>2. Transfer length is known</li> </ol> Remember: <code>cdc_trf_state</code> must == <code>CDC_TX_READY</code> Unlike <code>putrsUSBUSART</code> , there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when <code>cdc_trf_state != CDC_TX_READY</code> Typical Usage:
USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady	This macro is used to check if the CDC class is ready to send more data.

**Module**

CDC Function Driver

**Description**

Functions and macro functions used to interface with the CDC module.

**1.4.1.3.2.1 CDCInitEP Function**

This function initializes the CDC function driver. This function should be called after the SET\_CONFIGURATION command (ex: within the context of the USBCBInitEP() function).

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
void CDCInitEP();
```

**Description**

This function initializes the CDC function driver. This function sets the default line coding (baud rate, bit parity, number of data bits, and format). This function also enables the endpoints and prepares for the first transfer from the host.

This function should be called after the SET\_CONFIGURATION command. This is most simply done by calling this function from the USBCBInitEP() function.

Typical Usage:

```
void USBCBInitEP(void)
{
    CDCInitEP();
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

void CDCInitEP(void)

### 1.4.1.3.2.2 CDCNotificationHandler Function

Checks for changes in DSR status and reports them to the USB host.

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
void CDCNotificationHandler();
```

**Description**

Checks for changes in DSR pin state and reports any changes to the USB host.

**Remarks**

This function is only implemented and needed when the USB\_CDC\_SUPPORT\_DSR\_REPORTING option has been enabled. If the function is enabled, it should be called periodically to sample the DSR pin and feed the information to the USB host. This can be done by calling CDCNotificationHandler() by itself, or, by calling CDCTxService() which also calls CDCNotificationHandler() internally, when appropriate.

**Preconditions**

CDCInitEP() must have been called previously, prior to calling CDCNotificationHandler() for the first time.

**Function**

void CDCNotificationHandler(void)

### 1.4.1.3.2.3 CDCTxService Function

CDCTxService handles device-to-host transaction(s). This function should be called once per Main Program loop after the device reaches the configured state.

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
void CDCTxService();
```

**Description**

CDCTxService handles device-to-host transaction(s). This function should be called once per Main Program loop after the device reaches the configured state (after the CDCIniEP() function has already executed). This function is needed, in order to advance the internal software state machine that takes care of sending multiple transactions worth of IN USB data to the host, associated with CDC serial data. Failure to call CDCTxService() periodically will prevent data from being sent to the USB host, over the CDC serial data interface.

Typical Usage:

```
void main(void)
{
    USBDeviceInit();
    while(1)
    {
        USBDeviceTasks();
        if((USBGetDeviceState() < CONFIGURED_STATE) ||
           (USBIsDeviceSuspended() == true))
        {
            //Either the device is not configured or we are suspended
            // so we don't want to do execute any application code
            continue; //go back to the top of the while loop
        }
        else
        {
            //Keep trying to send data to the PC as required
            CDCTxService();

            //Run application code.
            UserApplication();
        }
    }
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

CDCIniEP() function should have already executed/the device should be in the CONFIGURED\_STATE.

**Function**

```
void CDCTxService(void)
```

**1.4.1.3.2.4 getsUSBUSART Function**

getsUSBUSART copies a string of BYTES received through USB CDC Bulk OUT endpoint to a user's specified location. It is a non-blocking function. It does not wait for data if there is no data available. Instead it returns '0' to notify the caller that there is no data available.

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t getsUSBUSART(uint8_t * buffer, uint8_t len);
```

**Returns**

uint8\_t - Returns a byte indicating the total number of bytes that were actually received and copied into the specified buffer. The returned value can be anything from 0 up to the len input value. A return value of 0 indicates that no new CDC bulk OUT endpoint data was available.

**Description**

getsUSBUSART copies a string of BYTES received through USB CDC Bulk OUT endpoint to a user's specified location. It is a non-blocking function. It does not wait for data if there is no data available. Instead it returns '0' to notify the caller that there is no data available.

Typical Usage:

```
uint8_t numBytes;
uint8_t buffer[64]

numBytes = getsUSBUSART(buffer, sizeof(buffer)); //until the buffer is free.
if(numBytes > 0)
{
    //we received numBytes bytes of data and they are copied into
    // the "buffer" variable. We can do something with the data
    // here.
}
```

**Preconditions**

Value of input argument 'len' should be smaller than the maximum endpoint size responsible for receiving bulk data from USB host for CDC class. Input argument 'buffer' should point to a buffer area that is bigger or equal to the size specified by 'len'.

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
uint8_t * buffer	Pointer to where received BYTES are to be stored
uint8_t len	The number of BYTES expected.

**Function**

```
uint8_t getsUSBUSART(char *buffer, uint8_t len)
```

**1.4.1.3.2.5 putsUSBUSART Function**

putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data literals and data located in program memory.

**File**

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void putsUSBUSART(const char * data);
```

**Description**

putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data literals and data located in program memory.

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    putsUSBUSART("Hello World");
}
```

The transfer mechanism for device-to-host(put) is more flexible than host-to-device(get). It can handle a string of data larger than the maximum size of bulk IN endpoint. A state machine is used to transfer a long string of data over multiple USB

transactions. CDCTxService() must be called periodically to keep sending blocks of data to the host.

#### Preconditions

USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady() must return true. This indicates that the last transfer is complete and is ready to receive a new block of data. The string of characters pointed to by 'data' must equal to or smaller than 255 BYTES.

#### Function

```
void putsUSBUSART(const const char *data)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.6 putsUSBUSART Function

putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data from a RAM buffer.

#### File

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

#### Syntax

```
void putsUSBUSART(char * data);
```

#### Description

putsUSBUSART writes a string of data to the USB including the null character. Use this version, 'puts', to transfer data from a RAM buffer.

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    char data[] = "Hello World";
    putsUSBUSART(data);
}
```

The transfer mechanism for device-to-host(put) is more flexible than host-to-device(get). It can handle a string of data larger than the maximum size of bulk IN endpoint. A state machine is used to transfer a long string of data over multiple USB transactions. CDCTxService() must be called periodically to keep sending blocks of data to the host.

#### Preconditions

USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady() must return true. This indicates that the last transfer is complete and is ready to receive a new block of data. The string of characters pointed to by 'data' must equal to or smaller than 255 BYTES.

#### Function

```
void putsUSBUSART(char *data)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.7 putUSBUSART Function

putUSBUSART writes an array of data to the USB. Use this version, is capable of transferring 0x00 (what is typically a NULL character in any of the string transfer functions).

#### File

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

#### Syntax

```
void putUSBUSART(uint8_t * data, uint8_t Length);
```

#### Description

putUSBUSART writes an array of data to the USB. Use this version, is capable of transferring 0x00 (what is typically a NULL character in any of the string transfer functions).

Typical Usage:

```

if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    char data[] = {0x00, 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04};
    putUSBUSART(data,5);
}

```

The transfer mechanism for device-to-host(put) is more flexible than host-to-device(get). It can handle a string of data larger than the maximum size of bulk IN endpoint. A state machine is used to transfer a long string of data over multiple USB transactions. CDCTxService() must be called periodically to keep sending blocks of data to the host.

#### Preconditions

USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady() must return true. This indicates that the last transfer is complete and is ready to receive a new block of data. The string of characters pointed to by 'data' must equal to or smaller than 255 BYTES.

#### Function

```
void putUSBUSART(char *data, uint8_t length)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.8 USBDCEventHandler Function

Handles events from the USB stack, which may have an effect on the CDC endpoint(s).

#### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
bool USBDCEventHandler(USB_EVENT event, void * pdata, uint16_t size);
```

#### Description

Handles events from the USB stack. This function should be called when there is a USB event that needs to be processed by the CDC driver.

#### Preconditions

Value of input argument 'len' should be smaller than the maximum endpoint size responsible for receiving bulk data from USB host for CDC class. Input argument 'buffer' should point to a buffer area that is bigger or equal to the size specified by 'len'.

#### Parameters

Parameters	Description
USB_EVENT event	the type of event that occurred
void * pdata	pointer to the data that caused the event
uint16_t size	the size of the data that is pointed to by pdata

#### Function

```
bool USBDCEventHandler(USB_EVENT event, void *pdata, uint16_t size)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.9 USBCheckCDCRequest Function

#### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBCheckCDCRequest();
```

**Description**

This routine checks the most recently received SETUP data packet to see if the request is specific to the CDC class. If the request was a CDC specific request, this function will take care of handling the request and responding appropriately.

**Remarks**

This function does not change status or do anything if the SETUP packet did not contain a CDC class specific request.

**Preconditions**

This function should only be called after a control transfer SETUP packet has arrived from the host.

**Function**

```
void USBCheckCDCRequest(void)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.10 CDCSetBaudRate Macro

This macro is used set the baud rate reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)

**File**

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

**Syntax**

```
#define CDCSetBaudRate(baudRate) {line_coding.dwDTERate=baudRate;}
```

**Description**

This macro is used set the baud rate reported back to the host during a get line coding request.

Typical Usage:

```
CDCSetBaudRate(19200);
```

This function is optional for CDC devices that do not actually convert the USB traffic to a hardware UART.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void CDCSetBaudRate(uint32_t baudRate)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.11 CDCSetCharacterFormat Macro

This macro is used manually set the character format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)

**File**

```
usb_device_cdc.h
```

**Syntax**

```
#define CDCSetCharacterFormat(charFormat) {line_coding.bCharFormat=charFormat;}
```

**Description**

This macro is used manually set the character format reported back to the host during a get line coding request.

Typical Usage:

```
CDCSetCharacterFormat(NUM_STOP_BITS_1);
```

This function is optional for CDC devices that do not actually convert the USB traffic to a hardware UART.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void CDCSetCharacterFormat(uint8_t charFormat)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.12 CDCSetDataSize Macro

This function is used manually set the number of data bits reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define CDCSetDataSize(dataBits) {line_coding.bDataBits=dataBits;}
```

**Description**

This function is used manually set the number of data bits reported back to the host during a get line coding request.

Typical Usage:

```
CDCSetDataSize(8);
```

This function is optional for CDC devices that do not actually convert the USB traffic to a hardware UART.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void CDCSetDataSize(uint8_t dataBits)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.13 CDCSetLineCoding Macro

This function is used to manually set the data reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define CDCSetLineCoding(baud,format,parity,dataSize) {\n    CDCSetBaudRate(baud);\n    CDCSetCharacterFormat(format);\n    CDCSetParity(parity);\n    CDCSetDataSize(dataSize);\n}
```

**Description**

This function is used to manually set the data reported back to the host during a get line coding request.

Typical Usage:

```
CDCSetLineCoding(19200, NUM_STOP_BITS_1, PARITY_NONE, 8);
```

This function is optional for CDC devices that do not actually convert the USB traffic to a hardware UART.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void CDCSetLineCoding(uint32_t baud, uint8_t format, uint8_t parity, uint8_t dataSize)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.14 CDCSetParity Macro

This function is used manually set the parity format reported back to the host during a get line coding request. (optional)

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define CDCSetParity(parityType) {line_coding.bParityType=parityType;}
```

**Description**

This macro is used manually set the parity format reported back to the host during a get line coding request.

Typical Usage:

```
CDCSetParity(PARITY_NONE);
```

This function is optional for CDC devices that do not actually convert the USB traffic to a hardware UART.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void CDCSetParity(uint8_t parityType)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.15 mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady Macro

**File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady()
```

**Description**

Deprecated in MCHPFSUSB v2.3. This macro has been replaced by USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady().

**Function**

```
void mUSBUSARTTxRam(uint8_t *pData, uint8_t len)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.16 mUSBUSARTTxRam Macro

#### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
#define mUSBUSARTTxRam(pData, len) \
{
    pCDCSrc.bRam = pData;           \
    cdc_tx_len = len;               \
    cdc_mem_type = USB_EP0_RAM;     \
    cdc_trf_state = CDC_TX_BUSY;    \
}
```

#### Description

Use this macro to transfer data located in data memory. Use this macro when:

1. Data stream is not null-terminated
2. Transfer length is known

Remember: cdc\_trf\_state must == CDC\_TX\_READY Unlike putsUSBUSART, there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when cdc\_trf\_state != CDC\_TX\_READY

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    mUSBUSARTTxRam(&UserDataBuffer[0], 200);
}
```

#### Remarks

This macro only handles the setup of the transfer. The actual transfer is handled by CDCTxService(). This macro does not "double buffer" the data. The application firmware should not modify the contents of the pData buffer until all of the data has been sent, as indicated by the USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady() function returning true, subsequent to calling mUSBUSARTTxRam().

#### Preconditions

cdc\_trf\_state must be in the CDC\_TX\_READY state. Value of 'len' must be equal to or smaller than 255 bytes. The USB stack should have reached the CONFIGURED\_STATE prior to calling this API function for the first time.

Parameters: pData : Pointer to the starting location of data bytes len : Number of bytes to be transferred

#### Function

```
void mUSBUSARTTxRam(uint8_t *pData, uint8_t len)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.17 mUSBUSARTTxRom Macro

#### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
#define mUSBUSARTTxRom(pData, len) \
{
    pCDCSrc.bRom = pData;           \
    cdc_tx_len = len;               \
    cdc_mem_type = USB_EP0_ROM;     \
    cdc_trf_state = CDC_TX_BUSY;    \
}
```

#### Description

Use this macro to transfer data located in program memory. Use this macro when:

1. Data stream is not null-terminated
2. Transfer length is known

Remember: `cdc_trf_state` must == `CDC_TX_READY` Unlike `putrsUSBUSART`, there is not code double checking the transfer state. Unexpected behavior will occur if this function is called when `cdc_trf_state != CDC_TX_READY`

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    mUSBUSARTTxRom(&SomeRomString[0], 200);
}
```

#### Remarks

This macro only handles the setup of the transfer. The actual transfer is handled by `CDCTxService()`.

#### Preconditions

`cdc_trf_state` must be in the `CDC_TX_READY` state. Value of 'len' must be equal to or smaller than 255 bytes.

#### Parameters

Parameters	Description
<code>pDdata</code>	Pointer to the starting location of data bytes
<code>len</code>	Number of bytes to be transferred

#### Function

```
void mUSBUSARTTxRom(rom uint8_t *pData, uint8_t len)
```

### 1.4.1.3.2.18 USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady Macro

This macro is used to check if the CDC class is ready to send more data.

#### File

`usb_device_cdc.h`

#### Syntax

```
#define USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady (cdc_trf_state == CDC_TX_READY)
```

#### Description

This macro is used to check if the CDC class handler firmware is ready to send more data to the host over the CDC bulk IN endpoint.

Typical Usage:

```
if(USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady())
{
    putrsUSBUSART("Hello World");
}
```

#### Remarks

Make sure the application periodically calls the `CDCTxService()` handler, or pending USB IN transfers will not be able to advance and complete.

#### Preconditions

The return value of this function is only valid if the device is in a configured state (i.e. - `USBDeviceGetState()` returns `CONFIGURED_STATE`)

#### Function

```
bool USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady(void)
```

### 1.4.1.3.3 Data Types and Constants

Data types and constants used to interface with the CDC module.

#### Macros

Name	Description
NUM_STOP_BITS_1	1 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
NUM_STOP_BITS_1_5	1.5 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
NUM_STOP_BITS_2	2 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
PARITY_EVEN	even parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
PARITY_MARK	mark parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
PARITY_NONE	no parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
PARITY_ODD	odd parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
PARITY_SPACE	space parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

#### Module

CDC Function Driver

#### Description

Data types and constants used to interface with the CDC module.

#### 1.4.1.3.3.1 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1 Macro

##### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

##### Syntax

```
#define NUM_STOP_BITS_1 0 //1 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
```

##### Description

1 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()

#### 1.4.1.3.3.2 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1\_5 Macro

##### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

##### Syntax

```
#define NUM_STOP_BITS_1_5 1 //1.5 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
```

##### Description

1.5 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()

#### 1.4.1.3.3.3 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_2 Macro

##### File

usb\_device\_cdc.h

##### Syntax

```
#define NUM_STOP_BITS_2 2 //2 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()
```

**Description**

2 stop bit - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetCharacterFormat()

**1.4.1.3.3.4 PARITY\_EVEN Macro****File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define PARITY_EVEN 2 //even parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
```

**Description**

even parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

**1.4.1.3.3.5 PARITY\_MARK Macro****File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define PARITY_MARK 3 //mark parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
```

**Description**

mark parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

**1.4.1.3.3.6 PARITY\_NONE Macro****File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define PARITY_NONE 0 //no parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
```

**Description**

no parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

**1.4.1.3.3.7 PARITY\_ODD Macro****File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define PARITY_ODD 1 //odd parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
```

**Description**

odd parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

**1.4.1.3.3.8 PARITY\_SPACE Macro****File**

usb\_device\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define PARITY_SPACE 4 //space parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()
```

**Description**

space parity - used by CDCSetLineCoding() and CDCSetParity()

## 1.4.1.4 HID Function Driver

**Files**

Name	Description
usb_device_hid.h	This is file usb_device_hid.h.

**Description**

### 1.4.1.4.1 Functions

**Macros**

Name	Description
HIDRxHandleBusy	Retreives the status of the buffer ownership
HIDRxPacket	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint
HIDTxHandleBusy	Retreives the status of the buffer ownership
HIDTxPacket	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**Module**

HID Function Driver

**Description**

#### 1.4.1.4.1.1 HIDRxHandleBusy Macro

Retreives the status of the buffer ownership

**File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HIDRxHandleBusy(handle) USBHandleBusy(handle)
```

**Description**

Retreives the status of the buffer ownership. This function will indicate if the previous transfer is complete or not.

This function will take the input handle (pointer to a BDT entry) and will check the UOWN bit. If the UOWN bit is set then that indicates that the transfer is not complete and the USB module still owns the data memory. If the UOWN bit is clear that means that the transfer is complete and that the CPU now owns the data memory.

For more information about the BDT, please refer to the appropriate datasheet for the device in use.

Typical Usage:

```
if( !HIDRxHandleBusy(USBOutHandle) )
{
    //The data is available in the buffer that was specified when the
    // HIDRxPacket() was called.
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	the HID handle is still busy
FALSE	the HID handle is not busy and is ready to receive additional data.

**Function**

```
bool HIDRxHandleBusy( USB_HANDLE handle)
```

**1.4.1.4.1.2 HIDRxPacket Macro**

Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint

**File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HIDRxPacket USBRxOnePacket
```

**Description**

Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint.

Typical Usage:

```
//Read 64-uint8_ts from endpoint HID_EP, into the ReceivedDataBuffer array.
// Make sure to save the return handle so that we can check it later
// to determine when the transfer is complete.
USBOutHandle = HIDRxPacket(HID_EP, (uint8_t*)&ReceivedDataBuffer, 64);
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	a handle for the transfer. This information should be kept to track the status of the transfer

**Function**

```
USB_HANDLE HIDRxPacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len)
```

**1.4.1.4.1.3 HIDTxHandleBusy Macro**

Retrieves the status of the buffer ownership

**File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HIDTxHandleBusy(handle) USBHandleBusy(handle)
```

**Description**

Retrieves the status of the buffer ownership. This function will indicate if the previous transfer is complete or not.

This function will take the input handle (pointer to a BDT entry) and will check the UOWN bit. If the UOWN bit is set then that indicates that the transfer is not complete and the USB module still owns the data memory. If the UOWN bit is clear that means that the transfer is complete and that the CPU now owns the data memory.

For more information about the BDT, please refer to the appropriate datasheet for the device in use.

Typical Usage:

```
//make sure that the last transfer isn't busy by checking the handle
if(!HIDTxHandleBusy(USBInHandle))
{
    //Send the data contained in the ToSendDataBuffer[] array out on
    // endpoint HID_EP
    USBInHandle =
    HIDTxPacket(HID_EP, (uint8_t*)&ToSendDataBuffer[0], sizeof(ToSendDataBuffer));
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	the HID handle is still busy
FALSE	the HID handle is not busy and is ready to send additional data.

**Function**

```
bool HIDTxHandleBusy( USB_HANDLE handle)
```

**1.4.1.4.1.4 HIDTxPacket Macro**

Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HIDTxPacket USBTxOnePacket
```

**Description**

This function sends the specified data out the specified endpoint and returns a handle to the transfer information.

Typical Usage:

```
//make sure that the last transfer isn't busy by checking the handle
if(!HIDTxHandleBusy(USBInHandle))
{
    //Send the data contained in the ToSendDataBuffer[] array out on
    // endpoint HID_EP
    USBInHandle =
    HIDTxPacket(HID_EP, (uint8_t*)&ToSendDataBuffer[0], sizeof(ToSendDataBuffer));
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	a handle for the transfer. This information should be kept to track the status of the transfer

**Function**

```
USB_HANDLE HIDTxPacket(uint8_t ep, uint8_t* data, uint16_t len)
```

**1.4.1.4.2 Data Types and Constants****Macros**

Name	Description
BOOT_INTF_SUBCLASS	HID Interface Class SubClass Codes
BOOT_PROTOCOL	Protocol Selection
HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD	This is macro HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD.
HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE	This is macro HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE.
HID_PROTOCOL_NONE	HID Interface Class Protocol Codes

**Module**

HID Function Driver

**Description****1.4.1.4.2.1 BOOT\_INTF\_SUBCLASS Macro****File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define BOOT_INTF_SUBCLASS 0x01
```

**Description**

HID Interface Class SubClass Codes

**1.4.1.4.2.2 BOOT\_PROTOCOL Macro****File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define BOOT_PROTOCOL 0x00
```

**Description**

Protocol Selection

**1.4.1.4.2.3 HID\_PROTOCOL\_KEYBOARD Macro****File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD 0x01
```

**Description**

This is macro HID\_PROTOCOL\_KEYBOARD.

**1.4.1.4.2.4 HID\_PROTOCOL\_MOUSE Macro****File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE 0x02
```

**Description**

This is macro HID\_PROTOCOL\_MOUSE.

**1.4.1.4.2.5 HID\_PROTOCOL\_NONE Macro****File**

usb\_device\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HID_PROTOCOL_NONE 0x00
```

**Description**

HID Interface Class Protocol Codes

**1.4.1.4.3 usb\_device\_hid.h****Macros**

Name	Description
BOOT_INTF_SUBCLASS	HID Interface Class SubClass Codes
BOOT_PROTOCOL	Protocol Selection
HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD	This is macro HID_PROTOCOL_KEYBOARD.
HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE	This is macro HID_PROTOCOL_MOUSE.
HID_PROTOCOL_NONE	HID Interface Class Protocol Codes
HIDRxHandleBusy	Retrieves the status of the buffer ownership
HIDRxPacket	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint
HIDTxHandleBusy	Retrieves the status of the buffer ownership
HIDTxPacket	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**Module**

HID Function Driver

**Description**

This is file usb\_device\_hid.h.

## 1.4.1.5 MSD Function Driver

### Files

Name	Description
usb_device_msd.h	This is file usb_device_msd.h.

### Description

## 1.4.1.5.1 Functions

### Functions

	Name	Description
≡◆	MSDTasks	This is function MSDTasks.
≡◆	USBCheckMSDRequest	
≡◆	USBMSDInit	This is function USBMSDInit.

### Module

MSD Function Driver

### Description

### 1.4.1.5.1.1 MSDTasks Function

#### File

usb\_device\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t MSDTasks();
```

#### Description

This is function MSDTasks.

### 1.4.1.5.1.2 USBCheckMSDRequest Function

#### File

usb\_device\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBCheckMSDRequest();
```

#### Section

Public Prototypes

### 1.4.1.5.1.3 USBMSDInit Function

#### File

usb\_device\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBMSDInit();
```

**Description**

This is function USBMSDInit.

**1.4.1.5.2 Data Types and Constants****Module**

MSD Function Driver

**Structures**

Name	Description
LUN_FUNCTIONS	LUN_FUNCTIONS is a structure of function pointers that tells the stack where to find each of the physical layer functions it is looking for. This structure needs to be defined for any project for PIC24F or PIC32.

**Description****1.4.1.5.2.1 LUN\_FUNCTIONS Structure**

LUN\_FUNCTIONS is a structure of function pointers that tells the stack where to find each of the physical layer functions it is looking for. This structure needs to be defined for any project for PIC24F or PIC32.

**File**

usb\_device\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct {
    FILEIO_MEDIA_INFORMATION* (* MediaInitialize)(void * config);
    uint32_t (* ReadCapacity)(void * config);
    uint16_t (* ReadSectorSize)(void * config);
    bool (* MediaDetect)(void * config);
    uint8_t (* SectorRead)(void * config, uint32_t sector_addr, uint8_t* buffer);
    uint8_t (* WriteProtectState)(void * config);
    uint8_t (* SectorWrite)(void * config, uint32_t sector_addr, uint8_t* buffer, uint8_t
allowWriteToZero);
    void * mediaParameters;
    uint8_t (* AsyncWriteTasks)(void* config, void* pAsyncIO);
    uint8_t (* AsyncReadTasks)(void* config, void* pAsyncIO);
} LUN_FUNCTIONS;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
FILEIO_MEDIA_INFORMATION* (* MediaInitialize)(void * config);	Function pointer to the MediaInitialize() function of the physical media being used.
uint32_t (* ReadCapacity)(void * config);	Function pointer to the ReadCapacity() function of the physical media being used.
uint16_t (* ReadSectorSize)(void * config);	Function pointer to the ReadSectorSize() function of the physical media being used.
bool (* MediaDetect)(void * config);	Function pointer to the MediaDetect() function of the physical media being used.
uint8_t (* SectorRead)(void * config, uint32_t sector_addr, uint8_t* buffer);	Function pointer to the SectorRead() function of the physical media being used.
uint8_t (* WriteProtectState)(void * config);	Function pointer to the WriteProtectState() function of the physical media being used.
uint8_t (* SectorWrite)(void * config, uint32_t sector_addr, uint8_t* buffer, uint8_t allowWriteToZero);	Function pointer to the SectorWrite() function of the physical media being used.
void * mediaParameters;	Pointer to a media-specific parameter structure

uint8_t (* AsyncWriteTasks)(void* config, void* pAsyncIO);	Function pointer to the async write tasks function of the physical media being used.
uint8_t (* AsyncReadTasks)(void* config, void* pAsyncIO);	Function pointer to the async read tasks function of the physical media being used.

### Description

LUN\_FUNCTIONS is a structure of function pointers that tells the stack where to find each of the physical layer functions it is looking for. This structure needs to be defined for any project for PIC24F or PIC32.

Typical Usage:

```
LUN_FUNCTIONS LUN[MAX_LUN + 1] =
{
    {
        &MDD_SDSPI_MediaInitialize,
        &MDD_SDSPI_ReadCapacity,
        &MDD_SDSPI_ReadSectorSize,
        &MDD_SDSPI_MediaDetect,
        &MDD_SDSPI_SectorRead,
        &MDD_SDSPI_WriteProtectState,
        &MDD_SDSPI_SectorWrite
    }
};
```

In the above code we are passing the address of the SDSPI functions to the corresponding member of the LUN\_FUNCTIONS structure. In the above case we have created an array of LUN\_FUNCTIONS structures so that it is possible to have multiple physical layers by merely increasing the MAX\_LUN variable and by adding one more set of entries in the array. Please take caution to insure that each function is in the the correct location in the structure. Incorrect alignment will cause the USB stack to call the incorrect function for a given command.

See the MDD File System Library for additional information about the available physical media, their requirements, and how to use their associated functions.

### 1.4.1.5.3 usb\_device\_msd.h

#### Functions

	Name	Description
◆	MSDTasks	This is function MSDTasks.
◆	USBCheckMSDRequest	
◆	USBMSDInit	This is function USBMSDInit.

#### Module

MSD Function Driver

#### Structures

Name	Description
LUN_FUNCTIONS	LUN_FUNCTIONS is a structure of function pointers that tells the stack where to find each of the physical layer functions it is looking for. This structure needs to be defined for any project for PIC24F or PIC32.

#### Description

This is file usb\_device\_msd.h.

### 1.4.1.6 Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver

#### Files

Name	Description
usb_device_generic.h	This is file usb_device_generic.h.

**Description****1.4.1.6.1 Functions****Functions**

	Name	Description
	USBCheckVendorRequest	This routine handles vendor class specific requests that happen on EP0. This function should be called from the USBCBCheckOtherReq() call back function whenever implementing a custom/vendor class device.

**Macros**

Name	Description
USBGEN_H	This is macro USBGEN_H.
USBGenRead	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint
USBGenWrite	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**Module**

Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver

**Description****1.4.1.6.1.1 USBCheckVendorRequest Function**

This routine handles vendor class specific requests that happen on EP0. This function should be called from the USBCBCheckOtherReq() call back function whenever implementing a custom/vendor class device.

**File**

usb\_device\_generic.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBCheckVendorRequest ( );
```

**Description**

This routine handles vendor specific requests that may arrive on EP0 as a control transfer. These can include, but are not necessarily limited to, requests for Microsoft specific OS feature descriptor(s). This function should be called from the USBCBCheckOtherReq() call back function whenever using a vendor class device.

Typical Usage:

```
void USBCBCheckOtherReq(void)
{
    //Since the stack didn't handle the request I need to check
    // my class drivers to see if it is for them
    USBCheckVendorRequest();
}
```

**Remarks**

This function normally gets called within the same context as the USBDeviceTasks() function, just after a new control transfer request from the host has arrived. If the USB stack is operated in USB\_INTERRUPT mode (a usb\_config.h option), then this function will be executed in the interrupt context. If however the USB stack is operated in the USB\_POLLING mode, then this function executes in the main loop context.

In order to respond to class specific control transfer request(s) in this handler function, it is suggested to use one or more of the USBEP0SendRAMPtr(), USBEP0SendROMPtr(), or USBEP0Receive() API functions.

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

void USBCheckVendorRequest(void)

**1.4.1.6.1.2 USBGEN\_H Macro****File**

usb\_device\_generic.h

**Syntax**`#define USBGEN_H`**Description**

This is macro USBGEN\_H.

**1.4.1.6.1.3 USBGenRead Macro**

Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint

**File**

usb\_device\_generic.h

**Syntax**`#define USBGenRead(ep,data,len) USBRxOnePacket(ep,data,len)`**Description**

Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint.

Typical Usage:

```
//Read 64-bytes from endpoint USBGEN_EP_NUM, into the OUTPacket array.
// Make sure to save the return handle so that we can check it later
// to determine when the transfer is complete.
if(!USBHandleBusy(USBOutHandle))
{
    USBOutHandle = USBGenRead(USBGEN_EP_NUM, (BYTE*)&OUTPacket, 64);
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	a handle for the transfer. This information should be kept to track the status of the transfer

**Function**

USB\_HANDLE USBGenRead(BYTE ep, BYTE\* data, WORD len)

**1.4.1.6.1.4 USBGenWrite Macro**

Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**File**

usb\_device\_generic.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBGenWrite(ep,data,len) USBTxOnePacket(ep,data,len)
```

**Description**

This function sends the specified data out the specified endpoint and returns a handle to the transfer information.

Typical Usage:

```
//make sure that the last transfer isn't busy by checking the handle
if(!USBHandleBusy(USBGenericInHandle))
{
    //Send the data contained in the INPacket[] array out on
    // endpoint USBGEN_EP_NUM
    USBGenericInHandle = USBGenWrite(USBGEN_EP_NUM,(BYTE*)&INPacket[0],sizeof(INPacket));
}
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HANDLE	a handle for the transfer. This information should be kept to track the status of the transfer

**Function**

USB\_HANDLE USBGenWrite(BYTE ep, BYTE\* data, WORD len)

### 1.4.1.6.2 usb\_device\_generic.h

**Functions**

	Name	Description
	USBCheckVendorRequest	This routine handles vendor class specific requests that happen on EP0. This function should be called from the USBCBCheckOtherReq() call back function whenever implementing a custom/vendor class device.

**Macros**

Name	Description
USBGEN_H	This is macro USBGEN_H.
USBGenRead	Receives the specified data out the specified endpoint
USBGenWrite	Sends the specified data out the specified endpoint

**Module**

Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver

**Description**

This is file usb\_device\_generic.h.

## 1.4.2 Embedded Host API

These are the various client drivers that are available for use with the USB Embedded Host driver.

### Modules

Name	Description
Embedded Host Stack	The USB Embedded Host driver provides low-level USB functionality for all host client drivers.
CDC Client Driver	This is a CDC client driver for use with the USB Embedded Host driver.
HID Client Driver	This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for HID devices.
Mass Storage Client Driver	This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for mass storage devices.

### Description

### 1.4.2.1 Embedded Host Stack

The USB Embedded Host driver provides low-level USB functionality for all host client drivers.

#### Files

Name	Description
usb_host.h	This is file usb_host.h.

#### Macros

Name	Description
__USBHOST_H__	DOM-IGNORE-END

### Description

The USB Embedded Host driver provides low-level USB functionality for all host client drivers. This layer is responsible for enumerating devices, managing data transfers, and detecting device detach.

Typically, only host client drivers will interact with this layer. Applications can be configured to receive some events from this layer, such as `EVENT_REQUEST_POWER` and `EVENT_RELEASE_POWER`.

See [AN1140 USB Embedded Host Stack](#) for more information about this layer. See [AN1141 USB Embedded Host Stack Programmer's Guide](#) for more information about creating a client driver that uses this layer.

### 1.4.2.1.1 Functions

#### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining the application level data events handler.
≡	USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining the application level events handler.
≡	USB_HostInterruptHandler	This function handles the interrupts when the USB module is running in host mode.
≡	USBHostClearEndpointErrors	This function clears an endpoint's internal error condition.
≡	USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver	This function indicates if the specified device has explicit client driver support specified in the TPL.

◆	USBHostDeviceStatus	This function returns the current status of a device.
◆	USBHostInit	This function initializes the variables of the USB host stack.
◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate	This function initializes the isochronous data buffer information and allocates memory for each buffer. This function will not allocate memory if the buffer pointer is not NULL.
◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy	This function releases all of the memory allocated for the isochronous data buffers. It also resets all other information about the buffers.
◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset	This function resets all the isochronous data buffers. It does not do anything with the space allocated for the buffers.
◆	USBHostIssueDeviceRequest	This function sends a standard device request to the attached device.
◆	USBHostRead	This function initiates a read from the attached device.
◆	USBHostResetDevice	This function resets an attached device.
◆	USBHostResumeDevice	This function issues a RESUME to the attached device.
◆	USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration	This function changes the device's configuration.
◆	USBHostSetNAKTimeout	This function specifies NAK timeout capability.
◆	USBHostShutdown	This function turns off the USB module and frees all unnecessary memory. This routine can be called by the application layer to shut down all USB activity, which effectively detaches all devices. The event EVENT_DETACH will be sent to the client drivers for the attached device, and the event EVENT_VBUS_RELEASE_POWER will be sent to the application layer.
◆	USBHostSuspendDevice	This function suspends a device.
◆	USBHostTasks	This function executes the host tasks for USB host operation.
◆	USBHostTerminateTransfer	This function terminates the current transfer for the given endpoint.
◆	USBHostTransferIsComplete	This function initiates whether or not the last endpoint transaction is complete.
◆	USBHostVbusEvent	This function handles Vbus events that are detected by the application.
◆	USBHostWrite	This function initiates a write to the attached device.

### Macros

Name	Description
USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor	This function returns a pointer to the current configuration descriptor of the requested device.
USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor	This function returns a pointer to the device descriptor of the requested device.
USBHostGetStringDescriptor	This routine initiates a request to obtain the requested string descriptor.
USBHostReadIsochronous	This function initiates a read from an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.
USBHostWriteIsochronous	This function initiates a write to an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.

### Module

Embedded Host Stack

### Description

#### 1.4.2.1.1.1 USB\_HOST\_APP\_DATA\_EVENT\_HANDLER Function

This is a typedef to use when defining the application level data events handler.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void * data,
uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This function is implemented by the application. The function name can be anything - the macro `USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER` must be set in `usb_config.h` to the name of the application function.

In the application layer, this function is responsible for handling all application-level data events that are generated by the stack. See the enumeration `USB_EVENT` for a complete list of all events that can occur. Note that only data events, such as `EVENT_DATA_ISOC_READ`, will be passed to this event handler.

If the application can handle the event successfully, the function should return true.

**Remarks**

If this function is not provided by the application, then all application events are assumed to function without error.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Event was processed successfully
false	Event was not processed successfully

**Function**

```
bool USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER ( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.2 USB\_HOST\_APP\_EVENT\_HANDLER Function**

This is a typedef to use when defining the application level events handler.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void * data, uint32_t
size);
```

**Description**

This function is implemented by the application. The function name can be anything - the macro `USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER` must be set in `usb_config.h` to the name of the application function.

In the application layer, this function is responsible for handling all application-level events that are generated by the stack. See the enumeration `USB_EVENT` for a complete list of all events that can occur. Note that some of these events are intended for client drivers (e.g. `EVENT_TRANSFER`), while some are intended for for the application layer (e.g. `EVENT_UNSUPPORTED_DEVICE`).

If the application can handle the event successfully, the function should return true. For example, if the function receives the event `EVENT_VBUS_REQUEST_POWER` and the system can allocate that much power to an attached device, the function should return true. If, however, the system cannot allocate that much power to an attached device, the function should return false.

**Remarks**

If this function is not provided by the application, then all application events are assumed to function without error.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Event was processed successfully
false	Event was not processed successfully

**Function**

```
bool USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER ( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.3 USB\_HostInterruptHandler Function**

This function handles the interrupts when the USB module is running in host mode.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
void USB_HostInterruptHandler();
```

**Description**

This function handles the interrupts when the USB module is running in host mode. It will clear all USB based interrupts as applicable. It should only be called when the module is in host mode.

**Preconditions**

Should only be called when in host mode.

**Function**

```
void USB_HostInterruptHandler(void);
```

**1.4.2.1.1.4 USBHostClearEndpointErrors Function**

This function clears an endpoint's internal error condition.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostClearEndpointErrors(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint);
```

**Description**

This function is called to clear the internal error condition of a device's endpoint. It should be called after the application has dealt with the error condition on the device. This routine clears internal status only; it does not interact with the device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Errors cleared
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found

USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	Specified endpoint not found
------------------------	------------------------------

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostClearEndpointErrors( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.5 USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver Function**

This function indicates if the specified device has explicit client driver support specified in the TPL.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function indicates if the specified device has explicit client driver support specified in the TPL. It is used in client drivers' USB\_CLIENT\_INIT routines to indicate that the client driver should be used even though the class, subclass, and protocol values may not match those normally required by the class. For example, some printing devices do not fulfill all of the requirements of the printer class, so their class, subclass, and protocol fields indicate a custom driver rather than the printer class. But the printer class driver can still be used, with minor limitations.

**Remarks**

This function is used so client drivers can allow certain devices to enumerate. For example, some printer devices indicate a custom class rather than the printer class, even though the device has only minor limitations from the full printer class. The printer client driver will fail to initialize the device if it does not indicate printer class support in its interface descriptor. The printer client driver could allow any device with an interface that matches the printer class endpoint configuration, but both printer and mass storage devices utilize one bulk IN and one bulk OUT endpoint. So a mass storage device would be erroneously initialized as a printer device. This function allows a client driver to know that the client driver support was specified explicitly in the TPL, so for this particular device only, the class, subclass, and protocol fields can be safely ignored.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	This device is listed in the TPL by VID andPID, and has explicit client driver support.
false	This device is not listed in the TPL by VID and PID.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.6 USBHostDeviceStatus Function**

This function returns the current status of a device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function returns the current status of a device. If the device is in a holding state due to an error, the error is returned.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_DEVICE_ATTACHED	Device is attached and running
USB_DEVICE_DETACHED	No device is attached
USB_DEVICE_ENUMERATING	Device is enumerating
USB_HOLDING_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Not enough heap space available
USB_HOLDING_UNSUPPORTED_DEVICE	Invalid configuration or unsupported class
USB_HOLDING_UNSUPPORTED_HUB	Hubs are not supported
USB_HOLDING_INVALID_CONFIGURATION	Invalid configuration requested
USB_HOLDING_PROCESSING_CAPACITY	Processing requirement excessive
USB_HOLDING_POWER_REQUIREMENT	Power requirement excessive
USB_HOLDING_CLIENT_INIT_ERROR	Client driver failed to initialize
USB_DEVICE_SUSPENDED	Device is suspended
Other	Device is holding in an error state. The return value indicates the error.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.7 USBHostInit Function**

This function initializes the variables of the USB host stack.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostInit( unsigned long flags );
```

**Description**

This function initializes the variables of the USB host stack. It does not initialize the hardware. The peripheral itself is initialized in one of the state machine states. Therefore, USBHostTasks() should be called soon after this function.

**Remarks**

If the endpoint list is empty, an entry is created in the endpoint list for EP0. If the list is not empty, free all allocated memory other than the EP0 node. This allows the routine to be called multiple times by the application.

**Preconditions**

None

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
unsigned long flags	reserved

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Initialization successful
false	Could not allocate memory.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostInit( unsigned long flags )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.8 USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate Function

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
bool USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate(ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData, uint8_t numberOfBuffers,
uint16_t bufferSize);
```

#### Description

This function initializes the isochronous data buffer information and allocates memory for each buffer. This function will not allocate memory if the buffer pointer is not NULL.

#### Remarks

This function is available only if USB\_SUPPORT\_ISOCHRONOUS\_TRANSFERS is defined in usb\_config.h.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
true	All buffers are allocated successfully.
false	Not enough heap space to allocate all buffers - adjust the project to provide more heap space.

#### Function

```
bool USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate( ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData,
uint8_t numberOfBuffers, uint16_t bufferSize )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.9 USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy Function

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy(ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData, uint8_t numberOfBuffers);
```

#### Returns

None

#### Description

This function releases all of the memory allocated for the isochronous data buffers. It also resets all other information about the buffers.

#### Remarks

This function is available only if USB\_SUPPORT\_ISOCHRONOUS\_TRANSFERS is defined in usb\_config.h.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Function

```
void USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy( ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData, uint8_t numberOfBuffers )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.10 USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset Function

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset(ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData, uint8_t numberOfBuffers);
```

#### Returns

None

#### Description

This function resets all the isochronous data buffers. It does not do anything with the space allocated for the buffers.

#### Remarks

This function is available only if USB\_SUPPORT\_ISOCHRONOUS\_TRANSFERS is defined in usb\_config.h.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Function

```
void USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset( ISOCHRONOUS_DATA * isocData, uint8_t numberOfBuffers )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.11 USBHostIssueDeviceRequest Function

This function sends a standard device request to the attached device.

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostIssueDeviceRequest(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t bmRequestType, uint8_t bRequest, uint16_t wValue, uint16_t wIndex, uint16_t wLength, uint8_t * data, uint8_t dataDirection, uint8_t clientDriverID);
```

#### Description

This function sends a standard device request to the attached device. The user must pass in the parameters of the device request. If there is input or output data associated with the request, a pointer to the data must be provided. The direction of the associated data (input or output) must also be indicated.

This function does no special processing in regards to the request except for three requests. If SET INTERFACE is sent, then DTS is reset for all endpoints. If CLEAR FEATURE (ENDPOINT HALT) is sent, then DTS is reset for that endpoint. If SET CONFIGURATION is sent, the request is aborted with a failure. The function USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration() must be called to change the device configuration, since endpoint definitions may change.

#### Remarks

DTS reset is done before the command is issued.

#### Preconditions

The host state machine should be in the running state, and no reads or writes to EP0 should be in progress.

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request processing started
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_INVALID_STATE	The host must be in a normal running state to do this request

USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	A read or write is already in progress
USB_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	SET CONFIGURATION cannot be performed with this function.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostIssueDeviceRequest( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t bmRequestType,
uint8_t bRequest, uint16_t wValue, uint16_t wIndex, uint16_t wLength,
uint8_t *data, uint8_t dataDirection, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.12 USBHostRead Function**

This function initiates a read from the attached device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostRead(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint8_t * data, uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This function initiates a read from the attached device.

If the endpoint is isochronous, special conditions apply. The pData and size parameters have slightly different meanings, since multiple buffers are required. Once started, an isochronous transfer will continue with no upper layer intervention until USBHostTerminateTransfer() is called. The ISOCHRONOUS\_DATA\_BUFFERS structure should not be manipulated until the transfer is terminated.

To clarify parameter usage and to simplify casting, use the macro USBHostReadIsochronous() when reading from an isochronous endpoint.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Read started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device with the specified address not found.
USB_INVALID_STATE	We are not in a normal running state.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_TYPE	Must use USBHostControlRead to read from a control endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_DIRECTION	Must read from an IN endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_STALLED	Endpoint is stalled. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_ERROR	Endpoint has too many errors. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	A Read is already in progress.
USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	Invalid endpoint.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostRead( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint8_t *pData,
uint32_t size )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.13 USBHostResetDevice Function

This function resets an attached device.

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostResetDevice(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

#### Description

This function places the device back in the RESET state, to issue RESET signaling. It can be called only if the state machine is not in the DETACHED state.

#### Remarks

In order to do a full clean-up, the state is set back to STATE\_DETACHED rather than a reset state. The ATTACH interrupt will automatically be triggered when the module is re-enabled, and the proper reset will be performed.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Success
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Device cannot RESUME unless it is suspended

#### Function

```
uint8_t USBHostResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.14 USBHostResumeDevice Function

This function issues a RESUME to the attached device.

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostResumeDevice(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

#### Description

This function issues a RESUME to the attached device. It can called only if the state machine is in the suspend state.

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Success
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Device cannot RESUME unless it is suspended

#### Function

```
uint8_t USBHostResumeDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

### 1.4.2.1.15 USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration Function

This function changes the device's configuration.

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t configuration);
```

#### Description

This function is used by the application to change the device's Configuration. This function must be used instead of USBHostIssueDeviceRequest(), because the endpoint definitions may change.

To see when the reconfiguration is complete, use the USBHostDeviceStatus() function. If configuration is still in progress, this function will return USB\_DEVICE\_ENUMERATING.

#### Remarks

If an invalid configuration is specified, this function cannot return an error. Instead, the event USB\_UNSUPPORTED\_DEVICE will be sent to the application layer and the device will be placed in a holding state with a USB\_HOLDING\_UNSUPPORTED\_DEVICE error returned by USBHostDeviceStatus().

#### Preconditions

The host state machine should be in the running state, and no reads or writes should be in progress.

#### Example

```
rc = USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration( attachedDevice, configuration );
if (rc)
{
    // Error - cannot set configuration.
}
else
{
    while (USBHostDeviceStatus( attachedDevice ) == USB_DEVICE_ENUMERATING)
    {
        USBHostTasks();
    }
    if (USBHostDeviceStatus( attachedDevice ) != USB_DEVICE_ATTACHED)
    {
        // Error - cannot set configuration.
    }
}
```

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Process of changing the configuration was started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_INVALID_STATE	This function cannot be called during enumeration or while performing a device request.
USB_BUSY	No IN or OUT transfers may be in progress.

#### Function

```
uint8_t USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t configuration )
```

### 1.4.2.1.16 USBHostSetNAKTimeout Function

This function specifies NAK timeout capability.

#### File

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostSetNAKTimeout(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint16_t flags,
uint16_t timeoutCount);
```

**Description**

This function is used to set whether or not an endpoint on a device should time out a transaction based on the number of NAKs received, and if so, how many NAKs are allowed before the timeout.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	NAK timeout was configured successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found.
USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	The specified endpoint was not found.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostSetNAKTimeout( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint16_t flags,
uint16_t timeoutCount )
```

**1.4.2.1.17 USBHostShutdown Function****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostShutdown( );
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function turns off the USB module and frees all unnecessary memory. This routine can be called by the application layer to shut down all USB activity, which effectively detaches all devices. The event EVENT\_DETACH will be sent to the client drivers for the attached device, and the event EVENT\_VBUS\_RELEASE\_POWER will be sent to the application layer.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
None	None

**Function**

```
void USBHostShutdown( void )
```

**1.4.2.1.18 USBHostSuspendDevice Function**

This function suspends a device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostSuspendDevice(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

**Description**

This function put a device into an IDLE state. It can only be called while the state machine is in normal running mode. After 3ms, the attached device should go into SUSPEND mode.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Success
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot suspend unless device is in normal run mode

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostSuspendDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.1.19 USBHostTasks Function**

This function executes the host tasks for USB host operation.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostTasks();
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function executes the host tasks for USB host operation. It must be executed on a regular basis to keep everything functioning.

The primary purpose of this function is to handle device attach/detach and enumeration. It does not handle USB packet transmission or reception; that must be done in the USB interrupt handler to ensure timely operation.

This routine should be called on a regular basis, but there is no specific time requirement. Devices will still be able to attach, enumerate, and detach, but the operations will occur more slowly as the calling interval increases.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

USBHostInit() has been called.

**Function**

```
void USBHostTasks( void )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.20 USBHostTerminateTransfer Function

This function terminates the current transfer for the given endpoint.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostTerminateTransfer(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint);
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function terminates the current transfer for the given endpoint. It can be used to terminate reads or writes that the device is not responding to. It is also the only way to terminate an isochronous transfer.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
void USBHostTerminateTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint )
```

### 1.4.2.1.1.21 USBHostTransferIsComplete Function

This function initiates whether or not the last endpoint transaction is complete.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostTransferIsComplete(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint8_t *  
errorCode, uint32_t * byteCount);
```

**Description**

This function initiates whether or not the last endpoint transaction is complete. If it is complete, an error code and the number of bytes transferred are returned.

For isochronous transfers, byteCount is not valid. Instead, use the returned byte counts for each EVENT\_TRANSFER event that was generated during the transfer.

**Remarks**

Possible values for errorCode are:

- USB\_SUCCESS - Transfer successful
- USB\_UNKNOWN\_DEVICE - Device not attached
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_STALLED - Endpoint STALL'd
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_ILLEGAL\_PID - Illegal PID returned
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_BIT\_STUFF
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_DMA
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_TIMEOUT
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_DATA\_FIELD

- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_CRC16
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_END\_OF\_FRAME
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR\_PID\_CHECK
- USB\_ENDPOINT\_ERROR - Other error

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Transfer is complete.
false	Transfer is not complete.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostTransferIsComplete( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint,
uint8_t *errorCode, uint32_t *byteCount )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.22 USBHostVbusEvent Function**

This function handles Vbus events that are detected by the application.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostVbusEvent(USB_EVENT vbusEvent, uint8_t hubAddress, uint8_t portNumber);
```

**Description**

This function handles Vbus events that are detected by the application. Since Vbus management is application dependent, the application is responsible for monitoring Vbus and detecting overcurrent conditions and removal of the overcurrent condition. If the application detects an overcurrent condition, it should call this function with the event EVENT\_VBUS\_OVERCURRENT with the address of the hub and port number that has the condition. When a port returns to normal operation, the application should call this function with the event EVENT\_VBUS\_POWER\_AVAILABLE so the stack knows that it can allow devices to attach to that port.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Event handled
USB_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Invalid event, hub, or port

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostVbusEvent( USB_EVENT vbusEvent, uint8_t hubAddress,
uint8_t portNumber)
```

**1.4.2.1.1.23 USBHostWrite Function**

This function initiates a write to the attached device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostWrite(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint8_t * data, uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This function initiates a write to the attached device. The data buffer pointed to by \*data must remain valid during the entire time that the write is taking place; the data is not buffered by the stack.

If the endpoint is isochronous, special conditions apply. The pData and size parameters have slightly different meanings, since multiple buffers are required. Once started, an isochronous transfer will continue with no upper layer intervention until USBHostTerminateTransfer() is called. The ISOCHRONOUS\_DATA\_BUFFERS structure should not be manipulated until the transfer is terminated.

To clarify parameter usage and to simplify casting, use the macro USBHostWriteIsochronous() when writing to an isochronous endpoint.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Write started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device with the specified address not found.
USB_INVALID_STATE	We are not in a normal running state.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_TYPE	Must use USBHostControlWrite to write to a control endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_DIRECTION	Must write to an OUT endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_STALLED	Endpoint is stalled. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_ERROR	Endpoint has too many errors. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	A Write is already in progress.
USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	Invalid endpoint.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostWrite( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint, uint8_t *data,
uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.24 USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor( deviceAddress ) (
pCurrentConfigurationDescriptor )
```

**Returns**

uint8\_t \* - Pointer to the Configuration Descriptor.

**Description**

This function returns a pointer to the current configuration descriptor of the requested device.

**Remarks**

This will need to be expanded to a full function when multiple device support is added.

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
uint8_t * USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.25 USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor( deviceAddress ) ( pDeviceDescriptor )
```

**Returns**

uint8\_t \* - Pointer to the Device Descriptor.

**Description**

This function returns a pointer to the device descriptor of the requested device.

**Remarks**

This will need to be expanded to a full function when multiple device support is added.

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
uint8_t * USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.26 USBHostGetStringDescriptor Macro**

This routine initiates a request to obtains the requested string descriptor.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostGetStringDescriptor( deviceAddress, stringNumber, LangID, stringDescriptor,
stringLength, clientDriverID ) \
    USBHostIssueDeviceRequest( deviceAddress, USB_SETUP_DEVICE_TO_HOST |
USB_SETUP_TYPE_STANDARD | USB_SETUP_RECIPIENT_DEVICE, \
    USB_REQUEST_GET_DESCRIPTOR, (USB_DESCRIPTOR_STRING << 8) |
stringNumber, \
    LangID, stringLength, stringDescriptor, USB_DEVICE_REQUEST_GET,
clientDriverID )
```

**Description**

This routine initiates a request to obtains the requested string descriptor. If the request cannot be started, the routine returns an error. Otherwise, the request is started, and the requested string descriptor is stored in the designated location.

Example Usage:

```
USBHostGetStringDescriptor(
    deviceAddress,
    stringDescriptorNum,
    LangID,
    stringDescriptorBuffer,
    sizeof(stringDescriptorBuffer),
```

```

    0xFF
    );

while(1)
{
    if(USBHostTransferIsComplete( deviceAddress , 0, &errorCode, &byteCount))
    {
        if(errorCode)
        {
            //There was an error reading the string, bail out of loop
        }
        else
        {
            //String is located in specified buffer, do something with it.

            //The length of the string is both in the byteCount variable
            // as well as the first byte of the string itself
        }
        break;
    }
    USBTasks();
}

```

**Remarks**

The returned string descriptor will be in the exact format as obtained from the device. The length of the entire descriptor will be in the first byte, and the descriptor type will be in the second. The string itself is represented in UNICODE. Refer to the USB 2.0 Specification for more information about the format of string descriptors.

**Preconditions**

None

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
deviceAddress	Address of the device
stringNumber	Index of the desired string descriptor
LangID	The Language ID of the string to read (should be 0 if trying to read the language ID list *stringDescriptor - Pointer to where to store the string.
stringLength	Maximum length of the returned string.
clientDriverID	Client driver to return the completion event to.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	The request was started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device not found
USB_INVALID_STATE	We must be in a normal running state.
USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	The endpoint is currently processing a request.

**Function**

```

uint8_t USBHostGetStringDescriptor ( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t stringNumber,
uint8_t LangID, uint8_t *stringDescriptor, uint8_t stringLength,
uint8_t clientDriverID )

```

**1.4.2.1.1.27 USBHostReadIsochronous Macro**

This function initiates a read from an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostReadIsochronous( a, e, p ) USBHostRead( a, e, (uint8_t *)p, (uint32_t)0 );
```

**Description**

This function initiates a read from an isochronous endpoint on the attached device. If the endpoint is not isochronous, use USBHostRead().

Once started, an isochronous transfer will continue with no upper layer intervention until USBHostTerminateTransfer() is called.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Read started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device with the specified address not found.
USB_INVALID_STATE	We are not in a normal running state.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_TYPE	Must use USBHostControlRead to read from a control endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_DIRECTION	Must read from an IN endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_STALLED	Endpoint is stalled. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_ERROR	Endpoint has too many errors. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	A Read is already in progress.
USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	Invalid endpoint.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostReadIsochronous( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint,
ISOCHRONOUS_DATA *pIsochronousData )
```

**1.4.2.1.1.28 USBHostWriteIsochronous Macro**

This function initiates a write to an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostWriteIsochronous( a, e, p ) USBHostWrite( a, e, (uint8_t *)p, (uint32_t)0 );
```

**Description**

This function initiates a write to an isochronous endpoint on the attached device. If the endpoint is not isochronous, use USBHostWrite().

Once started, an isochronous transfer will continue with no upper layer intervention until USBHostTerminateTransfer() is called.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Write started successfully.
USB_UNKNOWN_DEVICE	Device with the specified address not found.
USB_INVALID_STATE	We are not in a normal running state.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_TYPE	Must use USBHostControlWrite to write to a control endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_ILLEGAL_DIRECTION	Must write to an OUT endpoint.
USB_ENDPOINT_STALLED	Endpoint is stalled. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_ERROR	Endpoint has too many errors. Must be cleared by the application.
USB_ENDPOINT_BUSY	A Write is already in progress.
USB_ENDPOINT_NOT_FOUND	Invalid endpoint.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostWriteIsochronous( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t endpoint,
ISOCHRONOUS_DATA *pIsochronousData )
```

**1.4.2.1.2 Data Types and Constants****Macros**

Name	Description
INIT_CL_SC_P	Set class support in the TPL (non-OTG only).
INIT_VID_PID	Set VID/PID support in the TPL.
TPL_ALLOW_HNP	Bitmask for Host Negotiation Protocol.
TPL_CLASS_DRV	Bitmask for class driver support.
TPL_EP0_ONLY_CUSTOM_DRIVER	Bitmask to let a custom driver gain EP0 only and allow other interfaces to use standard drivers
TPL_IGNORE_CLASS	Bitmask for ignoring the class of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_IGNORE_PID	Bitmask for ignoring the PID of a VID/PID driver
TPL_IGNORE_PROTOCOL	Bitmask for ignoring the protocol of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_IGNORE_SUBCLASS	Bitmask for ignoring the subclass of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_SET_CONFIG	Bitmask for setting the configuration.
USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER	If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.
USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER	If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.
USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during a bulk transfer before erroring.
USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES	During enumeration, define how many times each command will be tried before giving up and resetting the device.
USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during a control transfer before erroring.
USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES	Define how many times the host will try to enumerate the device before giving up and setting the state to DETACHED.
USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during an interrupt OUT transfer before erroring. Interrupt IN transfers that are NAK'd are terminated without error.

**Module**

Embedded Host Stack

**Structures**

	Name	Description
	_CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE	Client Driver Table Structure This structure is used to define an entry in the client-driver table. Each entry provides the information that the Host layer needs to manage a particular USB client driver, including pointers to the interface routines that the Client Driver must implement.
	_HOST_TRANSFER_DATA	Host Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion.
	CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE	Client Driver Table Structure This structure is used to define an entry in the client-driver table. Each entry provides the information that the Host layer needs to manage a particular USB client driver, including pointers to the interface routines that the Client Driver must implement.
	HOST_TRANSFER_DATA	Host Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion.

**Types**

Name	Description
TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES	This is type TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES.
USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver event handler.
USB_CLIENT_INIT	This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver initialization handler.
USB_TPL	Targeted Peripheral List This structure is used to define the devices that this host can support. If the host is a USB Embedded Host or Dual Role Device that does not support OTG, the TPL may contain both specific devices and generic classes. If the host supports OTG, then the TPL may contain ONLY specific devices.

**Description**

**1.4.2.1.2.1 CLIENT\_DRIVER\_TABLE Structure**

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE {
    USB_CLIENT_INIT Initialize;
    USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER EventHandler;
    USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER DataEventHandler;
    uint32_t flags;
} CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
USB_CLIENT_INIT Initialize;	Initialization routine
USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER EventHandler;	Event routine
USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER DataEventHandler;	Data Event routine
uint32_t flags;	Initialization flags

**Description**

Client Driver Table Structure

This structure is used to define an entry in the client-driver table. Each entry provides the information that the Host layer needs to manage a particular USB client driver, including pointers to the interface routines that the Client Driver must implement.

### 1.4.2.1.2.2 HOST\_TRANSFER\_DATA Structure

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _HOST_TRANSFER_DATA {
    uint32_t dataCount;
    uint8_t * pUserData;
    uint8_t bEndpointAddress;
    uint8_t bErrorCode;
    TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES bmAttributes;
    uint8_t clientDriver;
} HOST_TRANSFER_DATA;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint32_t dataCount;	Count of bytes transferred.
uint8_t * pUserData;	Pointer to transfer data.
uint8_t bEndpointAddress;	Transfer endpoint.
uint8_t bErrorCode;	Transfer error code.
TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES bmAttributes;	INTERNAL USE ONLY - Endpoint transfer attributes.
uint8_t clientDriver;	INTERNAL USE ONLY - Client driver index for sending the event.

#### Description

Host Transfer Information

This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion.

### 1.4.2.1.2.3 TRANSFER\_ATTRIBUTES Type

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef #warning USB_INITIAL_VBUS_CURRENT is in violation of the USB specification.
#warning USB_INITIAL_VBUS_CURRENT is in violation of the USB specification. union
TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES@1 TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES;
```

#### Description

This is type TRANSFER\_ATTRIBUTES.

### 1.4.2.1.2.4 USB\_CLIENT\_EVENT\_HANDLER Type

This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver event handler.

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef bool (* USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER)(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void *data,
uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This data type defines a pointer to a call-back function that must be implemented by a client driver if it needs to be aware of events on the USB. When an event occurs, the Host layer will call the client driver via this pointer to handle the event. Events are identified by the "event" parameter and may have associated data. If the client driver was able to handle the event, it should return true. If not (or if additional processing is required), it should return false.

**Remarks**

The application may also implement an event handling routine if it requires knowledge of events. To do so, it must implement a routine that matches this function signature and define the `USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER` macro as the name of that function.

**Preconditions**

The client must have been initialized.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	The event was handled
false	The event was not handled

**Function**

```
bool (*USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER) ( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.1.2.5 USB\_CLIENT\_INIT Type**

This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver initialization handler.

**File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef bool (* USB_CLIENT_INIT)(uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID);
```

**Description**

This routine is a call out from the host layer to a USB client driver. It is called when the system has been configured as a USB host and a new device has been attached to the bus. Its purpose is to initialize and activate the client driver.

**Remarks**

There may be multiple client drivers. If so, the USB host layer will call the initialize routine for each of the clients that are in the selected configuration.

**Preconditions**

The device has been configured.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Successful
false	Not successful

**Function**

```
bool (*USB_CLIENT_INIT) ( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

### 1.4.2.1.2.6 USB\_TPL Type

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_TPL USB_TPL;
```

#### Description

Targeted Peripheral List

This structure is used to define the devices that this host can support. If the host is a USB Embedded Host or Dual Role Device that does not support OTG, the TPL may contain both specific devices and generic classes. If the host supports OTG, then the TPL may contain ONLY specific devices.

### 1.4.2.1.2.7 INIT\_CL\_SC\_P Macro

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
#define INIT_CL_SC_P(c,s,p) {((c)|((s)<<8)|((p)<<16))} // Set class support in the TPL  
(non-OTG only).
```

#### Description

Set class support in the TPL (non-OTG only).

### 1.4.2.1.2.8 INIT\_VID\_PID Macro

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
#define INIT_VID_PID(v,p) {((v)|((p)<<16))} // Set VID/PID support in the TPL.
```

#### Description

Set VID/PID support in the TPL.

### 1.4.2.1.2.9 TPL\_ALLOW\_HNP Macro

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
#define TPL_ALLOW_HNP 0x01 // Bitmask for Host Negotiation Protocol.
```

#### Description

Bitmask for Host Negotiation Protocol.

### 1.4.2.1.2.10 TPL\_CLASS\_DRV Macro

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
#define TPL_CLASS_DRV 0x02 // Bitmask for class driver support.
```

**Description**

Bitmask for class driver support.

**1.4.2.1.2.11 TPL\_EP0\_ONLY\_CUSTOM\_DRIVER Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_EP0_ONLY_CUSTOM_DRIVER 0x80 // Bitmask to let a custom  
driver gain EP0 only and allow other interfaces to use standard drivers
```

**Description**

Bitmask to let a custom driver gain EP0 only and allow other interfaces to use standard drivers

**1.4.2.1.2.12 TPL\_IGNORE\_CLASS Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_IGNORE_CLASS 0x20 // Bitmask for ignoring the class of a  
CL/SC/P driver
```

**Description**

Bitmask for ignoring the class of a CL/SC/P driver

**1.4.2.1.2.13 TPL\_IGNORE\_PID Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_IGNORE_PID 0x40 // Bitmask for ignoring the PID of a VID/PID  
driver
```

**Description**

Bitmask for ignoring the PID of a VID/PID driver

**1.4.2.1.2.14 TPL\_IGNORE\_PROTOCOL Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_IGNORE_PROTOCOL 0x08 // Bitmask for ignoring the protocol of  
a CL/SC/P driver
```

**Description**

Bitmask for ignoring the protocol of a CL/SC/P driver

**1.4.2.1.2.15 TPL\_IGNORE\_SUBCLASS Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_IGNORE_SUBCLASS 0x10 // Bitmask for ignoring the subclass of  
a CL/SC/P driver
```

**Description**

Bitmask for ignoring the subclass of a CL/SC/P driver

**1.4.2.1.2.16 TPL\_SET\_CONFIG Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define TPL_SET_CONFIG 0x04 // Bitmask for setting the configuration.
```

**Description**

Bitmask for setting the configuration.

**1.4.2.1.2.17 USB\_HOST\_APP\_DATA\_EVENT\_HANDLER Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER(a, e, d, s) true
```

**Description**

If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.

**1.4.2.1.2.18 USB\_HOST\_APP\_EVENT\_HANDLER Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER(a, e, d, s)  
( (e==EVENT_OVERRIDE_CLIENT_DRIVER_SELECTION)?false:true)
```

**Description**

If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.

**1.4.2.1.2.19 USB\_NUM\_BULK\_NAKS Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS 10000 // Define how many NAK's are allowed
```

**Description**

Define how many NAK's are allowed during a bulk transfer before erroring.

**1.4.2.1.2.20 USB\_NUM\_COMMAND\_TRIES Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES 3 // During enumeration, define how many
```

**Description**

During enumeration, define how many times each command will be tried before giving up and resetting the device.

**1.4.2.1.2.21 USB\_NUM\_CONTROL\_NAKS Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS 20 // Define how many NAK's are allowed
```

**Description**

Define how many NAK's are allowed during a control transfer before erroring.

**1.4.2.1.2.22 USB\_NUM\_ENUMERATION\_TRIES Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES 3 // Define how many times the host will try
```

**Description**

Define how many times the host will try to enumerate the device before giving up and setting the state to DETACHED.

**1.4.2.1.2.23 USB\_NUM\_INTERRUPT\_NAKS Macro****File**

usb\_host.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS 3 // Define how many NAK's are allowed
```

**Description**

Define how many NAK's are allowed during an interrupt OUT transfer before erroring. Interrupt IN transfers that are NAK'd are terminated without error.

**1.4.2.1.3 usb\_host.h****Functions**

	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
≡	USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining the application level data events handler.
≡	USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining the application level events handler.
≡	USB_HostInterruptHandler	This function handles the interrupts when the USB module is running in host mode.
≡	USBHostClearEndpointErrors	This function clears an endpoint's internal error condition.
≡	USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver	This function indicates if the specified device has explicit client driver support specified in the TPL.
≡	USBHostDeviceStatus	This function returns the current status of a device.
≡	USBHostInit	This function initializes the variables of the USB host stack.

◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate	This function initializes the isochronous data buffer information and allocates memory for each buffer. This function will not allocate memory if the buffer pointer is not NULL.
◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy	This function releases all of the memory allocated for the isochronous data buffers. It also resets all other information about the buffers.
◆	USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset	This function resets all the isochronous data buffers. It does not do anything with the space allocated for the buffers.
◆	USBHostIssueDeviceRequest	This function sends a standard device request to the attached device.
◆	USBHostRead	This function initiates a read from the attached device.
◆	USBHostResetDevice	This function resets an attached device.
◆	USBHostResumeDevice	This function issues a RESUME to the attached device.
◆	USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration	This function changes the device's configuration.
◆	USBHostSetNAKTimeout	This function specifies NAK timeout capability.
◆	USBHostShutdown	This function turns off the USB module and frees all unnecessary memory. This routine can be called by the application layer to shut down all USB activity, which effectively detaches all devices. The event EVENT_DETACH will be sent to the client drivers for the attached device, and the event EVENT_VBUS_RELEASE_POWER will be sent to the application layer.
◆	USBHostSuspendDevice	This function suspends a device.
◆	USBHostTasks	This function executes the host tasks for USB host operation.
◆	USBHostTerminateTransfer	This function terminates the current transfer for the given endpoint.
◆	USBHostTransferIsComplete	This function initiates whether or not the last endpoint transaction is complete.
◆	USBHostVbusEvent	This function handles Vbus events that are detected by the application.
◆	USBHostWrite	This function initiates a write to the attached device.

## Macros

Name	Description
__USBHOST_H__	DOM-IGNORE-END
INIT_CL_SC_P	Set class support in the TPL (non-OTG only).
INIT_VID_PID	Set VID/PID support in the TPL.
TPL_ALLOW_HNP	Bitmask for Host Negotiation Protocol.
TPL_CLASS_DRV	Bitmask for class driver support.
TPL_EP0_ONLY_CUSTOM_DRIVER	Bitmask to let a custom driver gain EP0 only and allow other interfaces to use standard drivers
TPL_IGNORE_CLASS	Bitmask for ignoring the class of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_IGNORE_PID	Bitmask for ignoring the PID of a VID/PID driver
TPL_IGNORE_PROTOCOL	Bitmask for ignoring the protocol of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_IGNORE_SUBCLASS	Bitmask for ignoring the subclass of a CL/SC/P driver
TPL_SET_CONFIG	Bitmask for setting the configuration.
USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER	If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.
USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER	If the application does not provide an event handler, then we will assume that all events function without error.
USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during a bulk transfer before erroring.
USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES	During enumeration, define how many times each command will be tried before giving up and resetting the device.

USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during a control transfer before erroring.
USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES	Define how many times the host will try to enumerate the device before giving up and setting the state to DETACHED.
USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS	Define how many NAK's are allowed during an interrupt OUT transfer before erroring. Interrupt IN transfers that are NAK'd are terminated without error.
USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor	This function returns a pointer to the current configuration descriptor of the requested device.
USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor	This function returns a pointer to the device descriptor of the requested device.
USBHostGetStringDescriptor	This routine initiates a request to obtains the requested string descriptor.
USBHostReadIsochronous	This function initiates a read from an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.
USBHostWriteIsochronous	This function initiates a write to an isochronous endpoint on the attached device.

**Module**

Embedded Host Stack

**Structures**

	Name	Description
	_CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE	Client Driver Table Structure This structure is used to define an entry in the client-driver table. Each entry provides the information that the Host layer needs to manage a particular USB client driver, including pointers to the interface routines that the Client Driver must implement.
	_HOST_TRANSFER_DATA	Host Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion.
	CLIENT_DRIVER_TABLE	Client Driver Table Structure This structure is used to define an entry in the client-driver table. Each entry provides the information that the Host layer needs to manage a particular USB client driver, including pointers to the interface routines that the Client Driver must implement.
	HOST_TRANSFER_DATA	Host Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion.

**Types**

Name	Description
TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES	This is type TRANSFER_ATTRIBUTES.
USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER	This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver event handler.
USB_CLIENT_INIT	This is a typedef to use when defining a client driver initialization handler.
USB_TPL	Targeted Peripheral List This structure is used to define the devices that this host can support. If the host is a USB Embedded Host or Dual Role Device that does not support OTG, the TPL may contain both specific devices and generic classes. If the host supports OTG, then the TPL may contain ONLY specific devices.

**Description**

This is file usb\_host.h.

### 1.4.2.1.4 \_\_USBHOST\_H\_\_ Macro

#### File

usb\_host.h

#### Syntax

```
#define __USBHOST_H__
```

#### Module

Embedded Host Stack

#### Description

DOM-IGNORE-END

## 1.4.2.2 CDC Client Driver

This is a CDC client driver for use with the USB Embedded Host driver.

#### Files

Name	Description
usb_host_cdc.h	This is file usb_host_cdc.h.
usb_host_cdc_interface.h	This is file usb_host_cdc_interface.h.

#### Description

#### Communication Device Class (CDC) Host

#### CDC - Overview

Several type of communication can benefit from USB. Communication Device Class specification provides common specification for communication devices. There are three classes that make up the definition for communications devices:

- \* Communications Device Class
- \* Communications Interface Class
- \* Data Interface Class.

The Communications Device Class is a device-level definition and is used by the host to properly identify a communications device that may present several different types of interfaces.

The Communications Interface Class defines a general-purpose mechanism that can be used to enable all types of communications services on the Universal Serial Bus (USB). This interface consist of two elements, a management element and a notification element. The management element configures and controls the device, it consist of endpoint 0. Notification element is optional and is used to handle transport events. In the current stack notification element is not implemented.

The Data Interface Class defines a general-purpose mechanism to enable bulk or isochronous transfer on the USB when the data does not meet the requirements for any other class. This interface is used to transmit/receive data to/from the device. The type of endpoints belonging to a Data Class interface are restricted to being either isochronous or bulk, and are expected to exist in pairs of the same type (one In and one Out). Current version of the stack is tested for Bulk transfers.

#### Class-Specific Codes

This section lists the codes for the Communications Device Class, Communications Interface Class and Data Interface Class, including subclasses and protocols supported in the current version of the stack. The current version of the stack supports RS232 emulation over USB. Below is the list of codes to support this functionality.

The following table defines the Communications Device Class code:

Code	Class
0x02	Communications Device Class

### Communication Interface Codes

The following table defines the Communications Class code:

Code	Class
0x02	Communications Interface Class

CDC specification mentions various subclass , current version of the Microchip CDC host stack supports below mentioned subclasses. The following table defines the currently supported Subclass codes for the Communications Interface Class:

Code	SubClass
0x02	Abstract Control Model

The following table defines supported Communications Class Protocol Codes:

Code	Protocol
0x01	AT Commands: V.250 etc.

### Data Interface Code

The following table defines the Data Interface Class code:

Code	Class
0x0A	Data Interface Class

No specific Subclass and Protocol codes are required to achieve RS232 functionality over USB.

### Communication and Data Transfer Handling

Communication Management : The CDC client driver takes care of enumerating the device connected on the bus. The application must define Line Coding parameters in file `usb_config.h` . USBConfig utility can be used to set these parameters. If the connected device complies with the setting then the device is successfully attached else the device is not attached onto the bus. If the application needs to change the setting dynamically after the device has been successfully enumerated , interface function `USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request()` can be used to do so. Following standard requests are currently implemented:

Request	Summary
<code>SendEncapsulatedCommand</code>	Issues a command in the format of the supported control protocol.
<code>GetEncapsulatedResponse</code>	Requests a response in the format of the supported control protocol.
<code>SetLineCoding</code>	Configures DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
<code>GetLineCoding</code>	Requests current DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
<code>SetControlLineState</code>	[V24] signal used to tell the DCE device the DTE device is now present.

Data transfers : Once the device is attached the application is ready to start data transfers. Usually two endpoints one in each direction are supported by the device.

\* To receive data from the device the application must set up a IN request at the rate depending on the baudrate settings. Application can use a timer interrupt to precisely set up the request. Function `USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data()` is used to setup the request. Maximum of 64 bytes can be received in single transfer.

\* To transmit data to the device application must set up a OUT request. Function `USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data()` is

used to setup out request. Any amount of data can be transferred to the device. The Client driver takes care of sending the data in 64 bytes packet.

\* USBHostCDC\_ApiTransferIsComplete() is used to poll for the status of previous transfer.

\* USBHostCDC\_ApiDeviceDetect() is used to get the status of the device. If the device is ready for new transfer then the function returns TRUE.

## 1.4.2.2.1 Functions

### Functions

	Name	Description
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request	This function can be used by application code to dynamically access ACM specific requests. This function should be used only if application intends to modify for example the Baudrate from previously configured rate. Data transmitted/received to/from device is a array of bytes. Application must take extra care of understanding the data format before using this function.
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data	This function is called by application to receive Input data over DATA interface. This function setup the request to receive data from the device.
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data	This function is called by application to transmit out data over DATA interface. This function setup the request to transmit data to the device.
⇒	USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect	This function determines if a CDC device is attached and ready to use.
⇒	USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete	This function is called by application to poll for transfer status. This function returns true in the transfer is over. To check whether the transfer was successfull or not , application must check the error code returned by reference.
⇒	USBHostCDCDeviceStatus	This function determines the status of a CDC device.
⇒	USBHostCDCEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostCDCInitAddress	This function intializes the address of the attached CDC device.
⇒	USBHostCDCInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostCDCResetDevice	This function starts a CDC reset.
⇒	USBHostCDCTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by CDC class
⇒	USBHostCDCTransfer	This function starts a CDC transfer.
⇒	USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

### Module

CDC Client Driver

### Description

#### 1.4.2.2.1.1 USBHostCDC\_Api\_ACM\_Request Function

### File

usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h

### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request(uint8_t requestType, uint8_t size, uint8_t* data);
```

### Description

This function can be used by application code to dynamically access ACM specific requests. This function should be used only if application intends to modify for example the Baudrate from previously configured rate. Data transmitted/received to/from device is a array of bytes. Application must take extra care of understanding the data format before using this function.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

Device must be enumerated and attached successfully.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
USB_CDC_COMMAND_FAILED	Request is not supported.
USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Requested ID is invalid.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request(uint8_t requestType, uint8_t size, uint8_t* data)
```

**1.4.2.2.1.2 USBHostCDC\_Api\_Get\_IN\_Data Function****File**

usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data(uint8_t no_of_bytes, uint8_t* data);
```

**Description**

This function is called by application to receive Input data over DATA interface. This function setups the request to receive data from the device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer request is placed successfully.
FALSE	Transfer request failed.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data(uint8_t no_of_bytes, uint8_t* data)
```

**1.4.2.2.1.3 USBHostCDC\_Api\_Send\_OUT\_Data Function****File**

usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data(uint16_t no_of_bytes, uint8_t* data);
```

**Description**

This function is called by application to transmit out data over DATA interface. This function setups the request to transmit data to the device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer request is placed successfully.
FALSE	Transfer request failed.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data(uint16_t no_of_bytes, uint8_t* data)
```

**1.4.2.2.1.4 USBHostCDC\_ApiDeviceDetect Function****File**

usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect();
```

**Description**

This function determines if a CDC device is attached and ready to use.

**Remarks**

Since this will often be called in a loop while waiting for a device, we'll make sure the tasks are executed.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	CDC present and ready
FALSE	CDC not present or not ready

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect( void )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.5 USBHostCDC\_ApiTransferIsComplete Function****File**

usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete(uint8_t* errorCodeDriver, uint8_t* byteCount);
```

**Description**

This function is called by application to poll for transfer status. This function returns true in the transfer is over. To check whether the transfer was successful or not, application must check the error code returned by reference.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer is has completed.
FALSE	Transfer is pending.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete(uint8_t* errorCodeDriver,uint8_t* byteCount)
```

**1.4.2.2.1.6 USBHostCDCDeviceStatus Function**

This function determines the status of a CDC device.

**File**

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDCDeviceStatus(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

**Description**

This function determines the status of a CDC device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Illegal device address, or the device is not an CDC
USB_CDC_INITIALIZING	CDC is attached and in the process of initializing
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	CDC device is detected and report descriptor is being parsed
USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING	CDC Device is running normal, ready to send and receive reports
USB_CDC_DEVICE_HOLDING	Device is holding due to error
USB_CDC_DEVICE_DETACHED	CDC detached.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDCDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.7 USBHostCDCEventHandler Function**

This function is the event handler for this client driver.

**File**

```
usb_host_cdc.h
```

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDCEventHandler(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void * data, uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This function is the event handler for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when various events occur.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

The device has been initialized.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Event was handled
FALSE	Event was not handled

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDCEventHandler( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.8 USBHostCDCInitAddress Function**

This function initializes the address of the attached CDC device.

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDCInitAddress( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID );
```

**Description**

This function initializes the address of the attached CDC device. Once the device is enumerated without any errors, the CDC client call this function. For all the transfer requests this address is used to identify the CDC device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

The device has been enumerated without any errors.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	We can support the device.
FALSE	We cannot support the device.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDCInitAddress( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.9 USBHostCDCInitialize Function**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDCInitialize( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID );
```

**Description**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when the USB device is being enumerated. For a CDC device we need to look into CDC descriptor, interface descriptor and endpoint descriptor.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	We can support the device.
FALSE	We cannot support the device.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDCInitialize( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.10 USBHostCDCResetDevice Function**

This function starts a CDC reset.

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDCResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function starts a CDC reset. A reset can be issued only if the device is attached and not being initialized.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Reset started
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Device is in an illegal state for reset

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDCResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.11 USBHostCDCTasks Function**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by CDC class

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostCDCTasks ( );
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the CDC class. If transfer events from the host layer are not being used, then it should be called on a regular basis by the application. If transfer events from the host layer are being used, this function is compiled out, and does not need to be called.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

USBHostCDCInitialize() has been called.

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
None	None

**Function**

```
void USBHostCDCTasks( void )
```

**1.4.2.2.1.12 USBHostCDCTransfer Function**

This function starts a CDC transfer.

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostCDCTransfer(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t request, uint8_t direction,
uint8_t interfaceNum, uint16_t size, uint8_t * data, uint8_t endpointDATA);
```

**Description**

This function starts a CDC transfer. A read/write wrapper is provided in application interface file to access this function.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer

**Function**

```
USBHostCDCTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t direction, uint8_t reportid, uint8_t size, uint8_t *data)
```

**1.4.2.2.1.13 USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete Function**

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t * errorCode, uint8_t *
uint8_tCount);
```

**Description**

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete. If the functions returns TRUE, the returned uint8\_t count and error code are valid. Since only one transfer can be performed at once and only one endpoint can be used, we only need to know the device address.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer is complete, errorCode is valid
FALSE	Transfer is not complete, errorCode is not valid

**Function**

```
bool USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete( uint8_t deviceAddress,
uint8_t *errorCode, uint32_t *uint8_tCount )
```

**1.4.2.2.2 Data Types and Constants****Macros**

Name	Description
DEVICE_CLASS_CDC	CDC Interface Class Code
EVENT_CDC_ATTACH	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_CDC_COMM_READ_DONE	A CDC Communication Read transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_COMM_WRITE_DONE	A CDC Communication Write transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_DATA_READ_DONE	A CDC Data Read transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_DATA_WRITE_DONE	A CDC Data Write transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_NAK_TIMEOUT	CDC device NAK timeout has occurred
EVENT_CDC_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_CDC_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for CDC events, set it to 0.
EVENT_CDC_RESET	CDC reset complete
USB_CDC_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL	Abstract Control Model
USB_CDC_ATM_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL	ATM Networking Control Model
USB_CDC_CAPI_CONTROL_MODEL	CAPI Control Model
USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR	CDC Class Error Codes
USB_CDC_COMM_INTF	Communication Interface Class Code
USB_CDC_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_CDC_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_LENGTH	Number of uint8_ts Control line transfer
USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT	This is macro USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT.
USB_CDC_CS_INTERFACE	Functional Descriptor Details Type Values for the bDscType Field
USB_CDC_DATA_INTF	Data Interface Class Codes
USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_CDC_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_CDC_DEVICE_HOLDING	Device is holding due to error
USB_CDC_DEVICE_MANAGEMENT	Device Management
USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_CDC_DIRECT_LINE_CONTROL_MODEL	Direct Line Control Model
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_ACM	ACM - Abstract Control Management
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_DLM	DLM - Direct Line Management

USB_CDC_DSC_FN_HEADER	bDscSubType in Functional Descriptors
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL.
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL	Ethernet Emulation Model
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL	Ethernet Networking Control Model
USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE	Returns the current settings for the communications feature.
USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST	Requests a response in the format of the supported control protocol.
USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING	Requests current DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_CDC_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR	The interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH	Number of uint8_ts Line Coding transfer
USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE	Max transfer size is 64 uint8_ts for Full Speed USB
USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL	Mobile Direct Line Model
USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL	Multi-Channel Control Model
USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL	No class specific protocol required For more.... see Table 7 in USB CDC Specification 1.2
USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	No report descriptor found
USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_CDC_OBEX	OBEX
USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD	Report Descriptor for not proper
USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.
USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK	Sends special carrier modulation used to specify [V24] style break.
USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND	Issues a command in the format of the supported control protocol.
USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE	Controls the settings for a particular communications feature.
USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE	V24] signal used to tell the DCE device the DTE device is now present.
USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING	Configures DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL	Telephone Control Model
USB_CDC_V25TER	Common AT commands ("Hayes(TM)")
USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL	Wireless Handset Control Model

## Module

CDC Client Driver

## Structures

	Name	Description
	_COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores communication interface details of the attached CDC device
	_DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores data interface details of the attached CDC device

	COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores communication interface details of the attached CDC device
	DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores data interface details of the attached CDC device
	USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC	Abstract Control Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC	Call Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO	This structure is used to hold information about an attached CDC device
	_USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC	Abstract Control Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC	Header Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC	Call Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC	Union Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO	This structure is used to hold information about an attached CDC device
	_USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC	Header Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC	Union Functional Descriptor

### Unions

	Name	Description
	USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP	This is type USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP.
	USB_CDC_LINE_CODING	This is type USB_CDC_LINE_CODING.
	_USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP	This is type USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP.
	_USB_CDC_LINE_CODING	This is type USB_CDC_LINE_CODING.

### Description

#### 1.4.2.2.2.1 COMM\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS Structure

##### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

##### Syntax

```
typedef struct _COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS {
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    uint8_t noOfEndpoints;
    USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC Header_Fn_Desc;
    USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC ACM_Fn_Desc;
    USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC Union_Fn_Desc;
    USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC Call_Mgt_Fn_Desc;
    uint16_t endpointMaxDataSize;
    uint16_t endpointInDataSize;
    uint16_t endpointOutDataSize;
    uint8_t endpointPollInterval;
    uint8_t endpointType;
    uint8_t endpointIN;
    uint8_t endpointOUT;
} COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS;
```

##### Members

Members	Description
uint8_t interfaceNum;	communication interface number
uint8_t noOfEndpoints;	Number endpoints for communication interface Functional Descriptor Details
USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC Header_Fn_Desc;	Header Function Descriptor
USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC ACM_Fn_Desc;	Abstract Control Model Function Descriptor
USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC Union_Fn_Desc;	Union Function Descriptor
USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC Call_Mgt_Fn_Desc;	Call Management Function Descriptor Endpoint Descriptor Details

uint16_t endpointMaxDataSize;	Max data size for a interface.
uint16_t endpointInDataSize;	Max data size for a interface.
uint16_t endpointOutDataSize;	Max data size for a interface.
uint8_t endpointPollInterval;	Polling rate of corresponding interface.
uint8_t endpointType;	Endpoint type - either Isochronous or Bulk
uint8_t endpointIN;	IN endpoint for comm interface.
uint8_t endpointOUT;	IN endpoint for comm interface.

**Description**

This structure stores communication interface details of the attached CDC device

**1.4.2.2.2.2 DATA\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS Structure****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS {
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
    uint8_t noOfEndpoints;
    uint16_t endpointInDataSize;
    uint16_t endpointOutDataSize;
    uint8_t endpointType;
    uint8_t endpointIN;
    uint8_t endpointOUT;
} DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint8_t interfaceNum;	Data interface number
uint8_t noOfEndpoints;	number of endpoints associated with data interface
uint16_t endpointInDataSize;	Max data size for a interface.
uint16_t endpointOutDataSize;	Max data size for a interface.
uint8_t endpointType;	Endpoint type - either Isochronous or Bulk
uint8_t endpointIN;	IN endpoint for comm interface.
uint8_t endpointOUT;	IN endpoint for comm interface.

**Description**

This structure stores data interface details of the attached CDC device

**1.4.2.2.2.3 USB\_CDC\_ACM\_FN\_DSC Structure****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC {
    uint8_t bFNLength;
    uint8_t bDscType;
    uint8_t bDscSubType;
    uint8_t bmCapabilities;
} USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint8_t bFNLength;	Size of this functional descriptor, in uint8_ts.
uint8_t bDscType;	CS_INTERFACE

uint8_t bDscSubType;	Abstract Control Management functional descriptor subtype as defined in [USBCDC1.2].
uint8_t bmCapabilities;	The capabilities that this configuration supports. (A bit value of zero means that the request is not supported.)

**Description**

Abstract Control Management Functional Descriptor

**1.4.2.2.2.4 USB\_CDC\_CALL\_MGT\_FN\_DSC Structure****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC {
    uint8_t bFNLength;
    uint8_t bDscType;
    uint8_t bDscSubType;
    uint8_t bmCapabilities;
    uint8_t bDataInterface;
} USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint8_t bFNLength;	Size of this functional descriptor, in uint8_ts.
uint8_t bDscType;	CS_INTERFACE
uint8_t bDscSubType;	Call Management functional descriptor subtype, as defined in [USBCDC1.2].
uint8_t bmCapabilities;	The capabilities that this configuration supports:
uint8_t bDataInterface;	Interface number of Data Class interface optionally used for call management.

**Description**

Call Management Functional Descriptor

**1.4.2.2.2.5 USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP Union****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef union _USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP {
    uint8_t _uint8_t;
    struct {
        unsigned DTE_PRESENT : 1;
        unsigned CARRIER_CONTROL : 1;
    }
} USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
unsigned DTE_PRESENT : 1;	0] Not Present [1] Present
unsigned CARRIER_CONTROL : 1;	0] Deactivate [1] Activate

**Description**

This is type USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP.

### 1.4.2.2.2.6 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_INFO Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO {
    uint8_t* userData;
    uint16_t reportSize;
    uint16_t remainingBytes;
    uint16_t bytesTransferred;
    union {
        struct {
            uint8_t bfDirection : 1;
            uint8_t bfReset : 1;
            uint8_t bfClearDataIN : 1;
            uint8_t bfClearDataOUT : 1;
        }
        uint8_t val;
    } flags;
    uint8_t driverSupported;
    uint8_t deviceAddress;
    uint8_t errorCode;
    uint8_t state;
    uint8_t returnState;
    uint8_t noOfInterfaces;
    uint8_t interface;
    uint8_t endpointDATA;
    uint8_t commRequest;
    uint8_t clientDriverID;
    COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS commInterface;
    DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS dataInterface;
} USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint8_t* userData;	Data pointer to application buffer.
uint16_t reportSize;	Total length of user data
uint16_t remainingBytes;	Number uint8_ts remaining to be transferred in case user data length is more than 64 uint8_ts
uint16_t bytesTransferred;	Number of uint8_ts transferred to/from the user's data buffer.
uint8_t bfDirection : 1;	Direction of current transfer (0=OUT, 1=IN).
uint8_t bfReset : 1;	Flag indicating to perform CDC Reset.
uint8_t bfClearDataIN : 1;	Flag indicating to clear the IN endpoint.
uint8_t bfClearDataOUT : 1;	Flag indicating to clear the OUT endpoint.
uint8_t driverSupported;	If CDC driver supports requested Class, Subclass & Protocol.
uint8_t deviceAddress;	Address of the device on the bus.
uint8_t errorCode;	Error code of last error.
uint8_t state;	State machine state of the device.
uint8_t returnState;	State to return to after performing error handling.
uint8_t noOfInterfaces;	Total number of interfaces in the device.
uint8_t interface;	Interface number of current transfer.
uint8_t endpointDATA;	Endpoint to use for the current transfer.
uint8_t commRequest;	Current Communication code
uint8_t clientDriverID;	Client driver ID for device requests.
COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS commInterface;	This structure stores communication interface details.
DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS dataInterface;	This structure stores data interface details.

**Description**

This structure is used to hold information about an attached CDC device

**1.4.2.2.2.7 USB\_CDC\_HEADER\_FN\_DSC Structure****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC {
    uint8_t bFNLength;
    uint8_t bDscType;
    uint8_t bDscSubType;
    uint8_t bcdCDC[2];
} USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint8_t bFNLength;	Size of this functional descriptor, in uint8_ts.
uint8_t bDscType;	CS_INTERFACE
uint8_t bDscSubType;	Header. This is defined in [USBCDC1.2], which defines this as a header.
uint8_t bcdCDC[2];	USB Class Definitions for Communications Devices Specification release number in binary-coded decimal.

**Description**

Header Functional Descriptor

**1.4.2.2.2.8 USB\_CDC\_LINE\_CODING Union****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef union _USB_CDC_LINE_CODING {
    struct {
        uint8_t _uint8_t[USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH];
    }
    struct {
        uint32_t dwDTERate;
        uint8_t bCharFormat;
        uint8_t bParityType;
        uint8_t bDataBits;
    }
} USB_CDC_LINE_CODING;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint32_t dwDTERate;	Data terminal rate, in bits per second.
uint8_t bCharFormat;	Stop bits 0:1 Stop bit, 1:1.5 Stop bits, 2:2 Stop bits
uint8_t bParityType;	Parity 0:None, 1:Odd, 2:Even, 3:Mark, 4:Space
uint8_t bDataBits;	Data bits (5, 6, 7, 8 or 16)

**Description**

This is type USB\_CDC\_LINE\_CODING.

### 1.4.2.2.2.9 USB\_CDC\_UNION\_FN\_DSC Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC {
    uint8_t bFNLength;
    uint8_t bDscType;
    uint8_t bDscSubType;
    uint8_t bMasterIntf;
    uint8_t bSaveIntf0;
} USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint8_t bFNLength;	Size of this functional descriptor, in uint8_ts.
uint8_t bDscType;	CS_INTERFACE
uint8_t bDscSubType;	Union Descriptor Functional Descriptor subtype as defined in [USBCDC1.2].
uint8_t bMasterIntf;	Interface number of the control (Communications Class) interface
uint8_t bSaveIntf0;	Interface number of the subordinate (Data Class) interface

#### Description

Union Functional Descriptor

### 1.4.2.2.2.10 DEVICE\_CLASS\_CDC Macro

#### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
#define DEVICE_CLASS_CDC 0x02 // CDC Interface Class Code
```

#### Description

CDC Interface Class Code

### 1.4.2.2.2.11 EVENT\_CDC\_ATTACH Macro

#### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
#define EVENT_CDC_ATTACH EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 1 // No event occurred (NULL event)
```

#### Description

No event occurred (NULL event)

### 1.4.2.2.2.12 EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_READ\_DONE Macro

#### File

usb\_host\_cdc.h

#### Syntax

```
#define EVENT_CDC_COMM_READ_DONE EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 2 // A CDC Communication Read transfer has completed
```

**Description**

A CDC Communication Read transfer has completed

**1.4.2.2.2.13 EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_WRITE\_DONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_COMM_WRITE_DONE EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 3 // A CDC  
Communication Write transfer has completed
```

**Description**

A CDC Communication Write transfer has completed

**1.4.2.2.2.14 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_READ\_DONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_DATA_READ_DONE EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 4 // A CDC Data Read  
transfer has completed
```

**Description**

A CDC Data Read transfer has completed

**1.4.2.2.2.15 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_WRITE\_DONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_DATA_WRITE_DONE EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 5 // A CDC Data  
Write transfer has completed
```

**Description**

A CDC Data Write transfer has completed

**1.4.2.2.2.16 EVENT\_CDC\_NAK\_TIMEOUT Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_NAK_TIMEOUT EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 7 // CDC device NAK  
timeout has occurred
```

**Description**

CDC device NAK timeout has occurred

**1.4.2.2.2.17 EVENT\_CDC\_NONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_NONE EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 0 // No event occurred (NULL event)
```

**Description**

No event occurred (NULL event)

**1.4.2.2.2.18 EVENT\_CDC\_OFFSET Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_OFFSET 0
```

**Description**

If the application has not defined an offset for CDC events, set it to 0.

**1.4.2.2.2.19 EVENT\_CDC\_RESET Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_CDC_RESET EVENT_CDC_BASE + EVENT_CDC_OFFSET + 6 // CDC reset complete
```

**Description**

CDC reset complete

**1.4.2.2.2.20 USB\_CDC\_ABSTRACT\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL 0x02 // Abstract Control Model
```

**Description**

Abstract Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.21 USB\_CDC\_ATM\_NETWORKING\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_ATM_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL 0x07 // ATM Networking Control Model
```

**Description**

ATM Networking Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.22 USB\_CDC\_CAPI\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_CAPI_CONTROL_MODEL 0x05 // CAPI Control Model
```

**Description**

CAPI Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.23 USB\_CDC\_CLASS\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR USB_ERROR_CLASS_DEFINED
```

**Description**

CDC Class Error Codes

**1.4.2.2.2.24 USB\_CDC\_COMM\_INTF Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_COMM_INTF 0x02 // Communication Interface Class Code
```

**Description**

Communication Interface Class Code

**1.4.2.2.2.25 USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_FAILED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_COMMAND_FAILED (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x01) // Command failed at the device.
```

**Description**

Command failed at the device.

**1.4.2.2.2.26 USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_PASSED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_COMMAND_PASSED USB_SUCCESS // Command was successful.
```

**Description**

Command was successful.

**1.4.2.2.2.27 USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_LINE\_LENGTH Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_LENGTH 0x00 // Number of uint8_ts Control line transfer
```

**Description**

Number of uint8\_ts Control line transfer

**1.4.2.2.28 USB\_CDC\_CS\_ENDPOINT Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT 0x25
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_CS\_ENDPOINT.

**1.4.2.2.29 USB\_CDC\_CS\_INTERFACE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_CS_INTERFACE 0x24
```

**Description**

Functional Descriptor Details Type Values for the bDscType Field

**1.4.2.2.30 USB\_CDC\_DATA\_INTF Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DATA_INTF 0x0A
```

**Description**

Data Interface Class Codes

**1.4.2.2.31 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_BUSY Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x04) // A transfer is currently in progress.
```

**Description**

A transfer is currently in progress.

**1.4.2.2.32 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_DETACHED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DEVICE_DETACHED 0x50 // Device is detached.
```

**Description**

Device is detached.

**1.4.2.2.2.33 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_HOLDING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DEVICE_HOLDING 0x54 // Device is holding due to error
```

**Description**

Device is holding due to error

**1.4.2.2.2.34 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_MANAGEMENT Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DEVICE_MANAGEMENT 0x09 // Device Management
```

**Description**

Device Management

**1.4.2.2.2.35 USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_NOT\_FOUND Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x03) // Device with the specified address is not available.
```

**Description**

Device with the specified address is not available.

**1.4.2.2.2.36 USB\_CDC\_DIRECT\_LINE\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DIRECT_LINE_CONTROL_MODEL 0x01 // Direct Line Control Model
```

**Description**

Direct Line Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.37 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_ACM Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_ACM 0x02 // ACM - Abstract Control Management
```

**Description**

ACM - Abstract Control Management

**1.4.2.2.2.38 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_CALL\_MGT Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT 0x01
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_CALL\_MGT.

**1.4.2.2.2.39 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_COUNTRY\_SELECTION Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION 0x07
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_COUNTRY\_SELECTION.

**1.4.2.2.2.40 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_DLM Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_DLM 0x03 // DLM - Direct Line Managment
```

**Description**

DLM - Direct Line Managment

**1.4.2.2.2.41 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_HEADER Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_HEADER 0x00
```

**Description**

bDscSubType in Functional Descriptors

**1.4.2.2.2.42 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_RPT\_CAPABILITIES Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES 0x05
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_RPT\_CAPABILITIES.

**1.4.2.2.2.43 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TEL\_OP\_MODES Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES 0x08
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TEL\_OP\_MODES.

**1.4.2.2.2.44 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TELEPHONE\_RINGER Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER 0x04
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TELEPHONE\_RINGER.

**1.4.2.2.2.45 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_UNION Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION 0x06
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_UNION.

**1.4.2.2.2.46 USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_USB\_TERMINAL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL 0x09
```

**Description**

This is macro USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_USB\_TERMINAL.

**1.4.2.2.2.47 USB\_CDC\_ETHERNET\_EMULATION\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL 0x0C // Ethernet Emulation Model
```

**Description**

Ethernet Emulation Model

**1.4.2.2.2.48 USB\_CDC\_ETHERNET\_NETWORKING\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL 0x06 // Ethernet Networking Control Model
```

**Description**

Ethernet Networking Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.49 USB\_CDC\_GET\_COMM\_FEATURE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE 0x03 // Returns the current settings for the  
communications feature.
```

**Description**

Returns the current settings for the communications feature.

**1.4.2.2.2.50 USB\_CDC\_GET\_ENCAPSULATED\_REQUEST Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST 0x01 // Requests a response in the format of  
the supported control protocol.
```

**Description**

Requests a response in the format of the supported control protocol.

**1.4.2.2.2.51 USB\_CDC\_GET\_LINE\_CODING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING 0x21 // Requests current DTE rate, stop-bits, parity,  
and number-of-character bits.
```

**Description**

Requests current DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.

**1.4.2.2.2.52 USB\_CDC\_ILLEGAL\_REQUEST Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x0B) // Cannot perform requested operation.
```

**Description**

Cannot perform requested operation.

**1.4.2.2.2.53 USB\_CDC\_INITIALIZING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_INITIALIZING 0x51 // Device is initializing.
```

**Description**

Device is initializing.

**1.4.2.2.2.54 USB\_CDC\_INTERFACE\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x06) // The interface layer cannot support the device.
```

**Description**

The interface layer cannot support the device.

**1.4.2.2.2.55 USB\_CDC\_LINE\_CODING\_LENGTH Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH 0x07 // Number of uint8_ts Line Coding transfer
```

**Description**

Number of uint8\_ts Line Coding transfer

**1.4.2.2.2.56 USB\_CDC\_MAX\_PACKET\_SIZE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE 0x200 // Max transfer size is 64 uint8_ts for Full Speed USB
```

**Description**

Max transfer size is 64 uint8\_ts for Full Speed USB

\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*

Data Structures

#### 1.4.2.2.2.57 USB\_CDC\_MOBILE\_DIRECT\_LINE\_MODEL Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL 0x0A // Mobile Direct Line Model
```

**Description**

Mobile Direct Line Model

#### 1.4.2.2.2.58 USB\_CDC\_MULTI\_CHANNEL\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL 0x04 // Multi-Channel Control Model
```

**Description**

Multi-Channel Control Model

#### 1.4.2.2.2.59 USB\_CDC\_NO\_PROTOCOL Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL 0x00 // No class specific protocol required
```

**Description**

No class specific protocol required For more.... see Table 7 in USB CDC Specification 1.2

#### 1.4.2.2.2.60 USB\_CDC\_NO\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x05) // No report descriptor found
```

**Description**

No report descriptor found

#### 1.4.2.2.2.61 USB\_CDC\_NORMAL\_RUNNING Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING 0x53 // Device is running and available for data transfers.
```

**Description**

Device is running and available for data transfers.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.62 USB\_CDC\_OBEX Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_OBEX 0x0B // OBEX
```

**Description**

OBEX

#### 1.4.2.2.2.63 USB\_CDC\_PHASE\_ERROR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x02) // Command had a phase error at the device.
```

**Description**

Command had a phase error at the device.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.64 USB\_CDC\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR\_BAD Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x05) // Report Descriptor for not proper
```

**Description**

Report Descriptor for not proper

#### 1.4.2.2.2.65 USB\_CDC\_RESET\_ERROR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR (USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR | 0x0A) // An error occurred while resetting the device.
```

**Description**

An error occurred while resetting the device.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.66 USB\_CDC\_RESETTING\_DEVICE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE 0x55 // Device is being reset.
```

**Description**

Device is being reset.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.67 USB\_CDC\_SEND\_BREAK Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK 0x23 // Sends special carrier modulation used to specify [V24] style break.
```

**Description**

Sends special carrier modulation used to specify [V24] style break.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.68 USB\_CDC\_SEND\_ENCAPSULATED\_COMMAND Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND 0x00 // Issues a command in the format of the supported control protocol.
```

**Description**

Issues a command in the format of the supported control protocol.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.69 USB\_CDC\_SET\_COMM\_FEATURE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE 0x02 // Controls the settings for a particular communications feature.
```

**Description**

Controls the settings for a particular communications feature.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.70 USB\_CDC\_SET\_CONTROL\_LINE\_STATE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE 0x22 // [V24] signal used to tell the DCE device the DTE device is now present.
```

**Description**

[V24] signal used to tell the DCE device the DTE device is now present.

#### 1.4.2.2.2.71 USB\_CDC\_SET\_LINE\_CODING Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING 0x20 // Configures DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
```

**Description**

Configures DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.

**1.4.2.2.2.72 USB\_CDC\_TELEPHONE\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL 0x03 // Telephone Control Model
```

**Description**

Telephone Control Model

**1.4.2.2.2.73 USB\_CDC\_V25TER Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_V25TER 0x01 // Common AT commands ("Hayes(TM)")
```

**Description**

Common AT commands ("Hayes(TM)")

**1.4.2.2.2.74 USB\_CDC\_WIRELESS\_HANDSET\_CONTROL\_MODEL Macro****File**

usb\_host\_cdc.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL 0x08 // Wireless Handset Control Model
```

**Description**

Wireless Handset Control Model

**1.4.2.2.3 usb\_host\_cdc.h****Functions**

	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
≡	USBHostCDCDeviceStatus	This function determines the status of a CDC device.
≡	USBHostCDCEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
≡	USBHostCDCInitAddress	This function initializes the address of the attached CDC device.
≡	USBHostCDCInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.
≡	USBHostCDCResetDevice	This function starts a CDC reset.
≡	USBHostCDCTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by CDC class
≡	USBHostCDCTransfer	This function starts a CDC transfer.
≡	USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**Macros**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
DEVICE_CLASS_CDC	CDC Interface Class Code
EVENT_CDC_ATTACH	No event occurred (NULL event)

EVENT_CDC_COMM_READ_DONE	A CDC Communication Read transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_COMM_WRITE_DONE	A CDC Communication Write transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_DATA_READ_DONE	A CDC Data Read transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_DATA_WRITE_DONE	A CDC Data Write transfer has completed
EVENT_CDC_NAK_TIMEOUT	CDC device NAK timeout has occurred
EVENT_CDC_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_CDC_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for CDC events, set it to 0.
EVENT_CDC_RESET	CDC reset complete
USB_CDC_ABSTRACT_CONTROL_MODEL	Abstract Control Model
USB_CDC_ATM_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL	ATM Networking Control Model
USB_CDC_CAPI_CONTROL_MODEL	CAPI Control Model
USB_CDC_CLASS_ERROR	CDC Class Error Codes
USB_CDC_COMM_INTF	Communication Interface Class Code
USB_CDC_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_CDC_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_CDC_CONTROL_LINE_LENGTH	Number of uint8_ts Control line transfer
USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT	This is macro USB_CDC_CS_ENDPOINT.
USB_CDC_CS_INTERFACE	Functional Descriptor Details Type Values for the bDscType Field
USB_CDC_DATA_INTF	Data Interface Class Codes
USB_CDC_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_CDC_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_CDC_DEVICE_HOLDING	Device is holding due to error
USB_CDC_DEVICE_MANAGEMENT	Device Management
USB_CDC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_CDC_DIRECT_LINE_CONTROL_MODEL	Direct Line Control Model
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_ACM	ACM - Abstract Control Management
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_CALL_MGT.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_COUNTRY_SELECTION.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_DLM	DLM - Direct Line Management
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_HEADER	bDscSubType in Functional Descriptors
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_RPT_CAPABILITIES.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TEL_OP_MODES.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_TELEPHONE_RINGER.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION.
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL	This is macro USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL.
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL	Ethernet Emulation Model
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL	Ethernet Networking Control Model
USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE	Returns the current settings for the communications feature.
USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST	Requests a response in the format of the supported control protocol.
USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING	Requests current DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_CDC_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR	The interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH	Number of uint8_ts Line Coding transfer

USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE	Max transfer size is 64 uint8_ts for Full Speed USB
USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL	Mobile Direct Line Model
USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL	Multi-Channel Control Model
USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL	No class specific protocol required For more.... see Table 7 in USB CDC Specification 1.2
USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	No report descriptor found
USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_CDC_OBEX	OBEX
USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD	Report Descriptor for not proper
USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.
USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK	Sends special carrier modulation used to specify [V24] style break.
USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND	Issues a command in the format of the supported control protocol.
USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE	Controls the settings for a particular communications feature.
USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE	V24] signal used to tell the DCE device the DTE device is now present.
USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING	Configures DTE rate, stop-bits, parity, and number-of-character bits.
USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL	Telephone Control Model
USB_CDC_V25TER	Common AT commands ("Hayes(TM)")
USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL	Wireless Handset Control Model

**Module**

CDC Client Driver

**Structures**

	Name	Description
	_COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores communication interface details of the attached CDC device
	_DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores data interface details of the attached CDC device
	_USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC	Abstract Control Management Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC	Call Management Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO	This structure is used to hold information about an attached CDC device
	_USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC	Header Functional Descriptor
	_USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC	Union Functional Descriptor
	COMM_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores communication interface details of the attached CDC device
	DATA_INTERFACE_DETAILS	This structure stores data interface details of the attached CDC device
	USB_CDC_ACM_FN_DSC	Abstract Control Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_CALL_MGT_FN_DSC	Call Management Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_DEVICE_INFO	This structure is used to hold information about an attached CDC device
	USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC	Header Functional Descriptor
	USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC	Union Functional Descriptor

**Unions**

	Name	Description
	_USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP	This is type USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP.
	_USB_CDC_LINE_CODING	This is type USB_CDC_LINE_CODING.

	USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP	This is type USB_CDC_CONTROL_SIGNAL_BITMAP.
	USB_CDC_LINE_CODING	This is type USB_CDC_LINE_CODING.

**Description**

This is file usb\_host\_cdc.h.

**1.4.2.2.4 usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h****Functions**

	Name	Description
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request	This function can be used by application code to dynamically access ACM specific requests. This function should be used only if application intends to modify for example the Baudrate from previously configured rate. Data transmitted/received to/from device is a array of bytes. Application must take extra care of understanding the data format before using this function.
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data	This function is called by application to receive Input data over DATA interface. This function setups the request to receive data from the device.
⇒	USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data	This function is called by application to transmit out data over DATA interface. This function setups the request to transmit data to the device.
⇒	USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect	This function determines if a CDC device is attached and ready to use.
⇒	USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete	This function is called by application to poll for transfer status. This function returns true in the transfer is over. To check whether the transfer was successful or not , application must check the error code returned by reference.

**Module**

CDC Client Driver

**Description**

This is file usb\_host\_cdc\_interface.h.

**1.4.2.3 HID Client Driver**

This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for HID devices.

**Files**

Name	Description
usb_host_hid.h	This is file usb_host_hid.h.
usb_host_hid_parser.h	This is file usb_host_hid_parser.h.

**Description**

This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for HID devices. Common HID devices include mice, keyboards, and bar code scanners. Many other USB peripherals also use the HID class to transfer data, since it provides a simple, flexible interface and does not require a custom Windows driver when used with a PC.

See *AN1144 - USB HID Class on an Embedded Host* and *AN1212 - Using USB Keyboard with an Embedded Host* for more information.

### 1.4.2.3.1 Functions

#### Functions

	Name	Description
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiFindBit	This function is used to locate a specific button or indicator. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined data structures. This function traverses these data structure and extract data required by application
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiFindValue	Find a specific Usage Value. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined data structures. This function traverses these data structure and extract data required by application.
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum	This function returns the interface number of the current report descriptor parsed. This function must be called to fill data interface detail data structure and passed as parameter when requesting for report transfers.
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiImportData	This function can be used by application to extract data from the input reports. On receiving the input report from the device application can call the function with required inputs 'HID_DATA_DETAILS'.
⇒	USBHostHID_HasUsage	This function is used to locate the usage in a report descriptor. Function will look into the data structures created by the HID parser and return the appropriate location.
⇒	USBHostHIDDeviceDetect	This function determines if a HID device is attached and ready to use.
⇒	USBHostHIDDeviceStatus	
⇒	USBHostHIDEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostHIDInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostHIDResetDevice	This function starts a HID reset.
⇒	USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait	This function resets a HID device, and waits until the reset is complete.
⇒	USBHostHIDTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by HID class
⇒	USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer	This function terminates a transfer that is in progress.
⇒	USBHostHIDTransfer	This function starts a HID transfer.
⇒	USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

#### Macros

Name	Description
USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiGetReport	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiSendReport	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiTransferIsComplete	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo	This function returns a pointer to the current report info structure.
USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers	This function returns a pointer to list of item pointers stored in a structure.
USBHostHIDRead	This function starts a Get report transfer request from the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();
USBHostHIDWrite	This function starts a Set report transfer request to the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();

#### Module

HID Client Driver

**Description****1.4.2.3.1.1 USBHostHID\_ApiFindBit Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiFindBit(uint16_t usagePage, uint16_t usage, HIDReportTypeEnum type,
uint8_t* Report_ID, uint8_t* Report_Length, uint8_t* Start_Bit);
```

**Description**

This function is used to locate a specific button or indicator. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined data structures. This function traverses these data structures and extracts data required by application.

**Remarks**

Application event handler with event 'EVENT\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_PARSED' is called. Application is supposed to fill in data details in structure 'HID\_DATA\_DETAILS'. This function can be used to get the details of the required usages.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	If the required usage is located in the report descriptor
FALSE	If the application required usage is not supported by the device (i.e. report descriptor).

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiFindBit(uint16_t usagePage, uint16_t usage, HIDReportTypeEnum type,
uint8_t* Report_ID, uint8_t* Report_Length, uint8_t* Start_Bit)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.2 USBHostHID\_ApiFindValue Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiFindValue(uint16_t usagePage, uint16_t usage, HIDReportTypeEnum type,
uint8_t* Report_ID, uint8_t* Report_Length, uint8_t* Start_Bit, uint8_t* Bit_Length);
```

**Description**

Find a specific Usage Value. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined data structures. This function traverses these data structures and extracts data required by application.

**Remarks**

Application event handler with event 'EVENT\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_PARSED' is called. Application is supposed to fill in data details structure 'HID\_DATA\_DETAILS'. This function can be used to get the details of the required usages.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	If the required usage is located in the report descriptor
FALSE	If the application required usage is not supported by the device(i.e report descriptor).

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiFindValue(uint16_t usagePage,uint16_t usage,
    HIDReportTypeEnum type,uint8_t* Report_ID,uint8_t* Report_Length,uint8_t*
    Start_Bit, uint8_t* Bit_Length)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.3 USBHostHID\_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum();
```

**Description**

This function returns the interface number of the current report descriptor parsed. This function must be called to fill data interface detail data structure and passed as parameter when requesting for report transfers.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer is complete, errorCode is valid
FALSE	Transfer is not complete, errorCode is not valid

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum(void)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.4 USBHostHID\_ApiImportData Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiImportData(uint8_t * report, uint16_t reportLength, HID_USER_DATA_SIZE *
    buffer, HID_DATA_DETAILS * pDataDetails);
```

**Description**

This function can be used by application to extract data from the input reports. On receiving the input report from the device application can call the function with required inputs 'HID\_DATA\_DETAILS'.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	If the required data is retrieved from the report
FALSE	If required data is not found.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHID_ApiImportData(uint8_t *report, uint16_t reportLength,
    HID_USER_DATA_SIZE *buffer, HID_DATA_DETAILS *pDataDetails)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.5 USBHostHID\_HasUsage Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHID_HasUsage(HID_REPORTITEM * reportItem, uint16_t usagePage, uint16_t usage,
    uint16_t * pindex, uint8_t* count);
```

**Description**

This function is used to locate the usage in a report descriptor. Function will look into the data structures created by the HID parser and return the appropriate location.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
bool	FALSE - If requested usage is not found
TRUE	if requested usage is found

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHID_HasUsage( HID_REPORTITEM *reportItem, uint16_t usagePage,
    uint16_t usage, uint16_t *pindex, uint8_t* count)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.6 USBHostHIDDeviceDetect Function****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHIDDeviceDetect(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

**Description**

This function determines if a HID device is attached and ready to use.

**Remarks**

This function replaces the USBHostHID\_ApiDeviceDetect() function.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	HID present and ready
FALSE	HID not present or not ready

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHIDDeviceDetect( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.7 USBHostHIDDeviceStatus Function****File**

```
usb_host_hid.h
```

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function determines the status of a HID device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Illegal device address, or the device is not an HID
USB_HID_INITIALIZING	HID is attached and in the process of initializing
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	HID device is detected and report descriptor is being parsed
USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING	HID Device is running normal, ready to send and receive reports
USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING	Driver has encountered error and could not recover
USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED	HID detached.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.8 USBHostHIDEventHandler Function**

This function is the event handler for this client driver.

**File**

```
usb_host_hid.h
```

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHIDEventHandler( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void * data, uint32_t size );
```

**Description**

This function is the event handler for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when various events occur.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

The device has been initialized.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Event was handled
FALSE	Event was not handled

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHIDEventHandler( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.9 USBHostHIDInitialize Function**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHIDInitialize( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID );
```

**Description**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when the USB device is being enumerated. For a HID device we need to look into HID descriptor, interface descriptor and endpoint descriptor.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	We can support the device.
FALSE	We cannot support the device.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHIDInitialize( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.10 USBHostHIDResetDevice Function**

This function starts a HID reset.

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function starts a HID reset. A reset can be issued only if the device is attached and not being initialized.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Reset started
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Device is in an illegal state for reset

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.11 USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait Function****File**

```
usb_host_hid.h
```

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait( uint8_t deviceAddress );
```

**Description**

This function resets a HID device, and waits until the reset is complete.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Reset successful
USB_HID_RESET_ERROR	Error while resetting device
Others	See return values for USBHostHIDResetDevice() and error codes that can be returned in the errorCode parameter of USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete();

**Function**

```
bool USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.3.1.12 USBHostHIDTasks Function**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by HID class

**File**

```
usb_host_hid.h
```

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostHIDTasks( );
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the HID class. If transfer events from the host layer are not being used, then it should be called on a regular basis by the application. If transfer events from the host layer are being used, this function is compiled out, and does not need to be called.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

USBHostHIDInitialize() has been called.

**Function**

void USBHostHIDTasks( void )

**1.4.2.3.1.13 USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer Function**

This function terminates a transfer that is in progress.

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t direction, uint8_t interfaceNum );
```

**Description**

This function terminates a transfer that is in progress.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Transfer terminated
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address

**Function**

uint8\_t USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer( uint8\_t deviceAddress, uint8\_t direction, uint8\_t interfaceNum )

**1.4.2.3.1.14 USBHostHIDTransfer Function**

This function starts a HID transfer.

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t direction, uint8_t interfaceNum, uint16_t reportid, uint16_t size, uint8_t * data );
```

**Description**

This function starts a HID transfer. A read/write wrapper is provided in application interface file to access this function.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
Others	Return values from USBHostIssueDeviceRequest(), USBHostRead(), and USBHostWrite()

**Function**

USBHostHIDTransfer( uint8\_t deviceAddress, uint8\_t direction, uint8\_t interfaceNum,  
uint8\_t reportid, uint8\_t size, uint8\_t \*data)

**1.4.2.3.15 USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete Function**

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t * errorCode, uint8_t *
byteCount );
```

**Description**

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete. If the functions returns TRUE, the returned byte count and error code are valid. Since only one transfer can be performed at once and only one endpoint can be used, we only need to know the device address.

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
TRUE	Transfer is complete, errorCode is valid
FALSE	Transfer is not complete, errorCode is not valid

**Function**

bool USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete( uint8\_t deviceAddress,  
uint8\_t \*errorCode, uint32\_t \*byteCount )

**1.4.2.3.16 USBHostHID\_ApiDeviceDetect Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect USBHostHIDDeviceDetect( 1 )
```

**Description**

This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.

**1.4.2.3.17 USBHostHID\_ApiGetReport Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_ApiGetReport( r, i, s, d ) USBHostHIDRead( 1, r, i, s, d )
```

**Description**

This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.

**1.4.2.3.1.18 USBHostHID\_ApiResetDevice Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait( 1 )
```

**Description**

This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.

**1.4.2.3.1.19 USBHostHID\_ApiSendReport Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_ApiSendReport( r, i, s, d ) USBHostHIDWrite( 1, r, i, s, d )
```

**Description**

This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.

**1.4.2.3.1.20 USBHostHID\_ApiTransferIsComplete Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_ApiTransferIsComplete( e, c ) USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete( 1, e, c )
```

**Description**

This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.

**1.4.2.3.1.21 USBHostHID\_GetCurrentReportInfo Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo (&deviceRptInfo)
```

**Returns**

uint8\_t\* - Pointer to the report Info structure.

**Description**

This function returns a pointer to the current report info structure.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
uint8_t* USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo(void)
```

**1.4.2.3.1.22 USBHostHID\_GetItemListPointers Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers (&itemListPtrs)
```

**Returns**

uint8\_t \* - Pointer to list of item pointers structure.

**Description**

This function returns a pointer to list of item pointers stored in a structure.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Function**

```
uint8_t* USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers()
```

**1.4.2.3.1.23 USBHostHIDRead Macro**

This function starts a Get report transfer request from the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostHIDRead( deviceAddress,reportid,interface,size,data) \
    USBHostHIDTransfer( deviceAddress,1,interface,reportid,size,data)
```

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
Others	Return values from USBHostRead()

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDRead( uint8_t deviceAddress,uint8_t reportid, uint8_t interface,
uint8_t size, uint8_t *data)
```

### 1.4.2.3.1.24 USBHostHIDWrite Macro

This function starts a Set report transfer request to the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();

#### File

usb\_host\_hid.h

#### Syntax

```
#define USBHostHIDWrite( address,reportid,interface,size,data) \
    USBHostHIDTransfer( address,0,interface,reportid,size,data)
```

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
Others	Return values from USBHostIssueDeviceRequest(), and USBHostWrite()

#### Function

```
uint8_t USBHostHIDWrite( uint8_t deviceAddress,uint8_t reportid, uint8_t interface,
uint8_t size, uint8_t *data)
```

### 1.4.2.3.2 Data Types and Constants

#### Enumerations

Name	Description
HIDReportTypeEnum	This is type HIDReportTypeEnum.
USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR	HID parser error codes This enumerates the error encountered during the parsing of report descriptor. In case of any error parsing is stopped and the error is flagged. Device is not attached successfully.

#### Macros

Name	Description
DEVICE_CLASS_HID	HID Interface Class Code
DSC_HID	HID Descriptor Code
DSC_PHY	Physical Descriptor Code
EVENT_HID_ATTACH	A HID device has attached. The returned data pointer points to a USB_HID_DEVICE_ID structure.
EVENT_HID_BAD_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	There was a problem parsing the report descriptor of the attached device. Communication with the device is not allowed, and the device should be detached.
EVENT_HID_DETACH	A HID device has detached. The returned data pointer points to a byte with the previous address of the detached device.
EVENT_HID_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_HID_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for HID events, set it to 0.

EVENT_HID_READ_DONE	define EVENT_HID_TRANSFER EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 3 // Unused - value retained for legacy. A HID Read transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID_TRANSFER_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.
EVENT_HID_RESET	HID reset complete. The returned data pointer is NULL.
EVENT_HID_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while trying to do a HID reset. The returned data pointer is NULL.
EVENT_HID_RPT_DESC_PARSED	A Report Descriptor has been parsed. The returned data pointer is NULL. The application must collect details, or simply return TRUE if the application is already aware of the data format.
EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE	A HID Write transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID_TRANSFER_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.
HOST_DSC_RPT	Report Descriptor Code
USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR	
USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING	Device is holding due to error
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_HID_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR	The interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	No report descriptor found
USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD	Report Descriptor for not proper
USB_HID_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	Parser is processing report descriptor.

**Module**

HID Client Driver

**Structures**

	Name	Description
	_HID_COLLECTION	HID Collection Details This structure contains information about each collection encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_DATA_DETAILS	HID Data Details This structure defines the objects used by the application to access required report. Application must use parser interface functions to fill these details. e.g. USBHostHID_ApiFindValue
	_HID_GLOBALS	HID Global Item Information This structure contains information about each Global Item of the report descriptor.
	_HID_ITEM_INFO	HID Item Information This structure contains information about each Item of the report descriptor.
	_HID_REPORT	HID Report details This structure contains information about each report exchanged with the device.

	_HID_REPORTITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_STRINGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_TRANSFER_DATA	HID Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion (EVENT_HID_READ_DONE or EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE).
	_HID_USAGEITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Usage Item encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_COLLECTION	HID Collection Details This structure contains information about each collection encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_DATA_DETAILS	HID Data Details This structure defines the objects used by the application to access required report. Application must use parser interface functions to fill these details. e.g. USBHostHID_ApiFindValue
	HID_DESIGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_GLOBALS	HID Global Item Information This structure contains information about each Global Item of the report descriptor.
	HID_ITEM_INFO	HID Item Information This structure contains information about each Item of the report descriptor.
	HID_REPORT	HID Report details This structure contains information about each report exchanged with the device.
	HID_REPORTITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_STRINGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_TRANSFER_DATA	HID Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion (EVENT_HID_READ_DONE or EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE).
	HID_USAGEITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Usage Item encountered in the report descriptor.
	_USB_HID_DEVICE_ID	HID Device ID Information This structure contains identification information about an attached device.
	_USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO	Report Descriptor Information This structure contains top level information of the report descriptor. This information is important and is used to understand the information during the course of parsing. This structure also stores temporary data needed during parsing the report descriptor. All of this information may not be of much importance to the application.
	USB_HID_DEVICE_ID	HID Device ID Information This structure contains identification information about an attached device.

	<code>_USB_HID_ITEM_LIST</code>	<p>List of Items</p> <p>This structure contains array of pointers to all the Items in the report descriptor. HID parser will populate the lists while parsing the report descriptor. This data is used by interface functions provided in file <code>usb_host_hid_interface.c</code> to retrieve data from the report received from the device. Application can also access these details to retrieve the intended information incase provided interface function fail to do so.</p>
	<code>USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO</code>	<p>Report Descriptor Information</p> <p>This structure contains top level information of the report descriptor. This information is important and is used to understand the information during th ecourse of parsing. This structure also stores temporary data needed during parsing the report descriptor. All of this information may not be of much inportance to the application.</p>
	<code>USB_HID_ITEM_LIST</code>	<p>List of Items</p> <p>This structure contains array of pointers to all the Items in the report descriptor. HID parser will populate the lists while parsing the report descriptor. This data is used by interface functions provided in file <code>usb_host_hid_interface.c</code> to retrieve data from the report received from the device. Application can also access these details to retrieve the intended information incase provided interface function fail to do so.</p>

**Types**

Name	Description
<code>HID_USER_DATA_SIZE</code>	<p>HID User Data Size</p> <p>This defines the data type required to hold the maximum field size data. Maximum size of data field within a report</p>

**Variables**

Name	Description
<code>deviceRptInfo</code>	
<code>itemListPtrs</code>	This is variable <code>itemListPtrs</code> .

**Description**

**1.4.2.3.2.1 HID\_COLLECTION Structure**

**File**

`usb_host_hid_parser.h`

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_COLLECTION {
    uint32_t data;
    uint16_t usagePage;
    uint8_t firstUsageItem;
    uint8_t usageItems;
    uint8_t firstReportItem;
    uint8_t reportItems;
    uint8_t parent;
    uint8_t firstChild;
    uint8_t nextSibling;
} HID_COLLECTION;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
<code>uint32_t data;</code>	Collection raw data
<code>uint16_t usagePage;</code>	Usage page associated with current level of collection
<code>uint8_t firstUsageltem;</code>	Index of First Usage Item in the current collection
<code>uint8_t usageltems;</code>	Number of Usage Items in the current collection

uint8_t firstReportItem;	Index of First report Item in the current collection
uint8_t reportItems;	Number of report Items in the current collection
uint8_t parent;	Index to Parent collection
uint8_t firstChild;	Index to next child collection in the report descriptor
uint8_t nextSibling;	Index to next child collection in the report descriptor

**Description**

HID Collection Details

This structure contains information about each collection encountered in the report descriptor.

**1.4.2.3.2.2 HID\_DATA\_DETAILS Structure**

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_DATA_DETAILS {
    uint16_t reportLength;
    uint16_t reportID;
    uint8_t bitOffset;
    uint8_t bitLength;
    uint8_t count;
    uint8_t signExtend;
    uint8_t interfaceNum;
} HID_DATA_DETAILS;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint16_t reportLength;	reportLength - the expected length of the parent report.
uint16_t reportID;	reportID - report ID - the first byte of the parent report.
uint8_t bitOffset;	BitOffset - bit offset within the report.
uint8_t bitLength;	bitlength - length of the data in bits.
uint8_t count;	count - what's left of the message after this data.
uint8_t signExtend;	extend - sign extend the data.
uint8_t interfaceNum;	interfaceNum - informs HID layer about interface number.

**Description**

HID Data Details

This structure defines the objects used by the application to access required report. Application must use parser interface functions to fill these details. e.g. USBHostHID\_ApiFindValue

**1.4.2.3.2.3 HID\_DESIGITEM Structure**

**File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_STRINGITEM {
    bool isRange;
    uint16_t index;
    uint16_t minimum;
    uint16_t maximum;
} HID_STRINGITEM, HID_DESIGITEM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
bool isRange;	If range of String Item is valid
uint16_t index;	String index for a String descriptor; allows a string to be associated with a particular item or control
uint16_t minimum;	Specifies the first string index when assigning a group of sequential strings to controls in an array or bitmap
uint16_t maximum;	Specifies the last string index when assigning a group of sequential strings to controls in an array or bitmap

**Description**

HID String Item Details

This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.

**1.4.2.3.2.4 HID\_GLOBALS Structure**

**File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_GLOBALS {
    uint16_t usagePage;
    int32_t logicalMinimum;
    int32_t logicalMaximum;
    int32_t physicalMinimum;
    int32_t physicalMaximum;
    int32_t unitExponent;
    int32_t unit;
    uint16_t reportIndex;
    uint8_t reportID;
    uint8_t reportsize;
    uint8_t reportCount;
} HID_GLOBALS;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint16_t usagePage;	Specifies current Usage Page
int32_t logicalMinimum;	This is the minimum value that a variable or array item will report
int32_t logicalMaximum;	This is the maximum value that a variable or array item will report
int32_t physicalMinimum;	Minimum value for the physical extent of a variable item
int32_t physicalMaximum;	Maximum value for the physical extent of a variable item
int32_t unitExponent;	Value of the unit exponent in base 10
int32_t unit;	Unit values
uint16_t reportIndex;	Counter to keep track of report being processed in the parser
uint8_t reportID;	Report ID. All the reports are preceded by a single byte report ID
uint8_t reportsize;	Size of current report in bytes
uint8_t reportCount;	This field determines number of fields in the report

**Description**

HID Global Item Information

This structure contains information about each Global Item of the report descriptor.

### 1.4.2.3.2.5 HID\_ITEM\_INFO Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _HID_ITEM_INFO {
    union {
        struct {
            uint8_t ItemSize : 2;
            uint8_t ItemType : 2;
            uint8_t ItemTag : 4;
        }
        uint8_t val;
    } ItemDetails;
    union {
        int32_t sItemData;
        uint32_t uItemData;
        uint8_t bItemData[4];
    } Data;
} HID_ITEM_INFO;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint8_t ItemSize : 2;	Numeric expression specifying size of data
uint8_t ItemType : 2;	This field identifies type of item(Main, Global or Local)
uint8_t ItemTag : 4;	This field specifies the function of the item
uint8_t val;	to access the data in byte format
int32_t sltemData;	Item Data is stored in signed format
uint32_t ultemData;	Item Data is stored in unsigned format

#### Description

HID Item Information

This structure contains information about each Item of the report descriptor.

### 1.4.2.3.2.6 HID\_REPORT Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _HID_REPORT {
    uint16_t reportID;
    uint16_t inputBits;
    uint16_t outputBits;
    uint16_t featureBits;
} HID_REPORT;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint16_t reportID;	Report ID of the associated report
uint16_t inputBits;	If input report then length of report in bits
uint16_t outputBits;	If output report then length of report in bits
uint16_t featureBits;	If feature report then length of report in bits

#### Description

HID Report details

This structure contains information about each report exchanged with the device.

### 1.4.2.3.2.7 HID\_REPORTITEM Structure

**File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_REPORTITEM {
    HIDReportTypeEnum reportType;
    HID_GLOBALS globals;
    uint8_t startBit;
    uint8_t parent;
    uint32_t dataModes;
    uint8_t firstUsageItem;
    uint8_t usageItems;
    uint8_t firstStringItem;
    uint8_t stringItems;
    uint8_t firstDesignatorItem;
    uint8_t designatorItems;
} HID_REPORTITEM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
HIDReportTypeEnum reportType;	Type of Report Input/Output/Feature
HID_GLOBALS globals;	Stores all the global items associated with the current report
uint8_t startBit;	Starting Bit Position of the report
uint8_t parent;	Index of parent collection
uint32_t dataModes;	this tells the data mode is array or not
uint8_t firstUsageltem;	Index to first usage item related to the report
uint8_t usageltems;	Number of usage items in the current report
uint8_t firstStringItem;	Index to first srting item in the list
uint8_t stringltems;	Number of string items in the current report
uint8_t firstDesignatorltem;	Index to first designator item
uint8_t designatorltems;	Number of designator items in the current report

**Description**

HID Report Details

This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.

### 1.4.2.3.2.8 HID\_STRINGITEM Structure

**File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_STRINGITEM {
    bool isRange;
    uint16_t index;
    uint16_t minimum;
    uint16_t maximum;
} HID_STRINGITEM, HID_DESIGITEM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
bool isRange;	If range of String Item is valid
uint16_t index;	String index for a String descriptor; allows a string to be associated with a particular item or control

uint16_t minimum;	Specifies the first string index when assigning a group of sequential strings to controls in an array or bitmap
uint16_t maximum;	Specifies the last string index when assigning a group of sequential strings to controls in an array or bitmap

**Description**

HID String Item Details

This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.

**1.4.2.3.2.9 HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA Structure****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_TRANSFER_DATA {
    uint32_t dataCount;
    uint8_t bErrorCode;
} HID_TRANSFER_DATA;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
uint32_t dataCount;	Count of bytes transferred.
uint8_t bErrorCode;	Transfer error code.

**Description**

HID Transfer Information

This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion (EVENT\_HID\_READ\_DONE or EVENT\_HID\_WRITE\_DONE).

**1.4.2.3.2.10 HID\_USAGEITEM Structure****File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef struct _HID_USAGEITEM {
    bool isRange;
    uint16_t usagePage;
    uint16_t usage;
    uint16_t usageMinimum;
    uint16_t usageMaximum;
} HID_USAGEITEM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
bool isRange;	True if Usage item has a valid MAX and MIN range
uint16_t usagePage;	Usage page ID associated with the Item
uint16_t usage;	Usage ID associated with the Item
uint16_t usageMinimum;	Defines the starting usage associated with an array or bitmap
uint16_t usageMaximum;	Defines the ending usage associated with an array or bitmap

**Description**

HID Report Details

This structure contains information about each Usage Item encountered in the report descriptor.

### 1.4.2.3.2.11 HID\_USER\_DATA\_SIZE Type

#### File

usb\_host\_hid.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef unsigned char HID_USER_DATA_SIZE;
```

#### Description

HID User Data Size

This defines the data type required to hold the maximum field size data.

Maximum size of data field within a report

### 1.4.2.3.2.12 HIDReportTypeEnum Enumeration

#### File

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef enum {
    hidReportInput,
    hidReportOutput,
    hidReportFeature,
    hidReportUnknown
} HIDReportTypeEnum;
```

#### Description

This is type HIDReportTypeEnum.

### 1.4.2.3.2.13 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_ID Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_hid.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_HID_DEVICE_ID {
    uint16_t vid;
    uint16_t pid;
    uint8_t deviceAddress;
    uint8_t clientDriverID;
} USB_HID_DEVICE_ID;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint16_t vid;	Vendor ID of the device
uint16_t pid;	Product ID of the device
uint8_t deviceAddress;	Address of the device on the USB
uint8_t clientDriverID;	Client driver ID for device requests

#### Description

HID Device ID Information

This structure contains identification information about an attached device.

### 1.4.2.3.2.14 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_RPT\_INFO Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO {
    uint16_t reportPollingRate;
    uint8_t interfaceNumber;
    bool haveDesignatorMax;
    bool haveDesignatorMin;
    bool haveStringMax;
    bool haveStringMin;
    bool haveUsageMax;
    bool haveUsageMin;
    uint16_t designatorMaximum;
    uint16_t designatorMinimum;
    uint16_t designatorRanges;
    uint16_t designators;
    uint16_t rangeUsagePage;
    uint16_t stringMaximum;
    uint16_t stringMinimum;
    uint16_t stringRanges;
    uint16_t usageMaximum;
    uint16_t usageMinimum;
    uint16_t usageRanges;
    uint8_t collectionNesting;
    uint8_t collections;
    uint8_t designatorItems;
    uint8_t firstUsageItem;
    uint8_t firstDesignatorItem;
    uint8_t firstStringItem;
    uint8_t globalsNesting;
    uint8_t maxCollectionNesting;
    uint8_t maxGlobalsNesting;
    uint8_t parent;
    uint8_t reportItems;
    uint8_t reports;
    uint8_t sibling;
    uint8_t stringItems;
    uint8_t strings;
    uint8_t usageItems;
    uint8_t usages;
    HID_GLOBALS globals;
} USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
uint16_t reportPollingRate;	This stores the pollrate for the input report. Application can use this to decide the rate of transfer
uint8_t interfaceNumber;	This stores the interface number for the current report descriptor
bool haveDesignatorMax;	True if report descriptor has a valid Designator Max
bool haveDesignatorMin;	True if report descriptor has a valid Designator Min
bool haveStringMax;	True if report descriptor has a valid String Max
bool haveStringMin;	True if report descriptor has a valid String Min
bool haveUsageMax;	True if report descriptor has a valid Usage Max
bool haveUsageMin;	True if report descriptor has a valid Usage Min
uint16_t designatorMaximum;	Last designator max value
uint16_t designatorMinimum;	Last designator min value
uint16_t designatorRanges;	Last designator range
uint16_t designators;	This tells toatal number of designator items

uint16_t rangeUsagePage;	current usage page during parsing
uint16_t stringMaximum;	current string maximum
uint16_t stringMinimum;	current string minimum
uint16_t stringRanges;	current string ranges
uint16_t usageMaximum;	current usage maximum
uint16_t usageMinimum;	current usage minimum
uint16_t usageRanges;	current usage ranges
uint8_t collectionNesting;	this number tells depth of collection nesting
uint8_t collections;	total number of collections
uint8_t designatorItems;	total number of designator items
uint8_t firstUsageltem;	index of first usage item for the current collection
uint8_t firstDesignatorItem;	index of first designator item for the current collection
uint8_t firstStringItem;	index of first string item for the current collection
uint8_t globalsNesting;	On encountering every PUSH item , this is incremented , keep track of current depth of Globals
uint8_t maxCollectionNesting;	Maximum depth of collections
uint8_t maxGlobalsNesting;	Maximum depth of Globals
uint8_t parent;	Parent collection
uint8_t reportItems;	total number of report items
uint8_t reports;	total number of reports
uint8_t sibling;	current sibling collection
uint8_t stringItems;	total number of string items , used to index the array of strings
uint8_t strings;	total sumber of strings
uint8_t usageltems;	total number of usage items , used to index the array of usage
uint8_t usages;	total sumber of usages
HID_GLOBALS globals;	holds cuurent globals items

### Description

Report Descriptor Information

This structure contains top level information of the report descriptor. This information is important and is used to understand the information during th ecourse of parsing. This structure also stores temporary data needed during parsing the report descriptor. All of this information may not be of much importance to the application.

### 1.4.2.3.2.15 USB\_HID\_ITEM\_LIST Structure

#### File

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

#### Syntax

```
typedef struct _USB_HID_ITEM_LIST {
    HID_COLLECTION * collectionList;
    HID_DESIGITEM * designatorItemList;
    HID_GLOBALS * globalsStack;
    HID_REPORTITEM * reportItemList;
    HID_REPORT * reportList;
    HID_STRINGITEM * stringItemList;
    HID_USAGEITEM * usageItemList;
    uint8_t * collectionStack;
} USB_HID_ITEM_LIST;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
HID_COLLECTION * collectionList;	List of collections, see HID_COLLECTION for details in the structure
HID_DESIGITEM * designatorItemList;	List of designator Items, see HID_DESIGITEM for details in the structure
HID_GLOBALS * globalsStack;	List of global Items, see HID_GLOBALS for details in the structure
HID_REPORTITEM * reportItemList;	List of report Items, see HID_REPORTITEM for details in the structure
HID_REPORT * reportList;	List of reports , see HID_REPORT for details in the structure
HID_STRINGITEM * stringItemList;	List of string item , see HID_STRINGITEM for details in the structure
HID_USAGEITEM * usageItemList;	List of Usage item , see HID_USAGEITEM for details in the structure
uint8_t * collectionStack;	stores the array of parents ids for the collection

**Description**

List of Items

This structure contains array of pointers to all the Items in the report descriptor. HID parser will populate the lists while parsing the report descriptor. This data is used by interface functions provided in file usb\_host\_hid\_interface.c to retrieve data from the report received from the device. Application can also access these details to retrieve the intended information incase provided interface function fail to do so.

**1.4.2.3.2.16 USB\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_ERROR Enumeration**

**File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
typedef enum {
    HID_ERR = 0,
    HID_ERR_NotEnoughMemory,
    HID_ERR_NullPointer,
    HID_ERR_UnexpectedEndCollection,
    HID_ERR_UnexpectedPop,
    HID_ERR_MissingEndCollection,
    HID_ERR_MissingTopLevelCollection,
    HID_ERR_NoReports,
    HID_ERR_UnmatchedUsageRange,
    HID_ERR_UnmatchedStringRange,
    HID_ERR_UnmatchedDesignatorRange,
    HID_ERR_UnexpectedEndOfDescriptor,
    HID_ERR_BadLogicalMin,
    HID_ERR_BadLogicalMax,
    HID_ERR_BadLogical,
    HID_ERR_ZeroReportSize,
    HID_ERR_ZeroReportID,
    HID_ERR_ZeroReportCount,
    HID_ERR_BadUsageRangePage,
    HID_ERR_BadUsageRange
} USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
HID_ERR = 0	No error
HID_ERR_NotEnoughMemory	If not enough Heap can be allocated, make sure sufficient dynamic memory is allocated for the parser
HID_ERR_NullPointer	Pointer to report descriptor is NULL

HID_ERR_UnexpectedEndCollection	End of collection not expected
HID_ERR_UnexpectedPop	POP not expected
HID_ERR_MissingEndCollection	No end of collection found
HID_ERR_MissingTopLevelCollection	Atleast one collection must be present
HID_ERR_NoReports	atlest one report must be present
HID_ERR_UnmatchedUsageRange	Either Minimum or Maximum for usage range missing
HID_ERR_UnmatchedStringRange	Either Minimum or Maximum for string range missing
HID_ERR_UnmatchedDesignatorRange	Either Minimum or Maximum for designator range missing
HID_ERR_UnexpectedEndOfDescriptor	Report descriptor not formatted properly
HID_ERR_BadLogicalMin	Logical Min greater than report size
HID_ERR_BadLogicalMax	Logical Max greater than report size
HID_ERR_BadLogical	If logical Min is greater than Max
HID_ERR_ZeroReportSize	Report size is zero
HID_ERR_ZeroReportID	report ID is zero
HID_ERR_ZeroReportCount	Number of reports is zero
HID_ERR_BadUsageRangePage	Bad Usage page range
HID_ERR_BadUsageRange	Bad Usage range

**Description**

HID parser error codes

This enumerates the error encountered during the parsing of report descriptor. In case of any error parsing is stopped and the error is flagged. Device is not attached successfully.

**1.4.2.3.2.17 deviceRptInfo Variable****File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO deviceRptInfo;
```

**Section**

External Variables

**1.4.2.3.2.18 itemListPtrs Variable****File**

usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h

**Syntax**

```
USB_HID_ITEM_LIST itemListPtrs;
```

**Description**

This is variable itemListPtrs.

**1.4.2.3.2.19 DEVICE\_CLASS\_HID Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_CLASS_HID 0x03 /* HID Interface Class Code */
```

**Description**

HID Interface Class Code

**1.4.2.3.2.20 DSC\_HID Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DSC_HID 0x21 /* HID Descriptor Code */
```

**Description**

HID Descriptor Code

**1.4.2.3.2.21 DSC\_PHY Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DSC_PHY 0x23 /* Physical Descriptor Code */
```

**Description**

Physical Descriptor Code

**1.4.2.3.2.22 EVENT\_HID\_ATTACH Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_ATTACH EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 7
```

**Description**

A HID device has attached. The returned data pointer points to a USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_ID structure.

**1.4.2.3.2.23 EVENT\_HID\_BAD\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_BAD_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 9
```

**Description**

There was a problem parsing the report descriptor of the attached device. Communication with the device is not allowed, and the device should be detached.

**1.4.2.3.2.24 EVENT\_HID\_DETACH Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_DETACH EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 8
```

**Description**

A HID device has detached. The returned data pointer points to a byte with the previous address of the detached device.

**1.4.2.3.2.25 EVENT\_HID\_NONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_NONE EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 0
```

**Description**

No event occurred (NULL event)

**1.4.2.3.2.26 EVENT\_HID\_OFFSET Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_OFFSET 0
```

**Description**

If the application has not defined an offset for HID events, set it to 0.

**1.4.2.3.2.27 EVENT\_HID\_READ\_DONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_READ_DONE EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 4
```

**Description**

define EVENT\_HID\_TRANSFER EVENT\_HID\_BASE + EVENT\_HID\_OFFSET + 3 // Unused - value retained for legacy. A HID Read transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.

**1.4.2.3.2.28 EVENT\_HID\_RESET Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_RESET EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 6
```

**Description**

HID reset complete. The returned data pointer is NULL.

**1.4.2.3.2.29 EVENT\_HID\_RESET\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_RESET_ERROR EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 10
```

**Description**

An error occurred while trying to do a HID reset. The returned data pointer is NULL.

**1.4.2.3.230 EVENT\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_PARSED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_RPT_DESC_PARSED EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 1
```

**Description**

A Report Descriptor has been parsed. The returned data pointer is NULL. The application must collect details, or simply return TRUE if the application is already aware of the data format.

**1.4.2.3.231 EVENT\_HID\_WRITE\_DONE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 5
```

**Description**

A HID Write transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.

**1.4.2.3.232 HOST\_DSC\_RPT Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define HOST_DSC_RPT 0x2200 /* Report Descriptor Code */
```

**Description**

Report Descriptor Code

**1.4.2.3.233 USB\_HID\_CLASS\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR USB_ERROR_CLASS_DEFINED
```

**Section**

HID Class Error Codes

**1.4.2.3.234 USB\_HID\_COMMAND\_FAILED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | HID_COMMAND_FAILED) /* Command failed
```

*at the device.*

**Description**

Command failed at the device.

**1.4.2.3.2.35 USB\_HID\_COMMAND\_PASSED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED USB_SUCCESS // Command was  
successful.
```

**Description**

Command was successful.

**1.4.2.3.2.36 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_BUSY Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x04) // A transfer is  
currently in progress.
```

**Description**

A transfer is currently in progress.

**1.4.2.3.2.37 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_DETACHED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED 0x50 // Device is detached.
```

**Description**

Device is detached.

**1.4.2.3.2.38 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_HOLDING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING 0x54 // Device is holding due to error
```

**Description**

Device is holding due to error

**1.4.2.3.2.39 USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_NOT\_FOUND Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x03) // Device with
```

*the specified address is not available.*

**Description**

Device with the specified address is not available.

**1.4.2.3.2.40 USB\_HID\_ILLEGAL\_REQUEST Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x0B) // Cannot perform requested operation.
```

**Description**

Cannot perform requested operation.

**1.4.2.3.2.41 USB\_HID\_INITIALIZING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_INITIALIZING 0x51 // Device is initializing.
```

**Description**

Device is initializing.

**1.4.2.3.2.42 USB\_HID\_INTERFACE\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x06) // The interface layer cannot support the device.
```

**Description**

The interface layer cannot support the device.

**1.4.2.3.2.43 USB\_HID\_NO\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x05) // No report descriptor found
```

**Description**

No report descriptor found

**1.4.2.3.2.44 USB\_HID\_NORMAL\_RUNNING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING 0x53 // Device is running and available for data transfers.
```

**Description**

Device is running and available for data transfers.

**1.4.2.3.2.45 USB\_HID\_PHASE\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | HID_PHASE_ERROR) // Command had a phase error at the device.
```

**Description**

Command had a phase error at the device.

**1.4.2.3.2.46 USB\_HID\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR\_BAD Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x07) // Report Descriptor for not proper
```

**Description**

Report Descriptor for not proper

**1.4.2.3.2.47 USB\_HID\_RESET\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_RESET_ERROR (USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR | 0x0A) // An error occurred while resetting the device.
```

**Description**

An error occurred while resetting the device.

**1.4.2.3.2.48 USB\_HID\_RESETTING\_DEVICE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE 0x55 // Device is being reset.
```

**Description**

Device is being reset.

### 1.4.2.3.2.49 USB\_PROCESSING\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_hid.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR 0x52 // Parser is processing report descriptor.
```

**Description**

Parser is processing report descriptor.

### 1.4.2.3.3 usb\_host\_hid.h

**Functions**

	Name	Description
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiFindBit	This function is used to locate a specific button or indicator. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined dat structures. This function traverses these data structure and extract data required by application
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiFindValue	Find a specific Usage Value. Once the report descriptor is parsed by the HID layer without any error, data from the report descriptor is stored in pre defined dat structures. This function traverses these data structure and extract data required by application.
⇒	USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum	This function returns the interface number of the curren report descriptor parsed. This function must be called to fill data interface detail data structure and passed as parameter when requesinf for report transfers.
⇒	USBHostHID_ApilmportData	This function can be used by application to extract data from the input reports. On receiving the input report from the device application can call the function with required inputs 'HID_DATA_DETAILS'.
⇒	USBHostHIDDeviceDetect	This function determines if a HID device is attached and ready to use.
⇒	USBHostHIDDeviceStatus	
⇒	USBHostHIDEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostHIDInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.
⇒	USBHostHIDResetDevice	This function starts a HID reset.
⇒	USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait	This function resets a HID device, and waits until the reset is complete.
⇒	USBHostHIDTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by HID class
⇒	USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer	This function terminates a transfer that is in progress.
⇒	USBHostHIDTransfer	This function starts a HID transfer.
⇒	USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**Macros**

Name	Description
DEVICE_CLASS_HID	HID Interface Class Code
DSC_HID	HID Descriptor Code
DSC_PHY	Pysical Descriptor Code
EVENT_HID_ATTACH	A HID device has attached. The returned data pointer points to a USB_HID_DEVICE_ID structure.
EVENT_HID_BAD_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	There was a problem parsing the report descriptor of the attached device. Communication with the device is not allowed, and the device should be detached.

EVENT_HID_DETACH	A HID device has detached. The returned data pointer points to a byte with the previous address of the detached device.
EVENT_HID_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_HID_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for HID events, set it to 0.
EVENT_HID_READ_DONE	define EVENT_HID_TRANSFER EVENT_HID_BASE + EVENT_HID_OFFSET + 3 // Unused - value retained for legacy. A HID Read transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID_TRANSFER_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.
EVENT_HID_RESET	HID reset complete. The returned data pointer is NULL.
EVENT_HID_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while trying to do a HID reset. The returned data pointer is NULL.
EVENT_HID_RPT_DESC_PARSED	A Report Descriptor has been parsed. The returned data pointer is NULL. The application must collect details, or simply return TRUE if the application is already aware of the data format.
EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE	A HID Write transfer has completed. The returned data pointer points to a HID_TRANSFER_DATA structure, with information about the transfer.
HOST_DSC_RPT	Report Descriptor Code
USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR	
USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING	Device is holding due to error
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_HID_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR	The interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	No report descriptor found
USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD	Report Descriptor for not proper
USB_HID_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	Parser is processing report descriptor.
USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiGetReport	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiSendReport	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_ApiTransfersComplete	This macro provides legacy support for an older API function.
USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo	This function returns a pointer to the current report info structure.
USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers	This function returns a pointer to list of item pointers stored in a structure.
USBHostHIDRead	This function starts a Get report transfer request from the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();
USBHostHIDWrite	This function starts a Set report transfer request to the device, utilizing the function USBHostHIDTransfer();

**Module**

HID Client Driver

**Structures**

	Name	Description
	_HID_DATA_DETAILS	HID Data Details This structure defines the objects used by the application to access required report. Application must use parser interface functions to fill these details. e.g. USBHostHID_ApiFindValue
	_HID_TRANSFER_DATA	HID Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion (EVENT_HID_READ_DONE or EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE).
	_USB_HID_DEVICE_ID	HID Device ID Information This structure contains identification information about an attached device.
	HID_DATA_DETAILS	HID Data Details This structure defines the objects used by the application to access required report. Application must use parser interface functions to fill these details. e.g. USBHostHID_ApiFindValue
	HID_TRANSFER_DATA	HID Transfer Information This structure is used when the event handler is used to notify the upper layer of transfer completion (EVENT_HID_READ_DONE or EVENT_HID_WRITE_DONE).
	USB_HID_DEVICE_ID	HID Device ID Information This structure contains identification information about an attached device.

**Types**

Name	Description
HID_USER_DATA_SIZE	HID User Data Size This defines the data type required to hold the maximum field size data. Maximum size of data field within a report

**Description**

This is file usb\_host\_hid.h.

**1.4.2.3.4 usb\_host\_hid\_parser.h**

**Enumerations**

Name	Description
HIDReportTypeEnum	This is type HIDReportTypeEnum.
USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR	HID parser error codes This enumerates the error encountered during the parsing of report descriptor. In case of any error parsing is stopped and the error is flagged. Device is not attached successfully.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
	USBHostHID_HasUsage	This function is used to locate the usage in a report descriptor. Function will look into the data structures created by the HID parser and return the appropriate location.

**Module**

HID Client Driver

## Structures

	Name	Description
	_HID_COLLECTION	HID Collection Details This structure contains information about each collection encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_GLOBALS	HID Global Item Information This structure contains information about each Global Item of the report descriptor.
	_HID_ITEM_INFO	HID Item Information This structure contains information about each Item of the report descriptor.
	_HID_REPORT	HID Report details This structure contains information about each report exchanged with the device.
	_HID_REPORTITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_STRINGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	_HID_USAGEITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Usage Item encountered in the report descriptor.
	_USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO	Report Descriptor Information This structure contains top level information of the report descriptor. This information is important and is used to understand the information during the course of parsing. This structure also stores temporary data needed during parsing the report descriptor. All of this information may not be of much importance to the application.
	_USB_HID_ITEM_LIST	List of Items This structure contains array of pointers to all the Items in the report descriptor. HID parser will populate the lists while parsing the report descriptor. This data is used by interface functions provided in file usb_host_hid_interface.c to retrieve data from the report received from the device. Application can also access these details to retrieve the intended information incase provided interface function fail to do so.
	HID_COLLECTION	HID Collection Details This structure contains information about each collection encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_STRINGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_GLOBALS	HID Global Item Information This structure contains information about each Global Item of the report descriptor.
	HID_ITEM_INFO	HID Item Information This structure contains information about each Item of the report descriptor.
	HID_REPORT	HID Report details This structure contains information about each report exchanged with the device.
	HID_REPORTITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.

	HID_STRINGITEM	HID String Item Details This structure contains information about each Report encountered in the report descriptor.
	HID_USAGEITEM	HID Report Details This structure contains information about each Usage Item encountered in the report descriptor.
	USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO	Report Descriptor Information This structure contains top level information of the report descriptor. This information is important and is used to understand the information during the course of parsing. This structure also stores temporary data needed during parsing the report descriptor. All of this information may not be of much importance to the application.
	USB_HID_ITEM_LIST	List of Items This structure contains array of pointers to all the Items in the report descriptor. HID parser will populate the lists while parsing the report descriptor. This data is used by interface functions provided in file <code>usb_host_hid_interface.c</code> to retrieve data from the report received from the device. Application can also access these details to retrieve the intended information in case provided interface function fail to do so.

### Variables

Name	Description
deviceRptInfo	
itemListPtrs	This is variable itemListPtrs.

### Description

This is file `usb_host_hid_parser.h`.

## 1.4.2.4 Mass Storage Client Driver

This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for mass storage devices.

### Files

Name	Description
usb_host_msd.h	This is file <code>usb_host_msd.h</code> .

### Description

This client driver provides USB Embedded Host support for mass storage devices. Mass storage devices use USB Bulk transfers to efficiently transfer large amounts of data. Bulk transfers may utilize all remaining bandwidth on the bus after all of the Control, Interrupt, and Isochronous transfers for the frame have completed. The exact amount of time required for a bulk transfer will depend on the amount of other traffic that is on the bus. Therefore, Bulk transfers should be used only for non-time critical operations.

This implementation of the Mass Storage Class provides support for the Bulk Only Transport.

See [AN1142 - USB Mass Storage Class on an Embedded Host](#) for more information about the Mass Storage Class and this client driver.

### 1.4.2.4.1 Functions

#### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	USBHostMSDDeviceStatus	This function determines the status of a mass storage device.
≡	USBHostMSDEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
≡	USBHostMSDInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.

≡	USBHostMSDResetDevice	This function starts a bulk-only mass storage reset.
≡	USBHostMSDTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the mass storage class.
≡	USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer	This function terminates a mass storage transfer.
≡	USBHostMSDTransfer	This function starts a mass storage transfer.
≡	USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**Macros**

Name	Description
USBHostMSDRead	This function starts a mass storage read, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();
USBHostMSDWrite	This function starts a mass storage write, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();

**Module**

Mass Storage Client Driver

**Description**

**1.4.2.4.1.1 USBHostMSDDeviceStatus Function**

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDDeviceStatus(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

**Description**

This function determines the status of a mass storage device.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Illegal device address, or the device is not an MSD
USB_MSD_INITIALIZING	MSD is attached and in the process of initializing
USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING	MSD is in normal running mode
USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE	MSD is resetting
USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED	MSD detached. Should not occur
USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE	MSD is holding due to an error. No communication is allowed.
Other	Return codes from USBHostDeviceStatus() will also be returned if the device is in the process of enumerating.

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDDeviceStatus( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.4.1.2 USBHostMSDEventHandler Function**

This function is the event handler for this client driver.

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostMSDEventHandler(uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event, void * data, uint32_t size);
```

**Description**

This function is the event handler for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when various events occur.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

The device has been initialized.

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	Event was handled
false	Event was not handled

**Function**

```
bool USBHostMSDEventHandler( uint8_t address, USB_EVENT event,
void *data, uint32_t size )
```

**1.4.2.4.1.3 USBHostMSDInitialize Function**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
bool USBHostMSDInitialize(uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID);
```

**Description**

This function is the initialization routine for this client driver. It is called by the host layer when the USB device is being enumerated. For a mass storage device, we need to make sure that we have room for a new device, and that the device has at least one bulk IN and one bulk OUT endpoint.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
true	We can support the device.
false	We cannot support the device.

**Function**

```
bool USBHostMSDInitialize( uint8_t address, uint32_t flags, uint8_t clientDriverID )
```

**1.4.2.4.1.4 USBHostMSDResetDevice Function**

This function starts a bulk-only mass storage reset.

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDResetDevice(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

**Description**

This function starts a bulk-only mass storage reset. A reset can be issued only if the device is attached and not being initialized.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Reset started
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Device is in an illegal state for reset

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDResetDevice( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

**1.4.2.4.1.5 USBHostMSDTasks Function**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the mass storage class.

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
void USBHostMSDTasks();
```

**Returns**

None

**Description**

This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the mass storage class. If transfer events from the host layer are not being used, then it should be called on a regular basis by the application. If transfer events from the host layer are being used, this function is compiled out, and does not need to be called.

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

USBHostMSDInitialize() has been called.

**Parameters**

Parameters	Description
None	None

**Function**

```
void USBHostMSDTasks( void )
```

### 1.4.2.4.1.6 USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer Function

#### File

usb\_host\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
void USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer(uint8_t deviceAddress);
```

#### Returns

None

#### Description

This function terminates a mass storage transfer.

#### Remarks

After executing this function, the application may have to reset the device in order for the device to continue working properly.

#### Preconditions

None

#### Function

```
void USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress )
```

### 1.4.2.4.1.7 USBHostMSDTransfer Function

This function starts a mass storage transfer.

#### File

usb\_host\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDTransfer(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t deviceLUN, uint8_t direction,
uint8_t * commandBlock, uint8_t commandBlockLength, uint8_t * data, uint32_t dataLength);
```

#### Description

This function starts a mass storage transfer. Usually, applications will probably utilize a read/write wrapper to access this function.

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN	Specified LUN does not exist

#### Function

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDTransfer( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t deviceLUN,
uint8_t direction, uint8_t *commandBlock, uint8_t commandBlockLength,
uint8_t *data, uint32_t dataLength )
```

### 1.4.2.4.1.8 USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete Function

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

#### File

usb\_host\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
bool USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete(uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t * errorCode, uint32_t *
byteCount);
```

#### Description

This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete. If the function returns true, the returned byte count and error code are valid. Since only one transfer can be performed at once and only one endpoint can be used, we only need to know the device address.

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
true	Transfer is complete, errorCode is valid
false	Transfer is not complete, errorCode is not valid

#### Function

```
bool USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete( uint8_t deviceAddress,
uint8_t *errorCode, uint32_t *byteCount )
```

### 1.4.2.4.1.9 USBHostMSDRead Macro

#### File

usb\_host\_msd.h

#### Syntax

```
#define USBHostMSDRead(
deviceAddress,deviceLUN,commandBlock,commandBlockLength,data,dataLength ) \
    USBHostMSDTransfer( deviceAddress, deviceLUN, 1, commandBlock, commandBlockLength,
data, dataLength )
```

#### Description

This function starts a mass storage read, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();

#### Remarks

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Return Values

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN	Specified LUN does not exist

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDRead( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t deviceLUN, uint8_t *commandBlock,
uint8_t commandBlockLength, uint8_t *data, uint32_t dataLength );
```

**1.4.2.4.1.10 USBHostMSDWrite Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USBHostMSDWrite(
deviceAddress,deviceLUN,commandBlock,commandBlockLength,data,dataLength ) \
    USBHostMSDTransfer( deviceAddress, deviceLUN, 0, commandBlock, commandBlockLength,
data, dataLength )
```

**Description**

This function starts a mass storage write, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();

**Remarks**

None

**Preconditions**

None

**Return Values**

Return Values	Description
USB_SUCCESS	Request started successfully
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	No device with specified address
USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	Device not in proper state for performing a transfer
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN	Specified LUN does not exist

**Function**

```
uint8_t USBHostMSDWrite( uint8_t deviceAddress, uint8_t deviceLUN, uint8_t *commandBlock,
uint8_t commandBlockLength, uint8_t *data, uint32_t dataLength );
```

**1.4.2.4.2 Data Types and Constants****Macros**

Name	Description
DEVICE_CLASS_MASS_STORAGE	Class code for Mass Storage.
DEVICE_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL_BULK_ONLY	Protocol code for Bulk-only mass storage.
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_CD_DVD	SubClass code for a CD/DVD drive (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_FLOPPY_INTERFACE	SubClass code for a floppy disk interface (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_RBC	SubClass code for Reduced Block Commands (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_REMOVABLE	SubClass code for removable media (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_SCSI	SubClass code for a SCSI interface device (supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_TAPE_DRIVE	SubClass code for a tape drive (not supported).
EVENT_MSD_ATTACH	MSD device has attached
EVENT_MSD_MAX_LUN	Set maximum LUN for the device
EVENT_MSD_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_MSD_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for MSD events, set it to 0.
EVENT_MSD_RESET	MSD reset complete

EVENT_MSD_TRANSFER	A MSD transfer has completed
MSD_COMMAND_FAILED	Transfer failed. Returned in dCSWStatus.
MSD_COMMAND_PASSED	Transfer was successful. Returned in dCSWStatus.
MSD_PHASE_ERROR	Transfer phase error. Returned in dCSWStatus.
USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR	The CBW was not transferred successfully.
USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR	The CSW was not transferred successfully.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_MSD_ERROR	Error code offset.
USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE	Device is holding due to a MSD error.
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_MSD_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN	Invalid LUN specified.
USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR	The media interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY	No dynamic memory is available.
USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.

**Module**

Mass Storage Client Driver

**Description****1.4.2.4.2.1 DEVICE\_CLASS\_MASS\_STORAGE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_CLASS_MASS_STORAGE 0x08 // Class code for Mass Storage.
```

**Description**

Class code for Mass Storage.

**1.4.2.4.2.2 DEVICE\_INTERFACE\_PROTOCOL\_BULK\_ONLY Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL_BULK_ONLY 0x50 // Protocol code for Bulk-only mass storage.
```

**Description**

Protocol code for Bulk-only mass storage.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.3 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_CD\_DVD Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_CD_DVD 0x02 // SubClass code for a CD/DVD drive (not supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for a CD/DVD drive (not supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.4 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_FLOPPY\_INTERFACE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_FLOPPY_INTERFACE 0x04 // SubClass code for a floppy disk interface (not supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for a floppy disk interface (not supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.5 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_RBC Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_RBC 0x01 // SubClass code for Reduced Block Commands (not supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for Reduced Block Commands (not supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.6 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_REMOVABLE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_REMOVABLE 0x05 // SubClass code for removable media (not supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for removable media (not supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.7 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_SCSI Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_SCSI 0x06 // SubClass code for a SCSI interface device (supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for a SCSI interface device (supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.8 DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_TAPE\_DRIVE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define DEVICE_SUBCLASS_TAPE_DRIVE 0x03 // SubClass code for a tape drive (not supported).
```

**Description**

SubClass code for a tape drive (not supported).

#### 1.4.2.4.2.9 EVENT\_MSD\_ATTACH Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_ATTACH EVENT_MSD_BASE + EVENT_MSD_OFFSET + 4 // MSD device has attached
```

**Description**

MSD device has attached

#### 1.4.2.4.2.10 EVENT\_MSD\_MAX\_LUN Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_MAX_LUN EVENT_MSD_BASE + EVENT_MSD_OFFSET + 3 // Set maximum LUN for the device
```

**Description**

Set maximum LUN for the device

#### 1.4.2.4.2.11 EVENT\_MSD\_NONE Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_NONE EVENT_MSD_BASE + EVENT_MSD_OFFSET + 0 // No event occurred (NULL event)
```

**Description**

No event occurred (NULL event)

#### 1.4.2.4.2.12 EVENT\_MSD\_OFFSET Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_OFFSET 0
```

**Description**

If the application has not defined an offset for MSD events, set it to 0.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.13 EVENT\_MSD\_RESET Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_RESET EVENT_MSD_BASE + EVENT_MSD_OFFSET + 2 // MSD reset complete
```

**Description**

MSD reset complete

#### 1.4.2.4.2.14 EVENT\_MSD\_TRANSFER Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define EVENT_MSD_TRANSFER EVENT_MSD_BASE + EVENT_MSD_OFFSET + 1 // A MSD transfer has completed
```

**Description**

A MSD transfer has completed

#### 1.4.2.4.2.15 MSD\_COMMAND\_FAILED Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define MSD_COMMAND_FAILED 0x01 // Transfer failed. Returned in dCSWStatus.
```

**Description**

Transfer failed. Returned in dCSWStatus.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.16 MSD\_COMMAND\_PASSED Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define MSD_COMMAND_PASSED 0x00 // Transfer was successful. Returned in dCSWStatus.
```

**Description**

Transfer was successful. Returned in dCSWStatus.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.17 MSD\_PHASE\_ERROR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define MSD_PHASE_ERROR 0x02 // Transfer phase error. Returned in dCSWStatus.
```

**Description**

Transfer phase error. Returned in dCSWStatus.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.18 USB\_MSD\_CBW\_ERROR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x04) // The CBW was not  
transferred successfully.
```

**Description**

The CBW was not transferred successfully.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.19 USB\_MSD\_COMMAND\_FAILED Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED (USB_MSD_ERROR | MSD_COMMAND_FAILED) // Command failed at the  
device.
```

**Description**

Command failed at the device.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.20 USB\_MSD\_COMMAND\_PASSED Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED USB_SUCCESS // Command was  
successful.
```

**Description**

Command was successful.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.21 USB\_MSD\_CSW\_ERROR Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x05) // The CSW was not  
transferred successfully.
```

**Description**

The CSW was not transferred successfully.

#### 1.4.2.4.2.22 USB\_MSD\_DEVICE\_BUSY Macro

**File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x07) // A transfer is currently  
in progress.
```

**Description**

A transfer is currently in progress.

**1.4.2.4.2.23 USB\_MSD\_DEVICE\_DETACHED Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED 0x50 // Device is detached.
```

**Description**

Device is detached.

**1.4.2.4.2.24 USB\_MSD\_DEVICE\_NOT\_FOUND Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x06) // Device with the  
specified address is not available.
```

**Description**

Device with the specified address is not available.

**1.4.2.4.2.25 USB\_MSD\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_ERROR USB_ERROR_CLASS_DEFINED // Error code offset.
```

**Description**

Error code offset.

**1.4.2.4.2.26 USB\_MSD\_ERROR\_STATE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE 0x55 // Device is holding due to a MSD error.
```

**Description**

Device is holding due to a MSD error.

**1.4.2.4.2.27 USB\_MSD\_ILLEGAL\_REQUEST Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x0B) // Cannot perform  
requested operation.
```

**Description**

Cannot perform requested operation.

**1.4.2.4.28 USB\_MSD\_INITIALIZING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_INITIALIZING 0x51 // Device is initializing.
```

**Description**

Device is initializing.

**1.4.2.4.29 USB\_MSD\_INVALID\_LUN Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x08) // Invalid LUN specified.
```

**Description**

Invalid LUN specified.

**1.4.2.4.230 USB\_MSD\_MEDIA\_INTERFACE\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x09) // The media interface layer cannot support the device.
```

**Description**

The media interface layer cannot support the device.

**1.4.2.4.231 USB\_MSD\_NORMAL\_RUNNING Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING 0x52 // Device is running and available for data transfers.
```

**Description**

Device is running and available for data transfers.

**1.4.2.4.232 USB\_MSD\_OUT\_OF\_MEMORY Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x03) // No dynamic memory is available.
```

**Description**

No dynamic memory is available.

**1.4.2.4.2.33 USB\_MSD\_PHASE\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR (USB_MSD_ERROR | MSD_PHASE_ERROR) // Command had a phase error at the device.
```

**Description**

Command had a phase error at the device.

**1.4.2.4.2.34 USB\_MSD\_RESET\_ERROR Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR (USB_MSD_ERROR | 0x0A) // An error occurred while resetting the device.
```

**Description**

An error occurred while resetting the device.

**1.4.2.4.2.35 USB\_MSD\_RESETTING\_DEVICE Macro****File**

usb\_host\_msd.h

**Syntax**

```
#define USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE 0x53 // Device is being reset.
```

**Description**

Device is being reset.

**1.4.2.4.3 usb\_host\_msd.h****Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	USBHostMSDDeviceStatus	This function determines the status of a mass storage device.
≡	USBHostMSDEventHandler	This function is the event handler for this client driver.
≡	USBHostMSDInitialize	This function is the initialization routine for this client driver.
≡	USBHostMSDResetDevice	This function starts a bulk-only mass storage reset.
≡	USBHostMSDTasks	This function performs the maintenance tasks required by the mass storage class.
≡	USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer	This function terminates a mass storage transfer.
≡	USBHostMSDTransfer	This function starts a mass storage transfer.
≡	USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete	This function indicates whether or not the last transfer is complete.

**Macros**

Name	Description
DEVICE_CLASS_MASS_STORAGE	Class code for Mass Storage.
DEVICE_INTERFACE_PROTOCOL_BULK_ONLY	Protocol code for Bulk-only mass storage.
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_CD_DVD	SubClass code for a CD/DVD drive (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_FLOPPY_INTERFACE	SubClass code for a floppy disk interface (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_RBC	SubClass code for Reduced Block Commands (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_REMOVABLE	SubClass code for removable media (not supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_SCSI	SubClass code for a SCSI interface device (supported).
DEVICE_SUBCLASS_TAPE_DRIVE	SubClass code for a tape drive (not supported).
EVENT_MSD_ATTACH	MSD device has attached
EVENT_MSD_MAX_LUN	Set maximum LUN for the device
EVENT_MSD_NONE	No event occurred (NULL event)
EVENT_MSD_OFFSET	If the application has not defined an offset for MSD events, set it to 0.
EVENT_MSD_RESET	MSD reset complete
EVENT_MSD_TRANSFER	A MSD transfer has completed
MSD_COMMAND_FAILED	Transfer failed. Returned in dCSWStatus.
MSD_COMMAND_PASSED	Transfer was successful. Returned in dCSWStatus.
MSD_PHASE_ERROR	Transfer phase error. Returned in dCSWStatus.
USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR	The CBW was not transferred successfully.
USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED	Command failed at the device.
USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED	Command was successful.
USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR	The CSW was not transferred successfully.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	A transfer is currently in progress.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED	Device is detached.
USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	Device with the specified address is not available.
USB_MSD_ERROR	Error code offset.
USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE	Device is holding due to a MSD error.
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	Cannot perform requested operation.
USB_MSD_INITIALIZING	Device is initializing.
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN	Invalid LUN specified.
USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR	The media interface layer cannot support the device.
USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING	Device is running and available for data transfers.
USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY	No dynamic memory is available.
USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR	Command had a phase error at the device.
USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR	An error occurred while resetting the device.
USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE	Device is being reset.
USBHostMSDRead	This function starts a mass storage read, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();
USBHostMSDWrite	This function starts a mass storage write, utilizing the function USBHostMSDTransfer();

**Module**

Mass Storage Client Driver

**Description**

This is file usb\_host\_msd.h.

# 1.5 Demo Board Information

This section gives a brief introduction and links to more information for the USB demo boards.

## Description

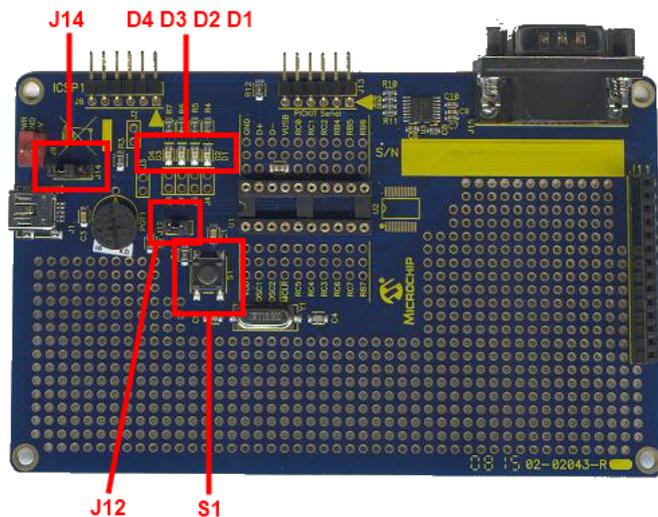
### 1.5.1 Low Pin Count USB Development Board

The low pin count USB development board serves as a base platform for the 20-pin USB products. This currently is the PIC18F14K50 family devices and the PIC16F145x family devices.

## Description

### Overview

This board features the [PIC18F14K50](#) microcontroller, but can also be used (preferably with minor modifications) with the [PIC16F145x](#) devices. The PIC18F14K50 controller has 20 pins, 16KB of flash, 768 bytes of RAM and an 8-bit core running up to 12MIPS.



J12 - Shorts the VUSB pin to Vdd rail. This jumper should always be left open, unless an 'LF' device is used, and the board VDD is externally supplied with a nominal 3.3V supply (ex: external power provided on J9, with the J14 jumperd in the leftmost position).

J14 - Selects the power source for the board. Short pins 1 and 2 to power from J9. Short pins 2 and 3 to power from the USB VBUS line.

S1 - Application button. Connected to RA3

D1 - Application LED. Connected to RC0

D2 - Application LED. Connected to RC1

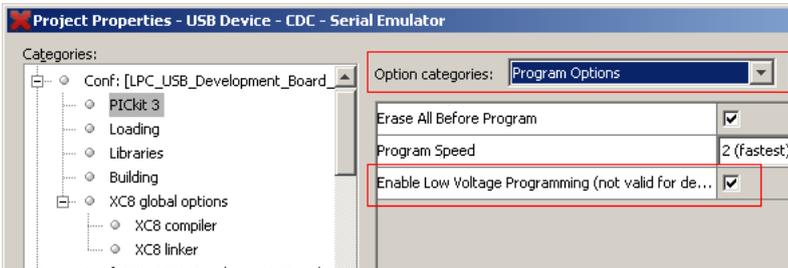
D3 - Application LED. Connected to RC2

D4 - Application LED. Connected to RC3

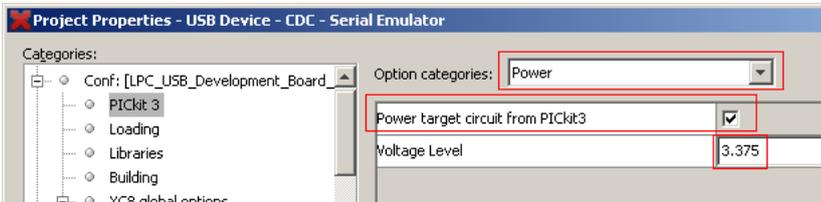
### Using the Low Pin Count (LPC) USB Development Board with the PIC16F145x Devices

The original LPC USB Development board was designed for the PIC18F14K50, but the subsequent PIC16F145x USB microcontrollers have pinout backwards compatibility with the PIC18F14K50. Therefore, it is possible to use these PIC16F devices with the LPC USB Dev board. However, the board was not optimized for this newer device, and therefore there are several things that are useful to know when trying to use a PIC16F USB device with this board.

**Programming the PIC16F145x Device on the LPC USB Dev Kit Board:** The PIC16F145x microcontrollers feature two ICSP programming ports. One port (full programming and debug supported) is multiplexed with the MCLR/RC0/RC1 I/O pins. The other ICSP programming only port (no debug) is multiplexed with the MCLR/D+/D- I/O pins, so as to provide pinout backwards compatibility with the PIC18F14K50. By default, on the original version of the LPC Dev Kit board, only the MCLR/D+/D- programming interface is made available on the ICSP1 PICKit 3 style programming header. In order to program a PIC16F145x device using the ICSP1 header, it is required that the "Enable Low Voltage Programming" checkbox for the programmer device be selected in the MPLAB IDE build configuration settings. This is NOT the default setting (by default, high voltage programming is used instead, which the PIC16F145x silicon does not support through the MCLR/D+/D- ICSP port). This programmer option is under the "Program Options" option categories:



In addition to checking the low voltage programming check box, it is normally necessary to unplug the USB cable from the demo board (and USB host) during the programming operation, to minimize the capacitance and potential for I/O contention on the D+/D- pins, during the programming operation. Therefore, it is often convenient to program the microcontroller while the LPC Dev Kit board is being powered from the ICSP programmer (such as the PICKit 3):



Alternatively, if full program and debug operations are desired (using standard high voltage programming mode), it is recommended to connect the ICSP programmer to the MCLR/RC0/RC1 programming/debug port. This is the preferred ICSP port on the PIC16F145x devices, but they are not routed to a ICSP header on the original LPC Dev Kit Board (they are routed to header ICSP2 on the updated revision of the board). Therefore, if you have the original board, it is suggested to solder a new 6-pin standard male header (standard 100 mil pin spacing) to the prototyping area of the PCB, and then connect air wires to connect up to the MCLR, VDD, VSS, RC0, and RC1 pins. When using the MCLR/RC0/RC1 programming/debug port, it is not necessary to unplug the USB cable from the host during program/debug operations, and it is not necessary to power the board from the programmer or to use the low voltage programming mode.

**Using a PIC16F145x Device on the LPC USB Dev Kit Board with the HFINTOSC+PLL+Active Clock Tuning:** In order to use the HFINTOSC + PLL + Active Clock Tuning to operate in full speed USB mode, it is necessary for the VDD microcontroller supply rail to be stable and free of noise. However, the original LPC USB Dev Kit board does not have much VDD rail capacitance (0.2uF total), but it has a substantial noise generating source (the MAX3232 level translator chip, which uses build in capacitive charge pumps to generate positive voltages above VDD and negative voltages below VSS for RS232 level communication). The charge pumping action generates a substantial ripple/noise on the VDD rail, which can disrupt the HFINTOSC stability enough to cause USB communication issues (even though HSPLL mode is unaffected, as

the crystal is a resonant device that is harder to disrupt by noise). To fix this, it is necessary to add additional capacitance across the VDD/VSS nets on the LPC USB Development kit board. A value of 1uF to 8uF, preferably cermaic, is ideal, and provides good smoothing of the VDD rail noise. It is therefore recommended to solder a new 1-8uF ceramic capacitor (ex: 0603 or 0805) on top of the existing capacitor C1 on the demo board, to provide the VDD noise smoothing effect. Once this change has been made, the HFINTOSC + PLL + Active Clock Tuning may be used to successfully/reliably operate the microcontroller in USB full speed mode. If you have a newer revision PCB, this extra capacitance will already be populated on the PCB, and therefore, no soldering or other changes are required.

More Information

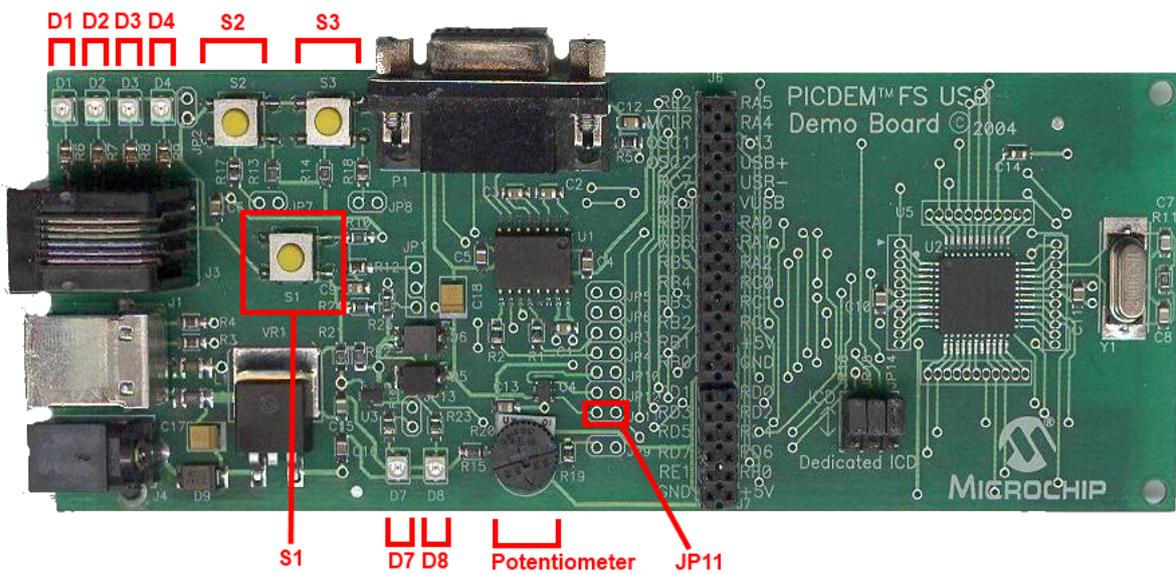
- [Product webpage](#)
- [PIC18F14K50 webpage](#)
- [PIC16F1459 webpage](#)

# 1.5.2 PICDEM FS USB Board

The PICDEM FS USB Board is the development platform for the PIC18F4550 family. It includes a temperature sensor, potentiometer, 2 buttons, 4 LEDs, and a PICtail connector.

Description

Overview



- S1 - MCLR reset button
- S2 - Application button
- S3 - Application button
- D1 - Application LED
- D2 - Application LED
- D3 - Application LED
- D4 - Application LED

D7 - Bus powered indicator - When this LED is illuminated, the board is being powered by the USB bus.

D8 - Self powered indicator - When this LED is illuminated, the board is being powered by an external power supply.

JP11 - connects RB2 of the microcontroller to the temperature sensor on the board (U4). On some revisions of the board there is a trace shorting this jumper that needs to be cut in order to open this jumper.

### More Information

[Product website](#)

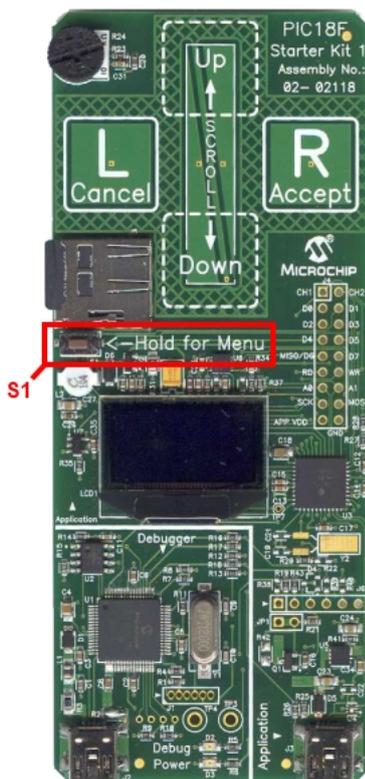
---

## 1.5.3 PIC18 Starter Kit

The PIC18F Starter Kit is a feature rich board with lots of on board features for customers to work with. The board includes an accelerometer, 2 capacitive touch buttons, 1 capacitive touch slider, 1 switch, an OLED, potentiometer, SD-card slot, and an on board debugger.

### Description

#### Overview



S1 - Application switch. Connected to RB0.

### More Information

[Product Website](#)

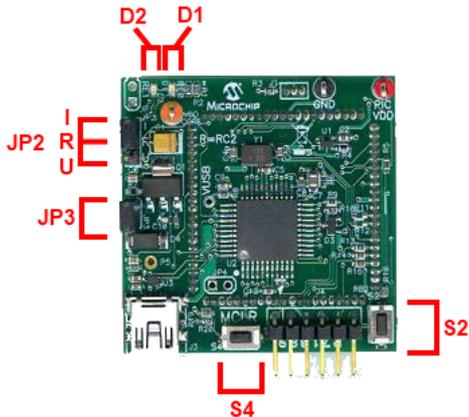
[Introduction Video](#)

## 1.5.4 PIC18F46J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

The PIC18F46J50 PIM services as a development platform for the PIC18F46J50 family. It includes 2 LEDs and a push button. It can also optionally be connected to the PIC18 Explorer board for access to additional features, such as potentiometer, PICtail, temperature sensor, etc.

### Description

#### Overview



- JP2 - This is a three-pin header with the labels, "I", "R" and "U". The "R" is an abbreviation referring to microcontroller pin, RC2. "I" is an abbreviation referring to the "ICE" female header pin for the RC2 signal. "U" is an abbreviation for the USB VBUS line. When the jumper is in the "R" to "I" position, the RC2 pin connects only to the ICE female header pin, just like most of the other general purpose I/O pins. When the jumper is in the "R" to "U" position, RC2 (which is 5.5V tolerant) can be used to sense when the USB cable has been attached to the host, and when the host is actively providing power to the +5V VBUS line. According to the USB 2.0 specifications, no device should ever pull the D+ or D- lines high (such as with the D+ or D- pull-up resistor) until the host actively powers the +5V VBUS line. This is intended to prevent self-powered peripherals from ever sourcing even small amounts of power to the host when the host is not powered. Small amounts of current could potentially prevent the host (and possibly other USB peripherals connected to that host) from fully becoming depowered, which may cause problems during power-up and initialization. Self-powered peripherals should periodically monitor the +5V VBUS line and detect when it is driven high. Only when it is powered should user firmware enable the USB module and turn on the D+ (for full speed) or D- (for low speed) pull-up resistor, signaling device attach to the host. The recommended method of monitoring the +5V VBUS line is to connect it to one of the microcontroller's 5.5V tolerant I/O pins through a large value resistor (such as 100 kOhms). The resistor serves to improve the ESD ruggedness of the circuit as well as to prevent microcontroller damage if user firmware should ever unintentionally configure the I/O pin as an output. Peripherals which are purely bus powered obtain all of their power directly from the +5V VBUS line itself. For these types of devices, it is unnecessary to monitor when the VBUS is powered, as the peripheral will not be able to source current on the D+, D- or VBUS lines when the host is not powered.
- JP3 - This jumper is located in series with the +5V VBUS power supply line from the USB connector. When the jumper is removed, a current meter may be placed between the header pins to measure the board current which is being drawn from the USB port. Additionally, by removing the jumper cap altogether, JP3 provides a means of preventing the board from consuming USB power.
- S2 - Switch for application use. Tied to RB2.
- S4 - MCLR reset switch
- D1 - LED for application use. Tied to RE0.
- D2 - LED for application use. Tied to RE1.

### More Information

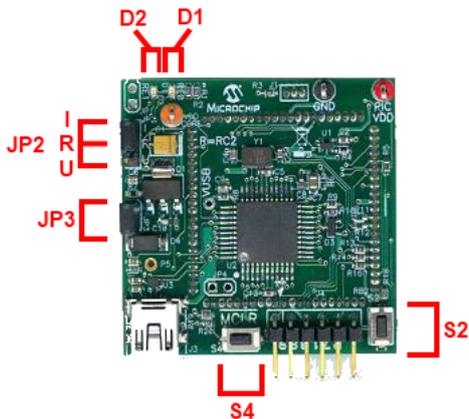
[Product webpage](#)

## 1.5.5 PIC18F47J53 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

The PIC18F47J50 PIM services as a development platform for the PIC18F47J50 family. It includes 2 LEDs and a push button. It can also optionally be connected to the PIC18 Explorer board for access to additional features, such as potentiometer, PICtail, temperature sensor, etc.

### Description

### Overview



- JP2 - This is a three-pin header with the labels, "I", "R" and "U". The "R" is an abbreviation referring to microcontroller pin, RC2. "I" is an abbreviation referring to the "ICE" female header pin for the RC2 signal. "U" is an abbreviation for the USB VBUS line. When the jumper is in the "R" to "I" position, the RC2 pin connects only to the ICE female header pin, just like most of the other general purpose I/O pins. When the jumper is in the "R" to "U" position, RC2 (which is 5.5V tolerant) can be used to sense when the USB cable has been attached to the host, and when the host is actively providing power to the +5V VBUS line. According to the USB 2.0 specifications, no device should ever pull the D+ or D- lines high (such as with the D+ or D- pull-up resistor) until the host actively powers the +5V VBUS line. This is intended to prevent self-powered peripherals from ever sourcing even small amounts of power to the host when the host is not powered. Small amounts of current could potentially prevent the host (and possibly other USB peripherals connected to that host) from fully becoming depowered, which may cause problems during power-up and initialization. Self-powered peripherals should periodically monitor the +5V VBUS line and detect when it is driven high. Only when it is powered should user firmware enable the USB module and turn on the D+ (for full speed) or D- (for low speed) pull-up resistor, signaling device attach to the host. The recommended method of monitoring the +5V VBUS line is to connect it to one of the microcontroller's 5.5V tolerant I/O pins through a large value resistor (such as 100 kOhms). The resistor serves to improve the ESD ruggedness of the circuit as well as to prevent microcontroller damage if user firmware should ever unintentionally configure the I/O pin as an output. Peripherals which are purely bus powered obtain all of their power directly from the +5V VBUS line itself. For these types of devices, it is unnecessary to monitor when the VBUS is powered, as the peripheral will not be able to source current on the D+, D- or VBUS lines when the host is not powered.
- JP3 - This jumper is located in series with the +5V VBUS power supply line from the USB connector. When the jumper is removed, a current meter may be placed between the header pins to measure the board current which is being drawn from the USB port. Additionally, by removing the jumper cap altogether, JP3 provides a means of preventing the board from consuming USB power.
- S2 - Switch for application use. Tied to RB2.
- S4 - MCLR reset switch
- D1 - LED for application use. Tied to RE0.
- D2 - LED for application use. Tied to RE1.

### More Information

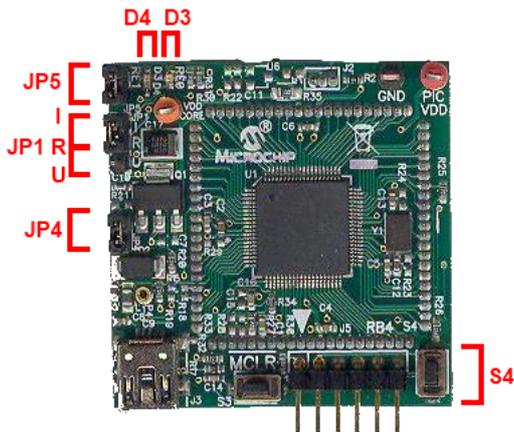
[Product website](#)

## 1.5.6 PIC18F87J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM) Demo Board

The PIC18F87J50 PIM services as a development platform for the PIC18F87J50 family. It includes 2 LEDs and a push button. It can also optionally be connected to the PIC18 Explorer board for access to additional features, such as potentiometer, PICtail, temperature sensor, etc.

### Description

#### Overview



- JP1 - This is a three-pin header with the labels, "I", "R" and "U". The "R" is an abbreviation referring to microcontroller pin, RB5. "I" is an abbreviation referring to the "ICE" female header pin for the RB5 signal. "U" is an abbreviation for the USB VBUS line. When the jumper is in the "R" to "I" position, the RB5 pin connects only to the ICE female header pin, just like most of the other general purpose I/O pins. When the jumper is in the "R" to "U" position, RB5 (which is 5.5V tolerant) can be used to sense when the USB cable has been attached to the host, and when the host is actively providing power to the +5V VBUS line. According to the USB 2.0 specifications, no device should ever pull the D+ or D- lines high (such as with the D+ or D- pull-up resistor) until the host actively powers the +5V VBUS line. This is intended to prevent self-powered peripherals from ever sourcing even small amounts of power to the host when the host is not powered. Small amounts of current could potentially prevent the host (and possibly other USB peripherals connected to that host) from fully becoming depowered, which may cause problems during power-up and initialization. Self-powered peripherals should periodically monitor the +5V VBUS line and detect when it is driven high. Only when it is powered should user firmware enable the USB module and turn on the D+ (for full speed) or D- (for low speed) pull-up resistor, signaling device attach to the host. The recommended method of monitoring the +5V VBUS line is to connect it to one of the microcontroller's 5.5V tolerant I/O pins through a large value resistor (such as 100 kOhms). The resistor serves to improve the ESD ruggedness of the circuit as well as to prevent microcontroller damage if user firmware should ever unintentionally configure the I/O pin as an output. Peripherals which are purely bus powered obtain all of their power directly from the +5V VBUS line itself. For these types of devices, it is unnecessary to monitor when the VBUS is powered, as the peripheral will not be able to source current on the D+, D- or VBUS lines when the host is not powered.
- JP4 - This jumper is located in series with the +5V VBUS power supply line from the USB connector. When the jumper is removed, a current meter may be placed between the header pins to measure the board current which is being drawn from the USB port. Additionally, by removing the jumper cap altogether, JP4 provides a means of preventing the board from consuming USB power.
- JP5 - This jumper provides a means of removing the LED pin loading on the RE0 and RE1 pins.
- S4 - Switch for application use. Tied to RB4.
- D3 - LED for application use. Tied to RE0.
- D4 - LED for application use. Tied to RE1.

### More Information

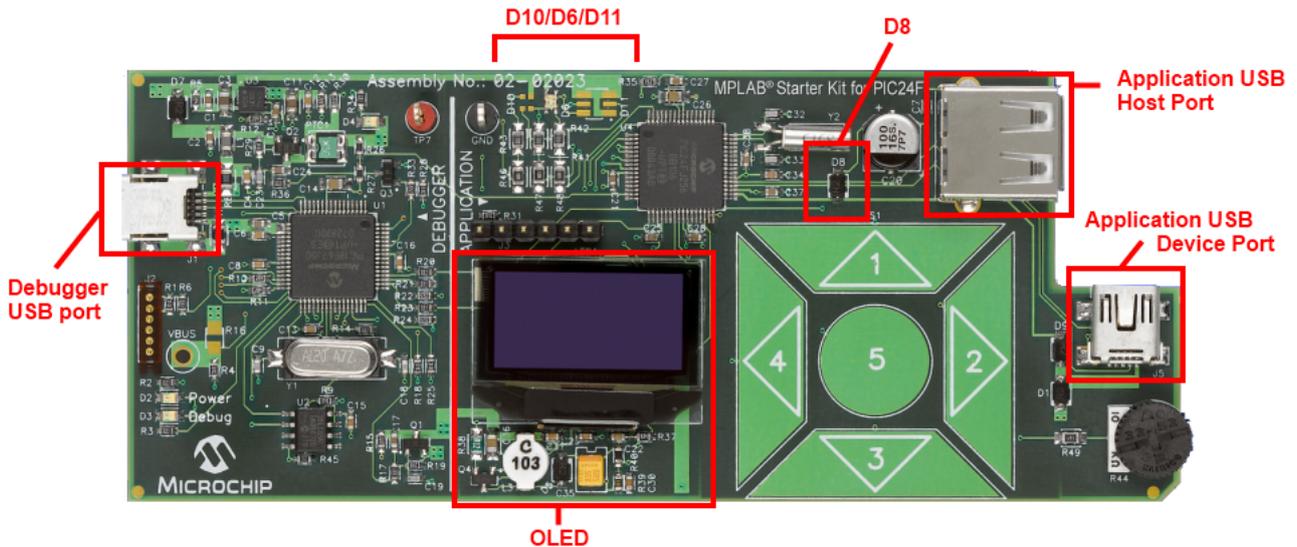
- [Product webpage](#)

## 1.5.7 PIC24F Starter Kit

The PIC24F Starter Kit is a feature rich board with lots of on board features for customers to work with. The board includes a RGB LED, a USB host port, a USB device port, an OLED, 5 capacitive touch buttons, a potentiometer, and an on board debugger.

### Description

### Overview



D8 - For dual role examples on the PIC24F starter kit, D8 needs to be removed. D8 allows the firmware to verify that the 5v has been delivered to the application USB host port. This, however, is also tied to the application USB device port. With the diode in place the controller can not determine if the 5v it sees is from the USB host port being powered or from the USB device port on an attachment to a USB host.

### More Information

[Product Website](#)

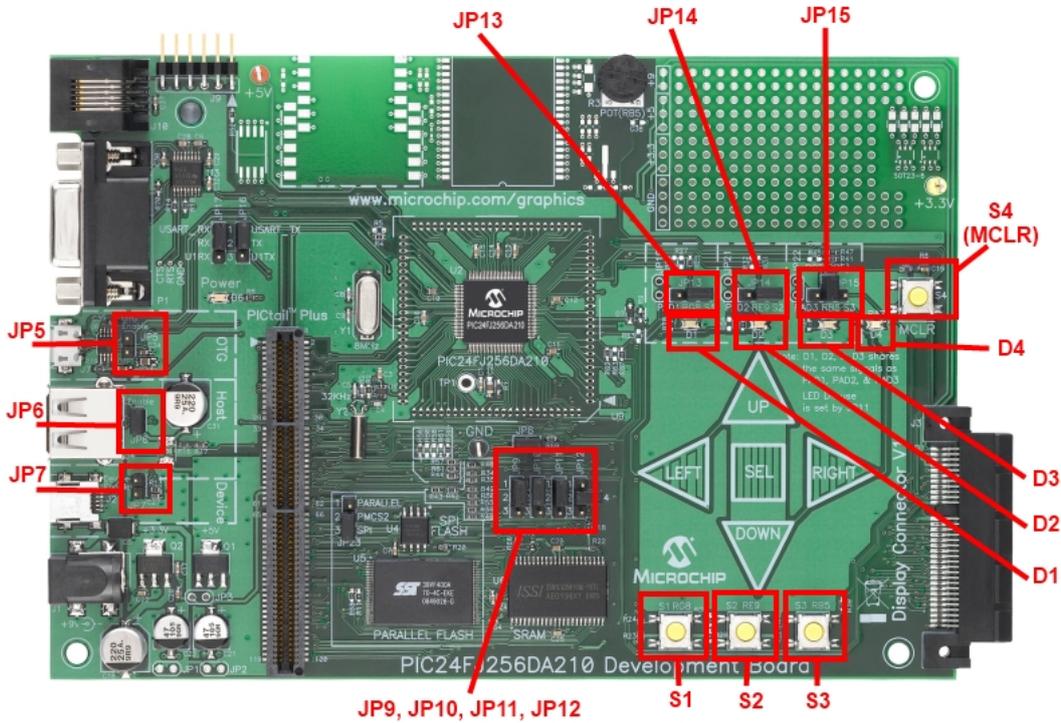
[Introduction Video](#)

## 1.5.8 PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board

The PIC24FJ256DA210 development board services the PIC24FJ256DA210 family devices. It has 4 LEDs, 3 push buttons, 5 capacitive touch buttons, a USB host port, a USB device port, a USB OTG port, an RS232 port, an the ability to drive an graphics display.

**Description**

**Overview**



- S1 - Application switch. Tied to RG8 when JP13 is shorted from S1 to RG8 settings.
- S2 - Application switch. Tied to RE9 when JP14 is shorted from S1 to RE9 settings.
- S3 - Application switch. Tied to RB5 when JP15 is shorted from S1 to RB5 settings.
- S4 - MCLR reset button. Resets the microcontroller on the board.
- D1 - Application LED. Connected to RG8 when JP13 is shorted from PAD1 to RG8.
- D2 - Application LED. Connected to RE9 when JP14 is shorted from PAD2 to RE9.
- D3 - Application LED. Connected to RB5 when JP15 is shorted from PAD3 to RB5.
- D4 - Application LED. Connected to RA7 when JP11 is shorted from 1 to 2.
- JP5 - Connect USB OTG port to VBUS.
- JP6 - Connect USB Host port to VBUS.
- JP7 - Connect USB Device port to VBUS.
- JP11 - Functionality selection for RA7.
- JP13 - Functionality selection for RG8.
- JP14 - Functionality selection for RE9.
- JP15 - Functionality selection for RB5.

**More Information**

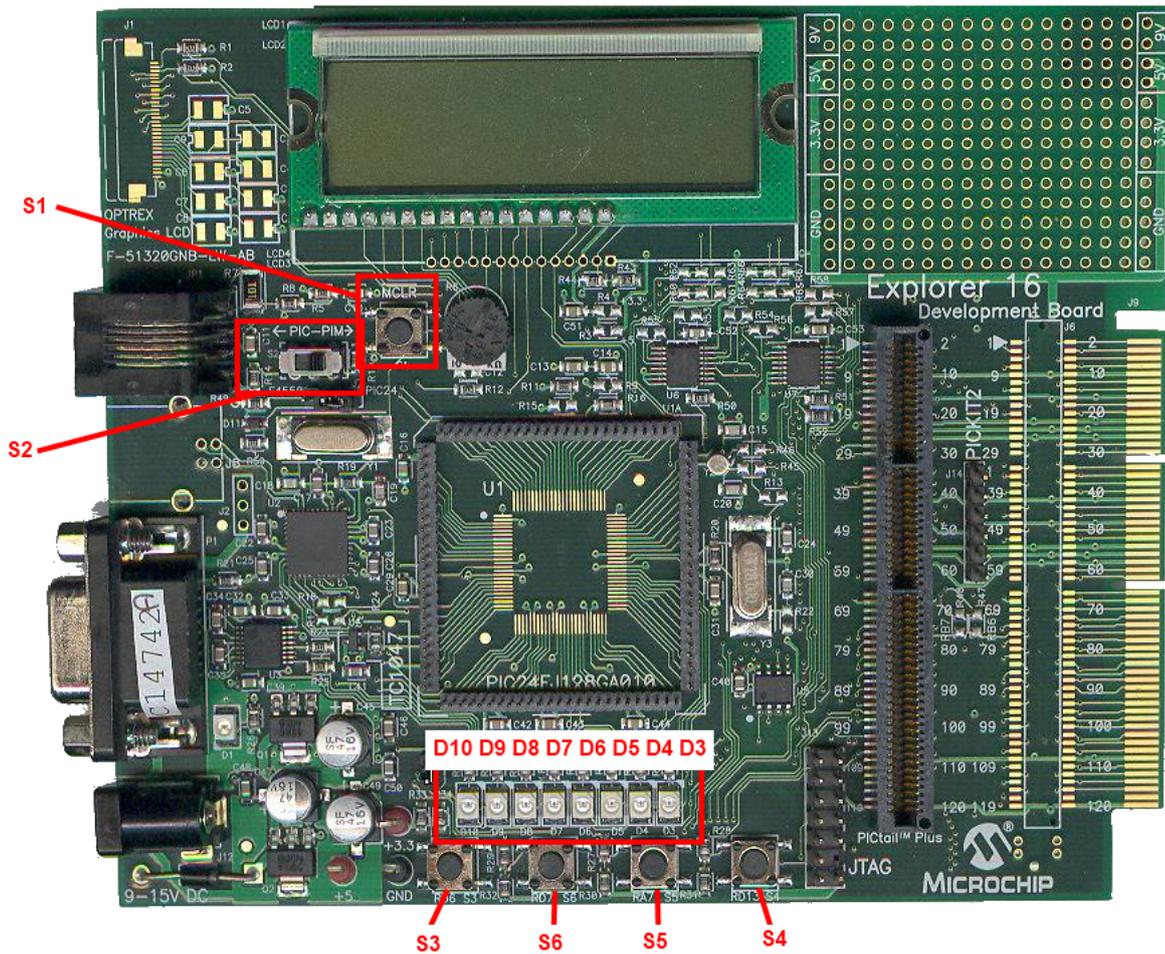
[Product Webpage](#)

## 1.5.9 Explorer 16

The Explorer 16 is the base development platform for the 16-bit processors. It has a processor header that allows various Processor Interface Modules (PIMs) to be attached allowing the user to utilize various processors on the board. The Explorer 16 includes an LCD screen, potentiometer, EEPROM, temperature sensor, 8 LEDs, 4 push buttons, RS232 port, and the PICtail+ expansion connectors/card-edge that allows for various add-on boards to be connected.

### Description

#### Overview:



S1 - Reset button (MCLR)

S2 - Processor switch. This switch determines which processor is running, the processor on the board or the processor on the Plug-In-Module (PIM).

S3, S4, S5, S6 - Application switches. For information about what pin is connected to this switch, please refer to the information for the PIM in use.

D3 through D10 - Application LEDs. For information about what pin is connected to this LED, please refer to the information for the PIM in use.

#### More Information:

[Product webpage](#)

### 1.5.9.1 PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

Processor module for the PIC24FJ256GB110 family for the Explorer 16.

#### Description

#### Overview

The PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM) is not a standalone board. It requires the use of the Explorer 16 ([DM240001](#)). For USB applications the USB PICTail plus daughter board ([AC164131](#)) is also required.

#### More Information

[Information sheet](#)

### 1.5.9.2 PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

Processor module for the PIC24FJ256GB210 family for the Explorer 16.

#### Description

#### Overview

The PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM) is not a standalone board. It requires the use of the Explorer 16 ([DM240001](#)). For USB applications the USB PICTail plus daughter board ([AC164131](#)) is also required.

For USB operation, jumpers JP1, JP2, and JP3 should be shorted from pins 1 to 2.

#### More Information

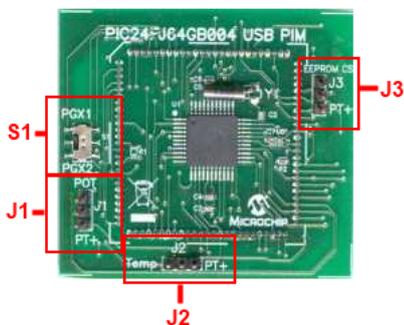
[Information sheet](#)

### 1.5.9.3 PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

Processor module for the PIC24FJ64GB004 family for the Explorer 16.

#### Description

#### Overview



S1 - Select which programming pins are going to be used on the microcontroller. The "PGX1" setting must be used for USB operation.

J1 - A/D setting for RC1 (center tap). Setting the jumper to "POT" connects the pin to the potentiometer on the Explorer 16. Setting the jumper to "PT+" connects the pin to the PICTail+ connector on the Explorer 16.

J2 - A/D setting for RC0 (center tap). Setting the jumper to "Temp" connects the pin to the temperature sensor on the Explorer 16. Setting the jumper to "PT+" connects the pin to the PICTail+ connector on the Explorer 16.

J3 - I/O selection for RA8 (center tap). Setting the jumper to "EEPROM CS" connects the pin to the chip select line of the EEPROM on the Explorer 16. Setting the jumper to "PT+" connects the pin to the PICTail+ connector on the Explorer 16.

#### More Information

[Plug-In-Module \(PIM\) Information Sheet](#)

### 1.5.9.4 PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

Processor module for the PIC24EP512GU810 family for the Explorer 16.

#### Description

##### More Information

[Information Sheet](#)

### 1.5.9.5 dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)

Processor module for the dsPIC33EP512MU810 family for the Explorer 16.

#### Description

##### More Information

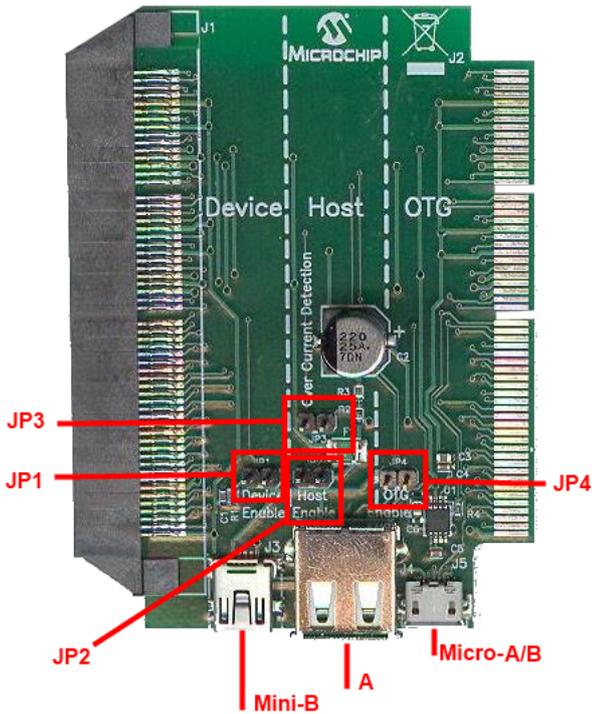
[Information Sheet](#)

### 1.5.9.6 USB PICTail Plus Daughter Board

The USB PICTail+ board is a add-on side card for the Explorer 16 that adds a USB device, USB host, and USB OTG port to the Explorer 16 capability.

#### Description

##### Overview



JP1 - Connects the VBUS pin of the mini-B connector to the VBUS pin of the microcontroller.

JP2 - Connects the VBUS pin of the A connector (and associated circuitry) to the VBUS pin of the microcontroller.

JP3 - Connects the VBUS voltage detection resistor divider circuit to the microcontroller (pin varies depending on the processor module).

JP4 - Connects the VBUS pin of the micro-A/B connector (and associated circuitry) to the VBUS pin of the microcontroller.

This board has 3 USB connectors on it.

- The mini-B connector is for USB device operation. For use in this mode JP1 should be shorted and JP2, JP3, and JP4 should be open.
- The A connector is for USB host support. JP2 should be short for this mode. JP3 can be shorted to enable VBUS voltage sensing. Some demos may require this feature. JP1 and JP4 should be open.
- The micro-A/B connector is for USB OTG operation. JP4 should be short and JP1, JP2, and JP3 should be open.

**More Information**

[Product website](#)

[Ordering information](#)

---

## 1.6 Demos

A description of how to what each demo is and how to run it.

### Description

---

## 1.6.1 Device - Audio Microphone Basic Demo

This demo shows how to implement a simple USB microphone.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/audio_microphone/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

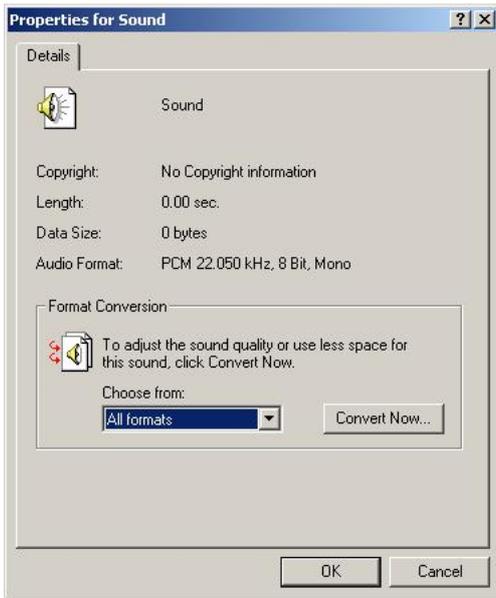
This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a USB Microphone Device. The demo emulates a PCM, 16 bits/Sample, 8000 Samples/ second, mono Microphone. Connect the device to the computer. Open a sound recording software package. Each sound recording software interface is different so the following instructions may not apply the to software package you are using. Please refer to the user's manual for the software package you are using for more details of how to configure that tool for Sound recording.

#### Using Sound Recorder [Windows Computers]

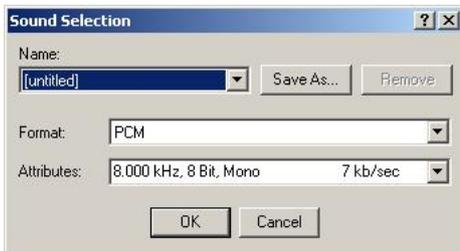
Open Sound Recorder from Start->Programs->Accessories->Entertainment->Sound Recorder. Click on File-> Properties.



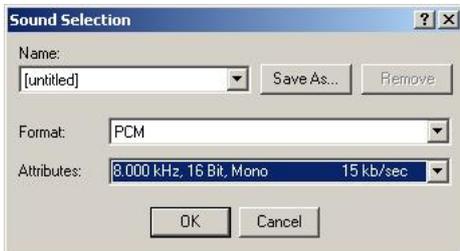
Now the 'Properties for Sound' Window gets opened as shown below. Click on 'Convert Now' button.



This opens up the 'Sound Selection' window as shown below.



Change the 'Attributes' to "8.00kHz, 16 Bit, Mono 15kb/sec" in the 'Sound Selection' Window.



Click on OK button on the 'Sound Selection' Window. Click OK button on the 'Properties for Sound' Window.

Click on the Record Button on the Sound Recorder.



At this point you can press the pushbutton on the demo board and it will record a voice that is stored in the USB device. Once you finish with the recording click on the 'Play' button to play the recorded voice which can be heard through your computer Speaker.

---

## 1.6.2 Device - Audio MIDI Demo

This demo shows how to implement a simple bi-directional USB MIDI device.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/audio_midi/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a USB MIDI device. Connect the device to the computer. Open a MIDI recording software package. Each MIDI recording software interface is different so the following instructions may not apply to the software package you are using. Please refer to the user's manual for the software package you are using for more details of how to configure that tool for a USB MIDI input.

In this demo each time you press the button on the board, it will cycle through a series of notes.

### 1.6.2.1 Garage Band '08 [Macintosh Computers]

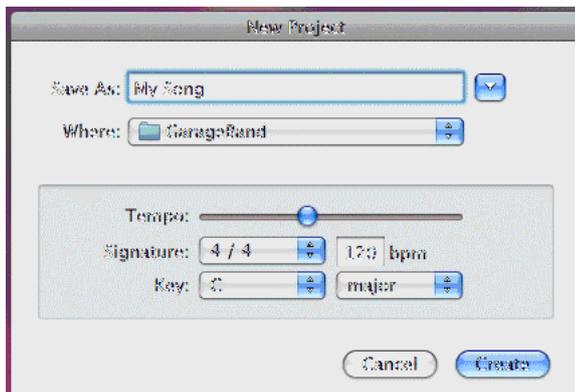
This section shows how to run the MIDI demo using GarageBand '08.

#### Description

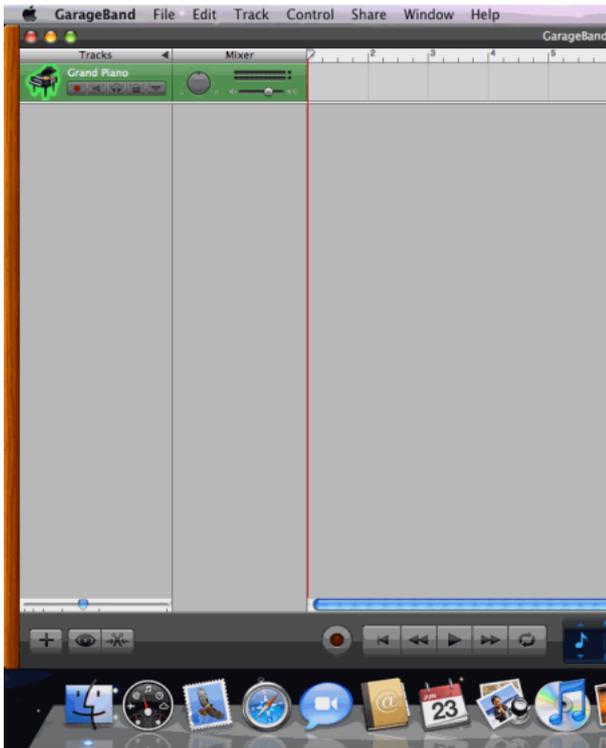
Open Garage Band. If you haven't opened Garage Band before you will see an opening window. Select "Create New Music Project"



The next window will prompt you for information about the song. Change any of the information is desired. Click "Create" when done.



The Garage Band main window will open. In this window there should be a single default track if the USB device is already attached. At this point you can press the pushbutton on the demo board and it will cycle through a series of notes and play these notes through the computer speakers.

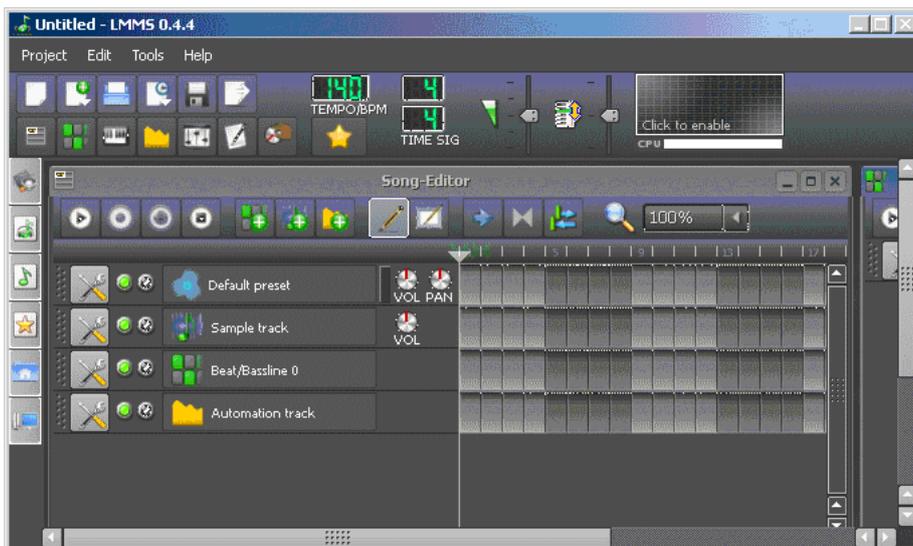


### 1.6.2.2 Using Linux MultiMedia Studio (LMMS) [Linux and Windows Computers]

This section shows how to run the MIDI demo using Linux MultiMedia Studio (LMMS).

#### Description

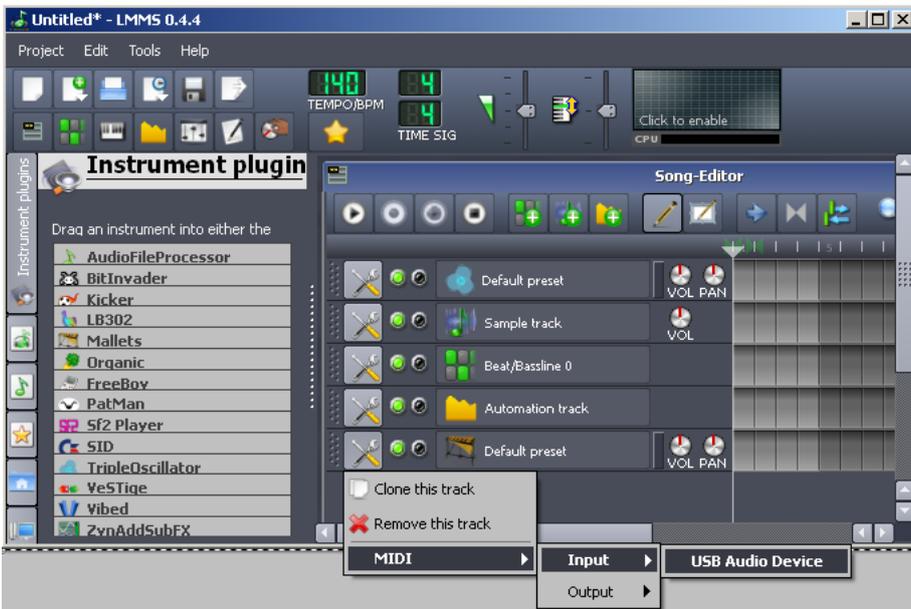
In this example we will be using Linux MultiMedia Studio (LMMS) available at <http://sourceforge.net/projects/lmms/>. Install LMMS. Attach the demo board to the computer. Make sure to attach the USB Audio MIDI example board to the computer before opening LMMS as LMMS polls for USB MIDI devices upon opening but may not find the devices attached after the program is opened.



Click on the instrument plug-in button and click and drag the desired instrument plug in to the song editor window.



Once the new instrument is available in the song editor window, “click on the actions” for this track button. Select the “MIDI > Input > USB Audio Device” option.



If you open this option again you should see a green check mark indicating that the device is selected as the input.



At this point you can press the pushbutton on the demo board and it will cycle through a series of notes and play these notes through the computer speakers.

## 1.6.3 Device - Boot Loader - HID

An example boot loader using the HID device class.

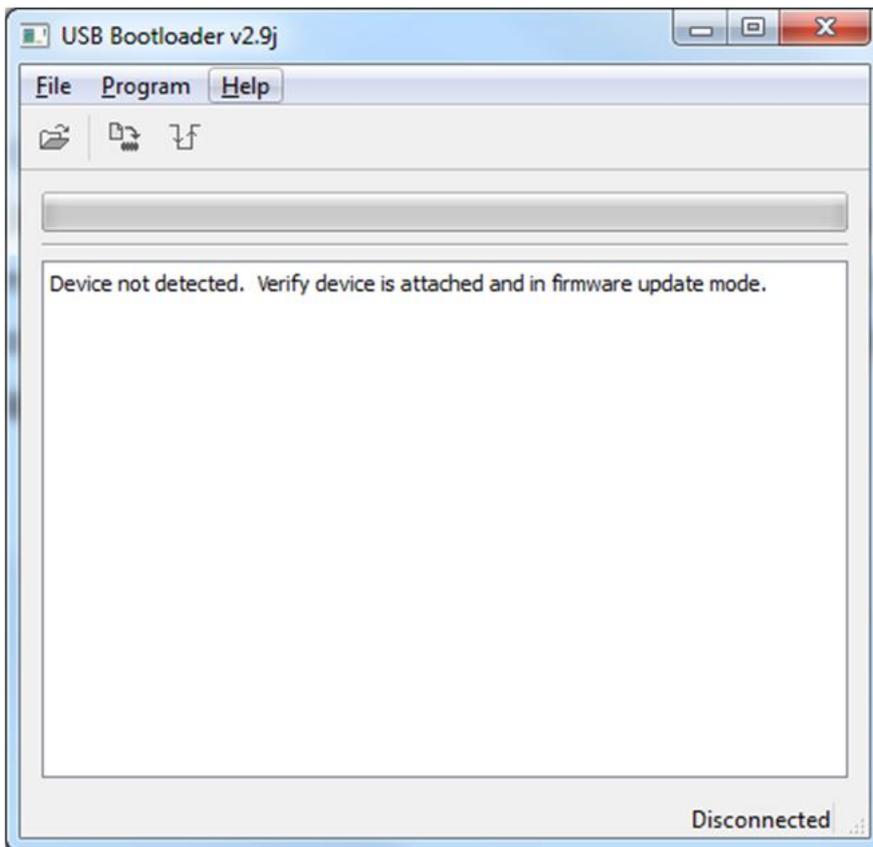
### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Operation

Included with the MCHPFSUSB HID Bootloader firmware is a simple PC-side host application. This application implements a basic set of commands, allowing a user to invoke the bootloader on an appropriately-programmed PIC microcontroller and program new application code. The bootloader host application interface looks as shown in figure below:



Using the application is straightforward. After launching the host application, connect the hardware containing a PIC microcontroller with the bootloader already programmed to the host PC with a USB cable. The host responds by enumerating the hardware as a HID class device; the host application responds with the message 'Device Attached' and enabling several options.

NOTE: The host application, like the rest of the HID bootloader, is an example application; it should be thought of as a framework for development. Users may want to consider modifying the interface or its functions to suit their own purpose.

The host application supports the following functions:

- Import Firmware Image: selects a HEX image file on the PC to be loaded onto the microcontroller, using the standard Windows File Open dialog. The file is stored in the host's internal buffer.

- Erase/Program/Verify Device: This is a 3-step operation.
  - 1) It first erases the Flash program memory on the target microcontroller. If “Allow Configuration Word Programming” is selected, the configuration bits or flash configuration words (depending on the device) will also be erased.
  - 2) It then programs the target microcontroller with the recently selected HEX file.
  - 3) Finally it compares the program image on the target to a HEX file image stored in the host’s buffer to complete verify operation.
- Reset Device: issues a RESET instruction to the target microcontroller. This is typically done following successful erase/program/verify operation, so that the application can begin executing the newly reprogrammed firmware image.

The “Program” file menu option has a “Settings...” which contains checkboxes allowing the user to select what type of program memory regions should be programmed on the erase/program/verify operation. This allows for deselecting EEPROM from being programmed for example. This also allows for enabling/disabling reprogramming of the configuration bits (and therefore last page of flash memory on PIC18FxxJxx devices).

NOTE: The SD Card PICtail™ Daughter Board (Microchip Direct: AC164122) uses the RB4 I/O pin for the card detect (CD) signal when used with the PIC18F87J50 FS USB Demo Board (PIM), and is actively driven by the PICtail. The active drive overpowers the pull up resistor on the RB4 pushbutton (on the PIC18F87J50 FS USB Demo Board). As a result, if the PIC18F87J50 is programmed with the HID bootloader, and an SD Card is installed in the socket when the microcontroller comes out of reset, the firmware will immediately enter the bootloader (irrespective of the RB4 pushbutton state). To exit the bootloader firmware, remove the SD Card from the SD Card socket, and tap the MCLR button. When the SD Card is not plugged in, the PICtail will drive the card detect signal (which is connected to RB4) logic high, which will enable the bootloader to exit to the main application after coming out of reset. Once the main application firmware is operating, the SD Card can be plugged in. The SD Card is “hot-swappable” and should be recognized by the host upon insertion. To avoid this inconvenience when using the bootloader with the PICtail, it is suggested to modify the bootloader firmware to use some other I/O pin for bootloader entry, such as RB0 (which has a pushbutton on it on the HPC Explorer board).

## 1.6.3.1 Customizing for an Application

This section covers various topics that should be considered when implementing a boot loader. It also discusses possible changes in behavior from the default behavior that a user might want to implement in their boot loading solution.

### Description

### 1.6.3.1.1 Importance of Change the VID/PID

Discusses why it is critical to change the VID/PID in the example code to one unique to the product being developed.

### Description

The USB Vendor ID (VID) and Product ID (PID) are special numbers (16-bits each) that all USB devices implement. These numbers are especially important for bootloader operation, since they are the primary identifying numbers that a PC application (such as the HID bootloader host/PC GUI program) needs in order to “find” and connect up to the correct USB device on the bus (a USB root port can have up to ~127 USB devices attached to it, and some means must be used to “find” specific products).

When implementing a USB device with a bootloader, it is especially important to change the VID/PID value from the original/default value as distributed in the example firmware/PC application, to new values that are unique for your application product line. This is important, to ensure that no unintended host/PC application software can ever unintentionally connect up to your USB device, and reprogram it with an incorrect/incompatible USB firmware image, designed for some other manufacturer’s product.

The VID/PID values can be modified in the bootloader firmware project by editing the USB device descriptor in the `usb_descriptors.c` file. Once the value has been modified, the host/PC GUI bootloader program that performs the firmware

updating must also be modified, so as to search for and connect up to the proper USB device with the new VID/PID. In the “\usb\device\bootloaders\utilities\qt5\_src\Bootloader” host/PC GUI source code, the VID/PID values can be changed by editing the #define VID and #define PID constants (which currently resides in the Comm.h file).

### 1.6.3.1.2 Safe Boot Loading Considerations

This section discusses some items to consider to avoid common pitfalls when implementing a boot loading solution.

#### Description

When an application implements self reprogramming capability, it is strongly recommended to also simultaneously implement provisions to ensure the microcontroller does not execute at voltages that are too low for the configured frequency (ex: don't violate the voltage versus frequency graph in the datasheet). Overclocking the microcontroller (ex: by running a full frequency, but at a voltage below the required minimum from the device datasheet) can result in possible instruction op-code mis-fetch or mis-execution. This can result in unexpected code flows, allowing normally unreachable code to get reached. This can potentially result in unintended activation of bootloader/flash memory self programming code, possibly causing the erasure or corruption of important program memory. This potential problem is best avoided by implementing provisions in both the bootloader firmware and the application firmware project, to either outright prevent all code execution during the low/inadequate voltage condition (ex: by enabling and using BOR, and/or putting the microcontroller to sleep mode), or by clock switching to a low enough frequency at runtime, so as to always meet the datasheet voltage versus frequency requirements.

Additionally, special consideration is needed if enabling the watchdog timer (WDT) feature of the microcontroller. The WDT can be used in applications with a bootloader, but the timeout period must always be configured to be longer than the worst case flash page erase and block programming duration. Failure to do so may result in unexpected timeout/reset occurring during the erase/program sequence, leading to unintended NVM contents.

### 1.6.3.1.3 Configuration Bits

Configuration bits and their impact on boot loading applications.

#### Description

Make certain that all configuration bit settings between the bootloader firmware project, and the application firmware project, match 100% exactly. If they do not match, modify one or both projects until they do. The microcontroller hardware only implements one set of configuration bits, and therefore, the configuration bit settings are always shared between the bootloader firmware and application firmware projects.

Attempting to declare two sets of configuration bits (that are not 100% exactly the same) can prevent the application and bootloader firmware image .hex files from being successfully merged when using the loadable project feature in MPLAB X (see the Merging Bootloader and Application Project Output section).

By default, the HID bootloader does not reprogram the microcontroller config bits during an erase/program/verify sequence. Reprogramming the configuration bits is generally not recommended, since doing so is generally considered much more “dangerous” to the application, than reprogramming the normal application firmware code. When reprogramming the configuration bits, it is very easy to leave the application in a permanently broken (“bricked”) condition, if any of the new configuration bit settings are not 100% compatible with the hardware of the application. Certain config bit settings, such as the oscillator, BOR, extended instruction set, WDT, etc., are especially hazardous, since changing them can easily leave both the bootloader firmware and application firmware images in a non-operable (or non-USB operable) state, thereby preventing further re-programming operations.

However, if absolutely necessary, the HID bootloader firmware and PC GUI applications do support reprogramming of the configuration bits. Doing so requires a special PC GUI/bootloader firmware “unlock” sequence to be executed. This occurs when the host/PC GUI program sends the “UNLOCK\_CONFIG” bootloader command to the firmware. For applications that will support config bit reprogramming, it is recommended to hide the option from the PC GUI program, so that it is not accessible to end consumers, except in special circumstances when truly necessary.

For some USB microcontrollers (namely PIC18FxxJxx USB microcontrollers), the configuration bits are stored in normal program flash memory, at the end of the application firmware program space. On these microcontrollers, the configuration

bits are therefore stored on the same flash memory erase page as other (non-critical) program memory space that could theoretically be used by the application program. On these devices, it is generally recommended to modify the linker settings for the application program image, so that the application project is built so that it does not use any of the program memory that is shared with the flash memory erase page containing the configuration bits (ex: the last implemented flash memory page). This ensures that the application firmware image can be fully re-programmed, without requiring the configuration bit reprogramming mode to be enabled (by the UNLOCK\_CONFIG) command.

NOTE: The HID bootloader PC application and firmware will not reprogram the last page of flash memory on these PIC18FxxJxx devices (which is shared with the config bits), unless the user configures the bootloader PC GUI program to perform config bit reprogramming operations, with the UNLOCK\_CONFIG command. This restriction only applies to the specific microcontrollers that implement the configuration bits in the program flash memory space.

### 1.6.3.1.4 Application Version Information

This section describes how to use the application version feature of the boot loader example.

#### Description

The application firmware version word resides in the application space, but it is used by the bootloader to read out the application firmware version number. This makes it potentially possible to make a PC GUI that can check the currently programmed application firmware image version and determine if the user is trying to program an older .hex file than what was already programmed into the device. If a custom PC GUI application is used to perform the firmware updates, the GUI application software can then use this information to warn the user about programming an older image than the existing image, block the user from performing the operation, etc.

The Application Firmware Version Word can be read by the bootloader host/PC GUI software using the Extended Query Command Response, described below.

In order to fully implement and use the application firmware version word feature, the application firmware image must place a constant in the flash memory, at the magic version word address. For PIC18 targets, this would typically be done with code in the application firmware project, such as:

#### Version Word with XC8

```
const unsigned int VersionWord @ 0x1016 = 0x0100;    //Initialize to the appropriate
version value
```

#### Version Word with C18

```
#pragma code VersionWordSection=0x1016
rom unsigned int VersionWord = 0x0100;    //Initialize to the appropriate version value
#pragma code
```

### 1.6.3.1.5 Host Application Responsibilities

Discusses some of the responsibilities of the host application. These tasks must be performed in order to insure proper boot loading operation.

#### Description

In order to minimize the bootloader firmware program memory size and complexity, the bootloader is architected to perform the most complex tasks in the host host/PC GUI software. Things such as .hex file parsing, and issuing commands, are therefore the responsibility of the host/PC software. Additionally, the firmware is currently written in such a way as to impose the following restrictions on the host/PC GUI software:

1. When the PROGRAM\_DEVICE command is used, the total program data payload sent prior to the next PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command is sent, must be an exact integer number of program instructions. In other words for PIC16 and PIC18 devices, the total program memory programmed must be an even number (since program instructions are 2 bytes wide on these architectures). Sending an odd number of total data payload bytes is not supported, and therefore should be padded with 0xFF (the blank/default value of the flash memory after an erase operation) if necessary to achieve a total PROGRAM\_DEVICE payload quantity (spanning multiple packets) that is even.
2. When multiple PROGRAM\_DEVICE packets are sent to the device, the addresses sent must always be contiguous (ex: second packet address must be equal to first packet's address + the payload size), growing from lowest address to

highest address. Non-contiguous address jumping is only allowed, if the host/PC program sends the PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command in between the non-continuous address regions.

- After sending one or more PROGRAM\_DEVICE packets, the host/PC software must send the PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command once the end of the region is reached (of if it wants to abort operation of the entire region). The microcontroller firmware is allowed to buffer up received bytes intended for programming, without necessarily committing all of them to the non-volatile memory, until the PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command is issued by the host/PC software.

## 1.6.3.2 Implementation Details

This section discusses the lower level details of the boot loader and how it was implemented.

### Description

### 1.6.3.2.1 Command Set

Details the commands implemented in the HID boot loader example.

#### Description

The host application GUI program communicates with the USB HID bootloader firmware using a set of 9 commands. The host application is the “master” of the bootloading operation, and is responsible for issuing commands to the bootloader firmware that is responsible for fulfilling the requests.

All commands that the host application sends to the microcontroller firmware are fixed 64-byte USB packets that are sent over the HID interrupt OUT endpoint to the device. Some commands that the host software sends to the microcontroller firmware require that the firmware responds with a fixed 64-byte response packet on the HID interrupt IN endpoint, while other commands require no response.

The first byte of the packet is always the command for the current packet. The remaining 63 bytes are command-specific information, where required. The commands are listed and summarized below.

Command Byte (Hex)	Command	Device Response Packet Expected
02	QUERY_DEVICE	Yes
03	UNLOCK_CONFIG	No
04	ERASE_DEVICE	No
05	PROGRAM_DEVICE	No
06	PROGRAM_COMPLETE	No
07	GET_DATA	Yes
08	RESET_DEVICE	No
09	SIGN_FLASH	No
0C	QUERY_EXTENDED_INFO	Yes

#### 1.6.3.2.1.1 QUERY\_DEVICE

The QUERY\_DEVICE command (0x02) is a request from the host to determine the valid memory ranges that are allowed to be programmed, among other things about the microcontroller.

#### Description

The QUERY\_DEVICE command (0x02) is a request from the host to determine the valid memory ranges that are allowed to be programmed, among other things about the microcontroller. This information can be obtained by the PC GUI application by sending the QUERY\_DEVICE command, and then reading back the response packet which will describe the device's programmable regions (ex: application firmware, EEPROM, and User ID programmable region addresses/size). The

command when sent to the device firmware has no data payload.

**Table: QUERY\_DEVICE command format (when sent from the host to the device).**

Packet Byte	Content
0	QUERY_DEVICE (0x02)
1-63	(padding – init to 0x00)

After the QUERY\_DEVICE command packet has been sent to the device firmware, the device responds with an USB IN (that is, IN to the host) packet, with the format:

**Table: QUERY\_DEVICE response format (sent from USB device firmware to host PC GUI application)**

Packet Byte	Content
0	QUERY_DEVICE (0x02)
1	bytesPerPacket
2	deviceFamily
3	Type1
4-7	Address1
8-11	Size1
12	Type2
13-16	Address2
17-20	Size2
...	...
48	Type6
49-52	Address6
53-56	Size6
57	versionFlag
58-63	(padding)

The bytesPerPacket indicates how many data bytes are sent in the write or read command data payload section.

The deviceFamily parameter indicates which device family (ex: PIC18, PIC24, PIC32, etc.) that is the current target. Type1, Type2 etc. indicate the type of memory (ex: flash, EEPROM, User ID, config bits) that is targeted by this memory range description.

Address1, Address2 etc. is the 32-bit starting address of the data range (in little endian format). Size1, Size2 etc. is the size of memory range in bytes (in 32-bit unsigned integer, little endian format).

The versionFlag is an indicator that is used to tell the PC GUI program that the version is v1.01 or later, and that it supports the QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command (v1.00 based bootloader firmware did not implement this particular command).

For each memory range a new range description is added. A total of 6 memory ranges will fit into the 64-byte packet. After the entry of the last valid data field, the Type parameter for the next entry should be 0xFF (End of List).

The padding bytes should be treated as reserved and should be initialized to 0x00.

**Table: Parameters for QUERY\_DEVICE response deviceFamily field**

Value	Family
0x01	PIC18
0x02	PIC24F
0x03	PIC32

0x04	PIC16
------	-------

**Table: Parameters for QUERY\_DEVICE response type field**

Value	Family
0x01	Program Memory
0x02	Data EEPROM
0x03	Config Words
0x04	User ID
0xFF	End of list

### 1.6.3.2.1.2 UNLOCK\_CONFIG

The UNLOCK\_CONFIG (0x03) command is used to unlock protected sections of the program memory.

#### Description

The UNLOCK\_CONFIG (0x03) command is used to unlock protected sections of the program memory (ex: configuration bit reprogramming, and on PIC18FxxJxx devices, reprogramming of the last page of program flash memory). The Lock/Unlock field allows the bootloader to either lock or unlock the configuration and other sensitive regions. A value of 0x00 unlocks the configuration range, and a value of 0x01 locks it.

This command will cause the QUERY\_DEVICE results of the device to change. To re-discover the valid memory ranges, issue a second QUERY\_DEVICE command.

This command does not directly have an associated response (although the host application is responsible for sending another QUERY\_DEVICE request, which will have a response).

**Table: UNLOCK\_CONFIG command format**

Packet Byte	Content
0	UNLOCK_CONFIG (0x03)
1	Lock (0x01) / Unlock (0x00)
2-63	(padding – init to 0x00)

### 1.6.3.2.1.3 ERASE\_DEVICE

The ERASE\_DEVICE (0x04) command erases all of the reprogrammable memory regions indicated by the response to the QUERY\_DEVICE command.

#### Description

The ERASE\_DEVICE (0x04) command erases all of the reprogrammable memory regions indicated by the response to the QUERY\_DEVICE command. If it is necessary to erase the protected memory regions, issue the UNLOCK\_CONFIG command before the ERASE\_DEVICE command.

The command does not have any data payload or associated response. Typically, the host application would issue a QUERY\_DEVICE following the ERASE\_DEVICE command, as a means to “poll” for when the erasing process inside the microcontroller has completed (since the firmware doesn’t respond to the QUERY\_DEVICE command until the internal erase operation completes).

**Table: ERASE\_DEVICE command format**

Packet Byte	Content
0	ERASE_DEVICE (0x04)
1-63	(padding)

### 1.6.3.2.1.4 PROGRAM\_DEVICE

The PROGRAM\_DEVICE (0x05) command sends the data that is going to be written to the device.

#### Description

The PROGRAM\_DEVICE (0x05) command sends the data that is going to be written to the device. Since this command has a maximum data payload of 58 bytes, it is necessary to issue multiple commands to program a single area of memory.

The data payload section of the packet is packed from the end, with the padding following the Size field. Ex: If the host sends 4 bytes of data to be programmed, the resulting packet would have 54 bytes of padding followed by four bytes data.

This command does not have any associated response.

**Table: PROGRAM\_DEVICE command format**

Packet Byte	Content
0	PROGRAM_DEVICE (0x05)
1-4	32-bit address to program (little endian)
5	Size (1-58 bytes)
6-(n)	Padding (0-57 bytes)
(n+1)	Data Payload

### 1.6.3.2.1.5 PROGRAM\_COMPLETE

The PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command (0x06) is used to indicate to the device that the host program is finished sending contiguous address PROGRAM\_DEVICE commands.

#### Description

The PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command (0x06) is used to indicate to the device that the host program is finished sending contiguous address PROGRAM\_DEVICE commands. This is required in case the device has any remaining bytes buffered that it needs to commit to NVM, before a new memory address range can begin to be address/programmed. Always issue this command after the last PROGRAM\_DEVICE command is sent for any given memory region, or if the PROGRAM\_DEVICE address will contain a non-contiguous jump (ex: because the .hex file contains a blank region in between implemented code sections, as one example).

The command does not have any data payload or associated response.

**Table: PROGRAM\_COMPLETE command format**

Packet Byte	Content
0	PROGRAM_COMPLETE(0x06)
1-63	(padding)

### 1.6.3.2.1.6 GET\_DATA

The GET\_DATA (0x07) command reads the requested data from the device.

#### Description

The GET\_DATA (0x07) command reads the requested data from the device. This command is normally used to allow the host/PC GUI software to perform programming verification operations, by reading back a program region that has just recently been reprogrammed (and check it against the original input .hex file contents for that location). The Size field is the number of bytes to be read from the device.

**Table: GET\_DATA command format (sent from host to device)**

Packet Byte	Content
0	GET_DATA(0x07)
1-4	Address
5	Size (1-58 bytes)
6-63	(padding)

The response to the GET\_DATA command is almost identical to the PROGRAM\_DEVICE command format. The address and size fields of the response packet must match the command packet requesting the data.

**Table: GET\_DATA response format (sent from device to the host)**

Packet byte	Content
0	GET_DATA(0x05)
1-4	Address
5	Size (1-58 bytes)
6-(n)	Padding (0-57 bytes)
(n+1)	Data Payload

### 1.6.3.2.1.7 RESET\_DEVICE

The RESET\_DEVICE (0x08) command reads the requested data from the device.

#### Description

The RESET\_DEVICE command (0x08) causes the device to issue a software reset. The command does not have any data payload or associated response. This command is typically used to effectively switch from firmware update mode back into application run mode.

**Table: RESET\_DEVICE command format (sent from host to device)**

Packet Byte	Content
0	RESET_DEVICE(0x08)
1-63	(padding)

### 1.6.3.2.1.8 SIGN\_FLASH

The SIGN\_FLASH command (0x09) causes a special flash signature word to be programmed at a fixed address in the flash memory.

#### Description

The SIGN\_FLASH command (0x09) causes a special flash signature word to be programmed at a fixed address in the flash memory. The command does not have any data payload.

Table: SIGN\_FLASH command format (sent from host to device)

Packet Byte	Content
0	SIGN_FLASH(0x09)
1-63	(padding)

This command should only be issued once, after a fully completed (and successful) erase/program/verify operation on all memory regions intended to be reprogrammed. The command should be followed by a QUERY\_DEVICE command so as to 'poll' for the completion of SIGN\_FLASH command request.

### 1.6.3.2.1.9 QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO

The QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command (0x0C) is used by the host PC application to get additional info about the device, beyond the basic NVM layout provided by the QUERY\_DEVICE command.

#### Description

The QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command (0x0C) is used by the host PC application to get additional info about the device, beyond the basic NVM layout provided by the QUERY\_DEVICE command.

**Table: QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command format**

Packet Byte	Content
0	QUERY_EXTENDED_INFO
1-63	(padding)

The response packet to the QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command is microcontroller architecture specific (ex: different format for PIC18 versus PIC24 targets). See the the processor specific sections for the responses for each specific system.

### 1.6.3.2.2 Boot Loader Entry

This section discusses the methods of boot loader entry that are implemented in the example projects.

#### Description

When an application implements self reprogramming capability with a bootloader, some method needs to be implemented so as to be able to enter into the bootloader “firmware update mode” (as opposed to the standard application run mode, where self reprogramming is normally not performed).

There are lots of ways to end up in boot loader mode. The examples provided implement two possible methods for entry into boot loader mode:

1. An I/O pin check at power-up/after any reset (ex: a user pressing a pushbutton attached to a general purpose input pin).
2. Software entry from the application run mode, into the bootloader firmware update mode, via an absolute jump to address 0x001C. This can be accomplished by receiving some application specific stimulus (ex: a custom command from a PC GUI program intended to be used in conjunction with the USB application), and then in the firmware, executing an appropriate goto instruction.

#### 1.6.3.2.2.1 Input Button/Hardware Entry

Discusses hardware entry into boot loader mode.

#### Description

The HID bootloader firmware occupies the hardware reset vector of the microcontroller (ex: the reset vector is 0x0000, which is part of the HID bootloader program memory space). During boot up of the microcontroller, firmware execution will therefore begin from within the bootloader firmware project.

Early in the boot up sequence, the HID bootloader firmware can optionally perform a general purpose I/O pin check, which would typically be connected to an external push button and pull up (or pull down) resistor. If the I/O pin is in the “active” state (ex: user is actively pressing a button), as defined by the application, the HID bootloader firmware can decide to stay in the “firmware update mode” and can therefore hold off normal execution of the application run mode image. If however the I/O pin is in the inactive state (ex: button not pressed), then the boot up routine would normally decide to execute in application run mode, and would perform a jump to the remapped application image reset vector (see Memory Map Overview section).

The I/O pin check method is the most rugged method of entering the firmware update mode, since it does not require the application firmware image to be intact (at all) to get into the bootloader mode. However, software entry is also possible and may be more convenient in applications that do not have user exposed pushbutton(s) available.

The I/O pin check entry method into the firmware update mode is optional, and can be disabled if entry into the bootloader will only be performed by using the software entry method.

### 1.6.3.2.2.2 Software/Application Entry

Discusses software entry (entry from application) into boot loader mode.

#### Description

Optionally, the HID bootloader firmware may be configured to allow entry into the bootloader firmware update mode via software entry at application runtime. This would typically be performed by:

1. Allowing the microcontroller to boot up into normal application run mode (as opposed to firmware update mode).
2. While in application run mode, some application specific event occurs, whereby the application decides it wants to switch into firmware update mode.
3. The firmware executes an absolute "goto" instruction to jump to the software entry point into the HID bootloader (0x001C for PIC16 and PIC18 based projects).
4. The bootloader begins executing and keeps the processor in application firmware update mode, until the user has finished programming a new application run mode firmware image.

The software entry method stimulus event (step #2 above) is application specific, and needs to be implemented in the application firmware image project (ex: the code associated with it does not reside in the bootloader firmware program space). Typically, this would be implemented by having some custom host/PC application GUI program that sends a custom command to the application firmware image (in normal "application run mode" over the normal application USB endpoints), letting it know it should switch into the HID bootloader firmware update mode.

The software entry method is generally not as "rugged" as the I/O pin check entry method however. The software entry method necessarily requires that the application firmware image be intact and functional, prior to receiving the stimulus needed to switch into the firmware update mode. Therefore, programming a non-functional application firmware image into the microcontroller, could prevent further entry back into the firmware update mode (needed for re-programming another application firmware image). This creates a so called "chicken and egg" scenario, where recovery is not possible (without reprogramming the microcontroller with a conventional ICSP™ based programming tool, such as the PICKit 3 or MPLAB ICD 3 programmer/debugger devices).

However, some recoverability in the event of failed reprogramming sequences, such as the case of sudden power loss or the user unplugging the USB cable during the erase/program/verify sequence, is possible. This is achieved through the "Flash Signature Process".

The software based entry method into the bootloader firmware update mode is optional, and is not mutually exclusive with the I/O pin check method. Applications may choose to use either or both entry methods as desired. The software entry method is always available (even if not used). The I/O pin entry method can be enabled or disabled based on the `usb_config.h` settings in the HID bootloader firmware project.

If the software entry method will be used, the entry into the firmware update mode can be accomplished by executing the appropriate software entry routine.

#### Software Entry for PIC16 Devices

```
#asm
    movlp 0x00    //most significant bits of dest, needed for PIC16 devices
    goto 0x001C
#endasm
```

#### Software Entry for PIC18 Devices

```
#asm
    goto 0x001C
#endasm
```

The above assumes the XC8 compiler is used. If the MPLAB C18 compiler is used instead, the `#asm` and `#endasm` should be changed to `_asm` and `_endasm` respectively.

NOTE: When the "application" image is executing, the application may jump into firmware update mode by executing the appropriate goto instruction. Before doing so however, the firmware should configure the current clock settings to be compatible with USB module operation, if they are not already. Once the goto 0x001C has been executed, the USB device will detach from the USB bus (if it was previously attached), and will re-enumerate as a HID class device with a new VID/PID (adjustable via usb\_descriptors.c settings in bootloader firmware), which can communicate with the associated USB host software that loads and programs the new application .hex file.

### 1.6.3.2.3 Processor Specific Implementation Details

A boot loader is tied much closer to hardware specific features (core, tools, etc.) than most applications. As such, many features of the boot loader are part specific. This section covers sections that are part specific, and how to make part specific customizations.

#### Description

A boot loader is tied much closer to hardware specific features (core, tools, etc.) than most applications. As such, many features of the boot loader are part specific. This section covers sections that are part specific, and how to make part specific customizations.

#### 1.6.3.2.3.1 PIC16 and PIC18

This section covers the PIC18 and PIC16 product line USB boot loaders.

#### Description

This section covers the PIC18 and PIC16 product line USB boot loaders.

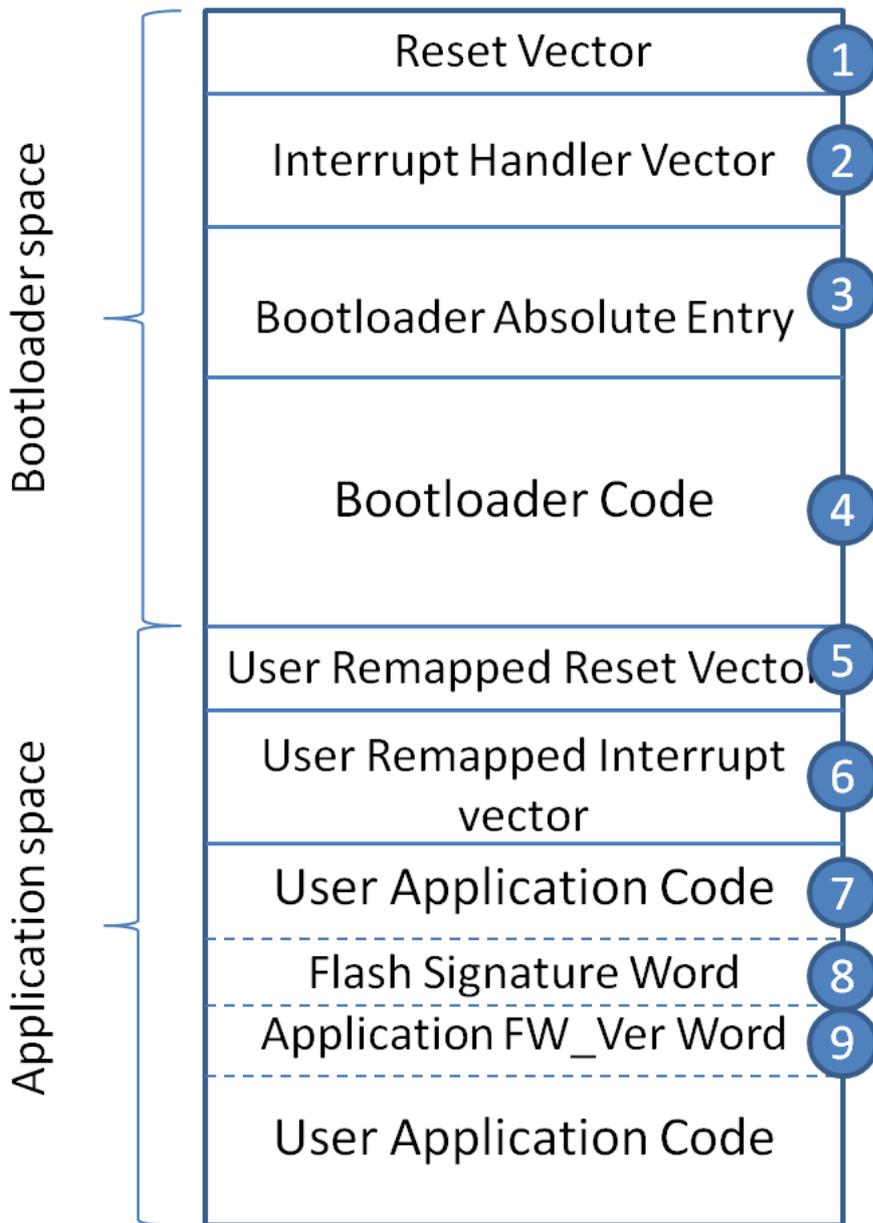
##### 1.6.3.2.3.1.1 Memory Map

Discussion of the PIC16/PIC18 memory map and how it is utilized in the USB boot loader.

#### Description

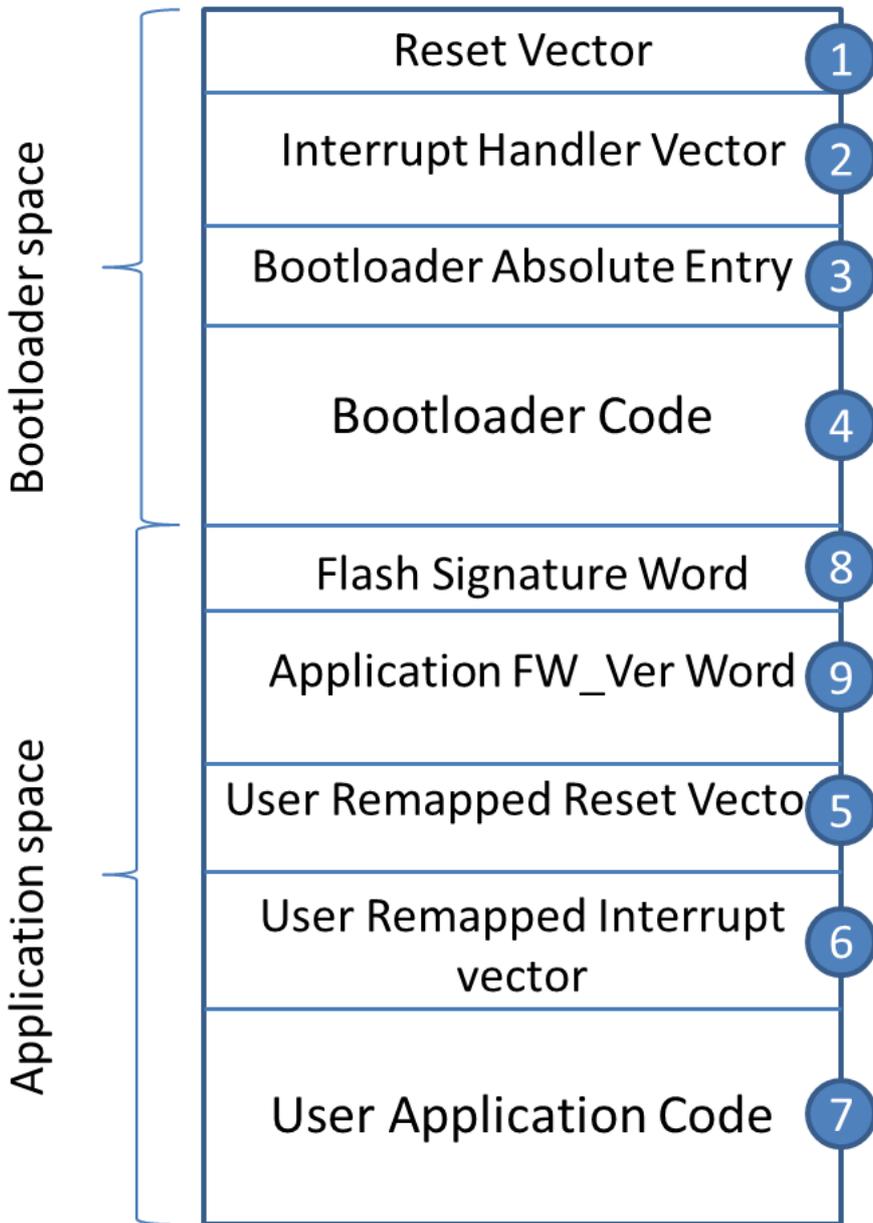
As configured by default, PIC16 and PIC18 USB HID bootloader uses the flash memory mapping as shown the figure below:

#### PIC18 HID Bootloader Memory Map



PIC16 HID Bootloader Memory Map

### PIC16F HID Bootloader memory map



The figure below shows the table with currently implemented memory addresses for PIC16 and PIC18 USB bootloaders.

**Actual flash memory address implementation values**

	Flash Memory Address Values					
	Reset	Interrupt Vector	Bootloader Absolute Entry	Bootloader End	Application Reset	Application Remapped Vector
PIC16F145x Devices	0x0000	0x0004	0x001C	0x8FF	0x904	0x908
PIC18F USB Devices	0x0000	0x0008 (Hi Pri. Int) 0x0018 (Lo Pri. Int)	0x001C	0xFFF	0x1000	0x1008 (Hi Pri. ISR) 0x1018 (Lo Pri. ISR)

Let us examine each section in the memory mapping closely:

1. Reset Vector – The reset vector is defined by hardware. This is located at address 0x0000. Any reset to the CPU will go to the reset vector. The main job of the reset vector is to jump to the code that needs to be run. In the case of a bootloader, this means jumping to the bootloader code (4).
2. Interrupt Handler Vector – This is another section that is defined by the hardware. PIC18F devices have two interrupt vectors, high priority interrupt vector and low priority interrupt vector, and they are located at 0x0008 and 0x0018 respectively. PIC16F devices have one interrupt vector located at 0x0004.
3. Bootloader Absolute Entry – This is the absolute entry point into the bootloader firmware, so application projects can jump into bootloader mode at runtime. The entry address that is currently set in the PIC18 and PIC16 bootloader is 0x001C.
4. Bootloader code – This is where the bootloader code resides. This section handles all of the loading of the new application code.
5. User Remapped Reset Vector – This section is defined by the bootloader. This is the remapped reset vector address that indicates start of the main application code.
6. User Remapped Interrupt Vector – Since the hardware interrupt vector is located in the bootloader space, the bootloader must remap all of the interrupts to the application space. This is done using user remapped interrupt vector. In PIC16 and PIC18 bootloader implementations, user remapped interrupt vector(s) are defined in the bootloader code.
7. Application code – This section is where the main application code is located.
8. Flash Signature Word – This is the address in program memory in Application Space where Flash Signature Word is located. This is a special program memory word that gets programmed (only after the entire erase/program/verify process is completed successfully) with a known value, and indicates to the bootloader code that the application firmware image is fully intact. It is necessary for the flash signature word to be located on the very first erase page during the erase sequence, and must also be the very last portion of program memory that gets re-programmed. In the current implementation, the Flash Signature Word is located within the application program memory space, at a specific fixed address. Additional details on Flash Signature process are described in the Flash Signature section.
9. Application Firmware Version Word – This word also resides in the application space, but it is used by the bootloader firmware to read out the application firmware version number. In the current implementation, this word is located at fixed address in the application space. Additional details on Application Firmware Version Word are described below.

#### 1.6.3.2.3.1.2 QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO Response

This section discusses the results returned by the QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command for the PIC16/PIC18 devices.

##### Description

QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO is a command that may be sent from the PC GUI application controlling the bootloading process, to the bootloader firmware. This command is only supported in bootloader firmware version 1.01 or later.

When the firmware receives this command from the host, the firmware is obligated to send back a response packet on the HID interrupt IN endpoint. For PIC16 and PIC18 devices, the QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO has the following structure (note: format is architecture specific, and will not necessarily be the same for devices identifying themselves as PIC24 or other devices):

```
//Structure for the QUERY_EXTENDED_INFO command (and response)
struct{
    unsigned char Command;
    unsigned int BootloaderVersion;
    unsigned int ApplicationVersion;
    unsigned long SignatureAddress;
    unsigned int SignatureValue;
    unsigned long ErasePageSize;
    unsigned char Config1LMask;
    unsigned char Config1HMask;
    unsigned char Config2LMask;
    unsigned char Config2HMask;
    unsigned char Config3LMask;
    unsigned char Config3HMask;
    unsigned char Config4LMask;
    unsigned char Config4HMask;
    unsigned char Config5LMask;
    unsigned char Config5HMask;
    unsigned char Config6LMask;
    unsigned char Config6HMask;
```

```
    unsigned char Config7LMask;  
    unsigned char Config7HMask;  
};
```

The “ConfigxH/LMask” values in the response structure should be loaded with the appropriate AND mask values that the PC application should use when performing the verify operation, and comparing the read out contents of memory versus the .hex file contents. Generally speaking, unimplemented configuration bit positions should be excluded from the verify operations, since the .hex file may contain a ‘1’ or ‘0’ in these locations, even though the microcontroller hardware may not implement some of these locations. If the PC GUI application were to attempt to verify these locations, they would therefore always read back as the default unimplemented value (ex: 0 for PIC18 devices), which may not necessarily match the .hex file (ex: if it had a ‘1’ in the same location). Therefore, the firmware should properly respond to the host’s QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO command, with AND mask values that the PC GUI program should use to AND the .hex file values before comparing them to the read values, ensuring that the verify operation successfully ignores unimplemented/unimportant locations.

#### 1.6.3.2.3.1.3 Changing the Memory Footprint

Describes how to change the location and size of the memory that the boot loader uses.

##### Description

By default, the bootloader firmware project reserves and occupies the 0x000-0xFFFF region (PIC18) or 0x000-0x8FF (PIC16) program memory region. It is possible to move this boundary (ex: if more space is needed for the bootloader firmware, such as when trying to build/use the bootloader with a free/non-optimizing version of the C compiler).

In order to move the boundary, the new boundary must be chosen that aligns perfectly with a native flash memory erase block size (ex: the boundary cannot reside in the middle of a flash memory erase page). Additionally, moving the boundary requires changing the bootloader definitions (REMAPPED\_APPLICATION\_RESET\_VECTOR, REMAPPED\_APPLICATION\_HIGH\_ISR\_VECTOR, REMAPPED\_APPLICATION\_LOW\_ISR\_VECTOR, APP\_SIGNATURE\_ADDRESS, APP\_VERSION\_ADDRESS) in both the bootloader firmware project, as well as in the application firmware project intended to be programmed by the bootloader firmware.

When moving the APP\_SIGNATURE\_ADDRESS, make sure that the newly selected address always resides fully on the very first flash memory erase page that gets erased by the bootloader, in order to avoid defeating the robustness features offered by the flash signing process.

Additionally, both the bootloader firmware project and application linker settings must be modified. When using the C18 compiler, this entails modifying both the application and bootloader firmware .lkr files, so as to allocate more space for the bootloader. When using the XC8 compiler, the linker settings must be modified in both the bootloader firmware build configuration, as well as the application firmware image project build configuration.

#### 1.6.3.2.3.1.4 C18 Compiler

Discusses how to use the C18 compiler with the boot loader examples.

##### Description

The C18 compiler only supports PIC18 based targets, and therefore, this section is only relevant for PIC18 devices. For PIC16 or PIC18 targets using the XC8 compiler, see the XC8 Compiler section.

The PIC18F HID bootloader firmware is compatible with both the C18 and XC8 compilers. When the firmware is built with the C18 compiler, the bootloader project needs to be built with all of the compiler optimizations full enabled, and using the Default Storage Class “Static”. Using a free/unlicensed version of the compiler will not directly work, as some of the compiler optimizations are disabled in the free version.

If the firmware project is built without the full compiler optimizations enabled, the total code size will be too large to fit within the program memory range 0x000-0xFFFF reserved by default for the bootloader firmware. It is possible, albeit not preferred, to move the bootloader/application program memory space boundary, so as to allocate/reserve more flash memory for the bootloader, if the bootloader will be built without full compiler optimizations enabled. See “Moving the Application/Bootloader Flash Boundary”.

The bootloader project is provided with the modified linker scripts to be used with the bootloader project (ex:

BootModified.18f14k50\_g.lkr), and modified example linker scripts that can be used with the application projects (ex: Linker files for applications\ rm18f14k50\_g.lkr). However, certain application projects may require a slightly modified application linker script (ex: projects using large RAM buffers > 256 bytes in size for instance), but the provided application linker files should still be used as a template/starting point when configuring the linker script.

### 1.6.3.2.3.1.5 XC8 Compiler

Discusses using the XC8 compiler with the USB boot loader.

#### Description

#### 1.6.3.2.3.1.5.1 Optimization Mode Requirements

Discusses compiler optimization requirements for using the USB boot loader.

#### Description

The currently implemented bootloader firmware may be built with the XC8 compiler v1.21 or later (in PRO mode), for both PIC16 and PIC18 devices.

On PIC16 targets this bootloader firmware is intended to occupy the program memory region 0x000-0x8FF (14-bit word addresses). The application firmware is supposed to occupy the 0x900-[end of flash] region of program memory (Note: The addresses [0x900-0x903] are technically part of the application firmware project space, but they must be reserved for the flash signature word and application version word values).

On PIC18 targets, the bootloader firmware occupies the 0x000-0xFFFF program memory region, while the application firmware image is supposed to occupy the 0x1000-[end of flash] region of program memory.

In order to fit within the 0x000-0x8FF (or 0x000-0xFFFF for PIC18) region, this bootloader project must be built with the PRO mode optimizations enabled. If you attempt to build the bootloader firmware in either the Free or Standard modes, the code size required for the bootloader firmware will likely be too large to fit within the reserved space for the bootloader, resulting in one or more linker errors (with text typically referring to “cannot find space” for “such and such” section name).

It is therefore recommended to use the bootloader with the fully licensed PRO version of the XC8 compiler. If however a free or standard version of the compiler must be used, it is potentially possible to move the bootloader/application program space boundary. If this will be attempted, please see the Changing the Memory Footprint section.

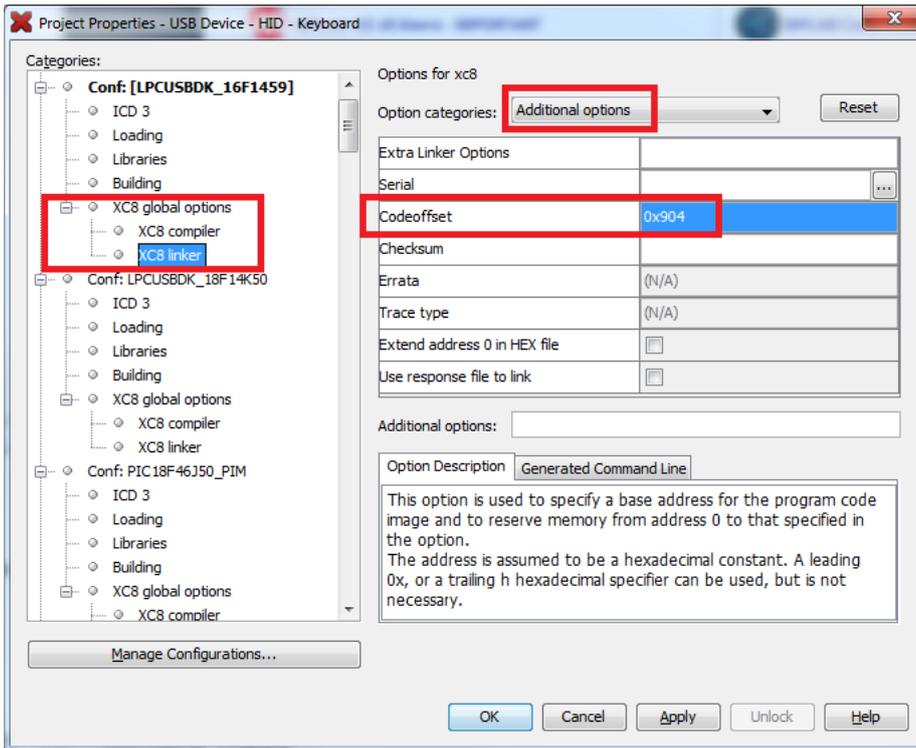
#### 1.6.3.2.3.1.5.2 Linking Options for PIC16 Devices

Link option modifications that are required for using XC8 on PIC16 devices for the USB boot loader.

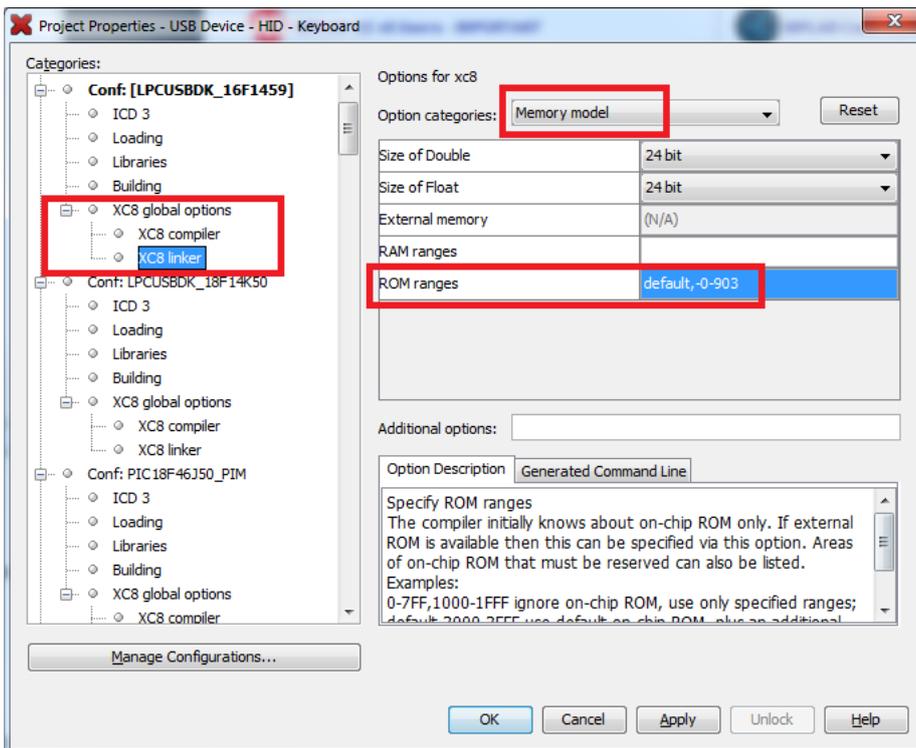
#### Description

If the application firmware project needs to be programmable by this bootloader firmware, there are two linker setting changes that are required to the application project:

1) Under the build configuration > XC8 global options > XC8 linker > Option categories: Additional options, the “Codeoffset” must be set to 0x904



2) Under the build configuration > XC8 global options > XC8 linker > Option categories: Memory Model, the "ROM Ranges" must be set to: default, -0-903



NOTE: Once the above changes are made to the application project, the output .hex file will no longer work when programmed stand alone, but it will be programmable by the HID bootloader firmware. This can make further application development less convenient, until the bootloader and application project output is "merged" using the procedures described in the Merging Bootloader and Application Project Output section.

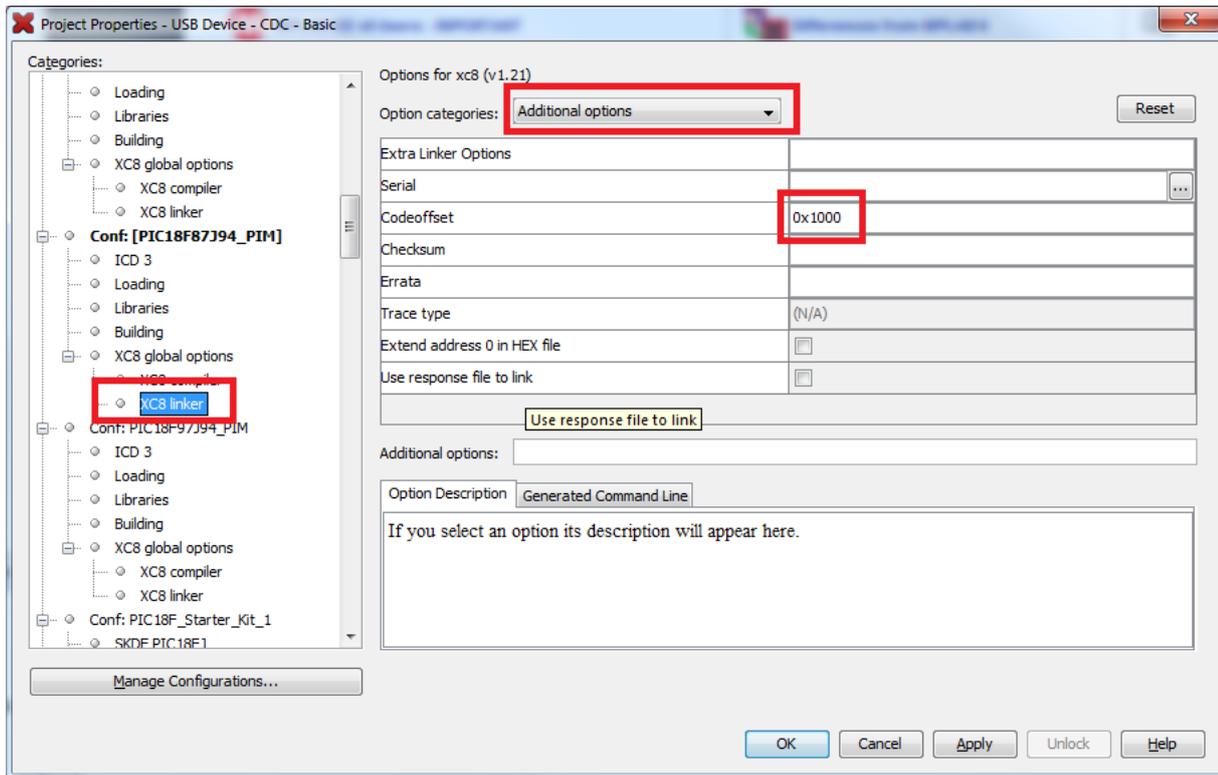
### 1.6.3.2.3.1.5.3 Linking Options for PIC18 Devices

Link option modifications that are required for using XC8 on PIC18 devices for the USB boot loader.

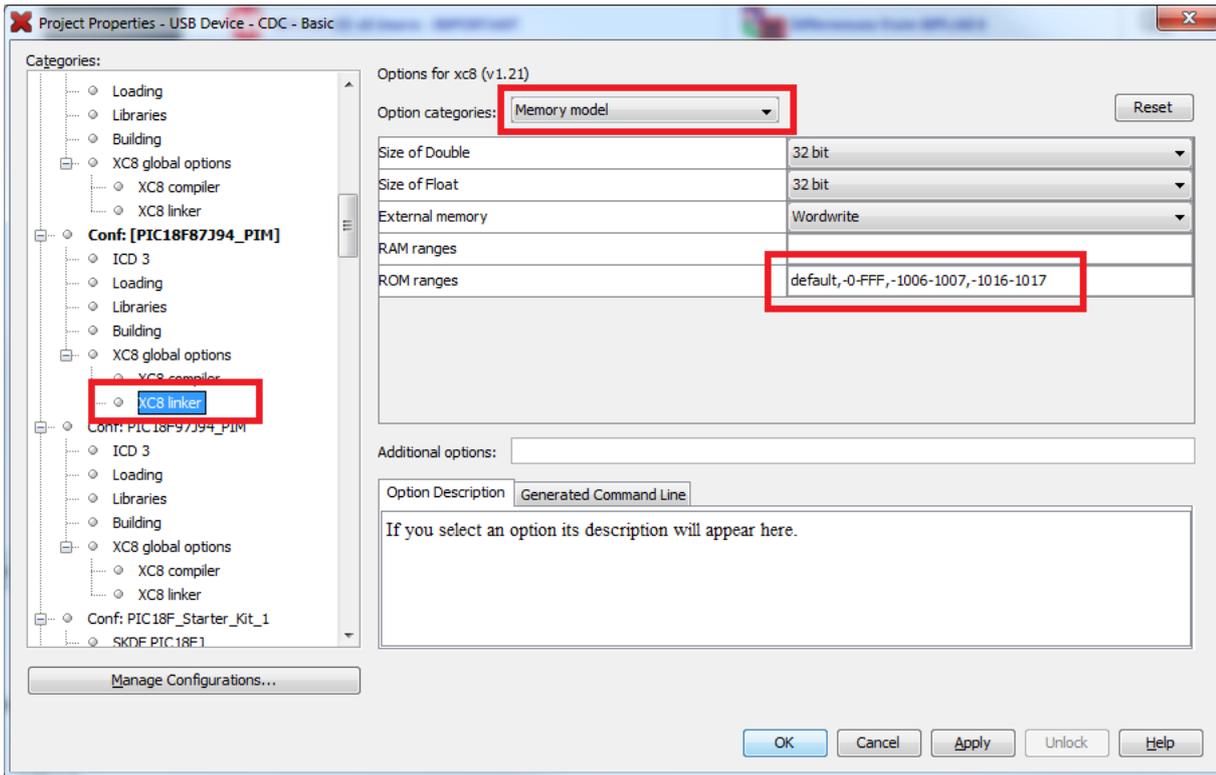
#### Description

If the application firmware project needs to be programmable by this bootloader firmware, there are two linker setting changes that are required to the application project:

- 1) Under the build configuration > XC8 global options > XC8 linker > Option categories: Additional options, the “Codeoffset” must be set to 0x1000



- 2) Under the build configuration > XC8 global options > XC8 linker > Option categories: Memory Model, the “ROM Ranges” must be set to: default, -0-FFF, -1006-1007,-1016-1017



NOTE: Once the above changes are made to the application project, the output .hex file will no longer work when programmed stand alone, but it will be programmable by the HID bootloader firmware. This can make further application development less convenient, until the bootloader and application project output is “merged” using the procedures described in the Merging Bootloader and Application Project Output section.

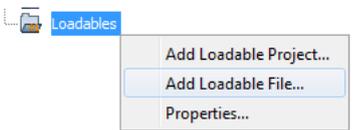
### 1.6.3.2.3.1.6 Merging Bootloader and Application Project Output

Discusses how to generate a single .hex file that contains both the boot loader and the application project output.

#### Description

To “merge” the two projects together (so that the application firmware .hex file is not required to be programmed by the bootloader, but may be programmed either stand alone via ICSP or by the bootloader), the following can be done:

1. Open and build the HID bootloader firmware project in the MPLAB X IDE.
2. Open the application firmware project in the MPLAB X IDE.
3. Add the “MPLAB.X.production.hex” file (generated by the HID bootloader firmware project) to the application firmware project as a “Loadable” file in MPLAB X. This can be done from the project view window and right clicking on the “Loadables” folder, and selecting the “Add Loadable File...” option.



4. Build the application firmware project. After the project builds, MPLAB X will automatically run the “HEXMATE” utility in the background and generate a merged .hex file (which will contain both the bootloader firmware and application firmware). This merged .hex file can be programmed either stand alone with an ICSP™ programmer or using the bootloader.

If step number 4 above fails, this implies that there are overlapping but non-equivalent sections of the program memory values in the two hex files (from the HID bootloader firmware and the application project). Normally, this error will be caused by having slightly different configuration bit settings between the application firmware project and the HID bootloader firmware project. To fix this error, you must modify the two projects so that the configuration bits are 100% identical between the two or are only implemented in one of the firmware projects.

Alternatively, it is possible to use the HEXMATE utility directly from the command line, instead of invoking it through the MPLAB X IDE through the "Loadables" feature to merge the hex files. When used at the command line, the HEXMATE utility supports a variety of advanced options, such as code offset shifting, giving "priority" to one hex file or another (ex: in the case of conflicts due to overlapping but non-identical .hex file content), merging more than two hex files at once, etc. To learn more about how to use the HEXMATE utility, please refer to the "HEXMATE" section in the MPLAB XC8 compiler user's manual.

### 1.6.3.2.3.2 PIC24F

This section covers the PIC24F product line USB boot loaders.

#### Description

This section covers the PIC24F product line USB boot loaders.

#### 1.6.3.2.3.2.1 Adding a boot loader to your project

This section covers how to add a boot loader to your application.

#### Description

The boot loader implementations available in the USB Library take a two application approach. What this means is that the boot loader and the application are development, compiled, and loaded separately.

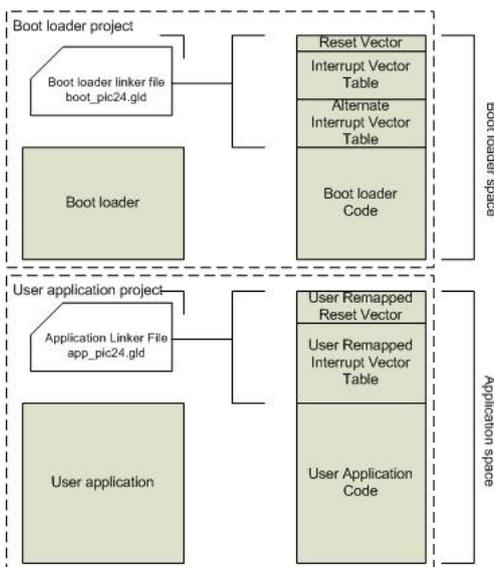
With this approach there are two separate linker scripts that are required, one for the boot loader, and one for the application.

For the PIC24F applications intended to be used with a boot loader, all that is required is to attach the specific linker file designed for the applications of that boot loader to the project.

- No modifications are required to the linker file. Just attach the provided application linker file to the application project without modification.
- No modifications are required to the application code. Just write your code as you always would and attach the provided application linker file to the application project without modification.

The required application linker files are found in the folders that contain the targeted boot loaders. These linker files can be referenced directly from the application projects, or can be copied locally to the project folder.

These provided linker files generate the required code to handle the reset and interrupt remapping sections that are required.



### 1.6.3.2.3.2.2 Memory Map

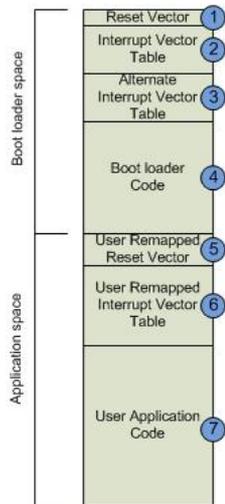
This section discusses the various memory regions in the PIC24F device and how they are arranged between the boot

loaders and the target applications.

**Description**

The PIC24F boot loaders have several different special memory regions. Some of these regions are defined by the hardware. Others are part of the boot loader implementation and usage. This section discusses what each of these memory regions are. For more information about how these sections are implemented or how to change them, please refer to the Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation section.

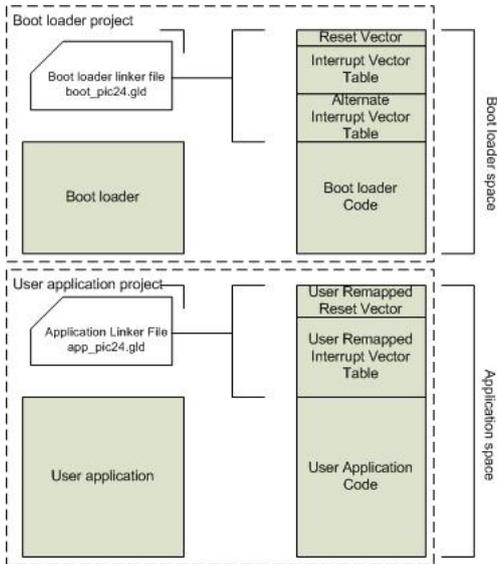
The different memory regions are shown below:



- 1) Reset Vector - the reset vector is defined by the hardware. This is located at address 0x0000. Any reset of the CPU will go to the reset vector. The main responsibility of the reset vector is to jump to the code that needs to be run. In the case of the boot loader, this means jumping to the boot loader code (section 4).
- 2) The interrupt vector table (IVT) is another section that is defined by the PIC24F hardware. The IVT is a fixed set of addresses that specify where the CPU should jump to in the case of an interrupt event. Each interrupt has it's own vector in the table. When that interrupt occurs, the CPU fetches the address in the table corresponding to that interrupt and jumps to that address.
- 3) The alternate interrupt vector table (AIVT) behaves just like the IVT. The user must set a bit to select if they are using the IVT or AIVT for their interrupt handling. The IVT is the default. For the current boot loader applications, the AIVT is either used by the boot loader or is not remapped to user space so the AIVT is not available for application use.
- 4) The boot loader code - This section is where the boot loader code resides. This section handles all of the loading of the new application code.
- 5) User Remapped Reset Vector - This is a section that is defined by the boot loader. The boot loader must always know how to exit to the application on startup. The User Remapped Reset Vector is used as a fixed address that the boot loader can jump to in order to start an application. The application must place code at this address that starts their application. In the PIC24F implementations this is handled by the application linker file.
- 6) User Remapped Interrupt Vectors - Since the IVT is located in the boot loader space, the boot loader must remap all of the interrupts to the application space. This is done using the User remapped interrupt vectors. The IVT in the boot loader will jump to a specific address in the User remapped interrupt vector. The User remapped interrupt vector table jumps to the interrupt handler code defined in the user code. In the PIC24F implementations this table is generated by the application linker file and doesn't require any user modifications.
- 7) The user application code - this is the main application code for the project that needs to be loaded by the boot loader. In the PIC24F implementation, only the application linker file for the specific boot loader needs to be added to the project. No other files are required. No changes or additions are required to the user application code either in order to get the code working.

The boot loader and application linker files provided with the USB Library enforce all of the memory regions specified above. If an application tries to specify an address outside of the valid range, the user should get a linker error.

Separate linker files are required for the boot loader and the application. These linker files generate the material required for several of the different memory regions in the device. Below is a diagram showing which sections of the final device image are created by the linker files. All of the regions of the device are specified within one of the two linker files. This image merely shows where the content for each of those regions is generated.



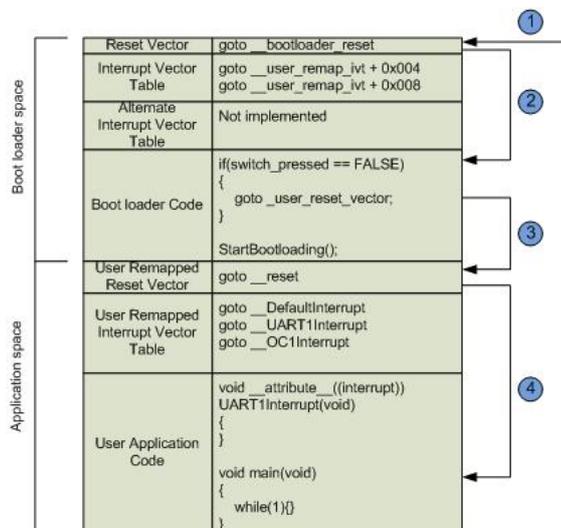
### 1.6.3.2.3.2.3 Startup Sequence and Reset Remapping

This section discusses how the device comes out of reset and how the control passes between the boot loader and the application.

#### Description

Before continuing with this section, please review the preceding sections to understand some of the implementation details that aren't discussed in detail in this section. Some of the implementation details of how this works is described the Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation section. This section covers the basic flow and how it passes between the boot loader and the application.

In the boot loader implementations provided in USB Library library, the boot loader controls the reset vector. This is true for the PIC24F boot loaders as well. The reset vector resides within the boot loader memory space. This means that the boot loader must jump to the target application. This processes in show below in the following diagram and described in the following paragraphs.



1) On PIC24F devices, when a reset occurs the hardware automatically jumps to the reset vector. This is located at address

0x0000. This address resides within the boot loader memory. The compiler/linker for the boot loader code places a 'goto' instruction at the reset vector to the boot loader startup code.

- 2) The 'goto' instruction at the reset address will jump to the main() function for the boot loader.
- 3) In the boot loader startup sequence there is a check to determine if the boot loader should run or if the boot loader should jump to the application instead. In the provided examples the code checks a switch to determine if it should remain in the boot loader. If the switch is not pressed then the boot loader jumps to the user\_remapped\_reset\_vector. At this point the control of the processor has just changed from the boot loader to the application.
- 4) The code at the user\_remapped\_reset\_vector is controlled by the application project, not the boot loader. This vector effectively emulates the behavior that the normal reset vector would if a boot loader wasn't used. In this case it should jump to the startup code for the application. This is done by modified linker script for the application.

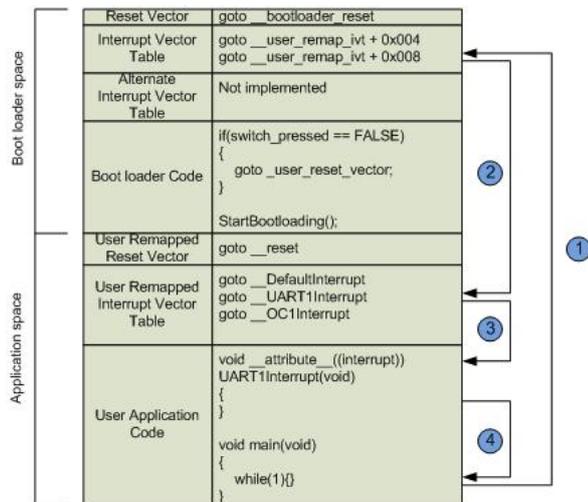
### 1.6.3.2.3.2.4 Interrupt Remapping

This section discusses how interrupts are handled between the boot loader and application.

#### Description

Before continuing with this section, please review the preceding sections to understand some of the implementation details that aren't discussed in detail in this section. Some of the implementation details of how this works is described the Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation section. This section covers the basic flow and how it passes between the boot loader and the application.

In the boot loader implementations provided in USB Library library, the boot loader controls the interrupt vectors for PIC24F devices. The hardware interrupt vector table resides within the boot loader memory space. This means that the boot loader must jump to the appropriate user target application interrupt handler when an interrupt occurs. This processes in show below in the following diagram and described in the following paragraphs.



- 1) During the course of normal code execution, an interrupt occurs. The CPU vectors to the interrupt vector table (IVT) as described in the appropriate PIC24F datasheet.
- 2) The IVT is located in boot loader space, but the application needs to handle the interrupt. The boot loader jumps to the correct entry in the User Remapped Interrupt Vector Table. At this point the CPU is jumping from the boot loader memory space to the application memory space and effectively transferring control to the application.
- 3) At the entry in the User Remapped Interrupt Vector table there is placed a 'goto' instruction that will jump to the appropriate interrupt handler if one is defined in your application and to the default interrupt if there isn't a handler defined. In this way the behavior of the application with or without the boot loader is identical. The User Remapped Interrupt Vector table is created by the application linker file for the specific boot loader in use. This table is automatically generated and doesn't need to be modified. More about how this table is generated can be found in the Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation.
- 4) Finally once the interrupt handler code is complete, the code will return from the interrupt handler. This will return the CPU

to the instruction that the interrupt occurred before.

### 1.6.3.2.3.2.5 Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation

This sections discusses the customizations that have been made from the default linker scripts in order to make the boot loader work and how to customize these implementations if you wish to change the behavior or location of the boot loader.

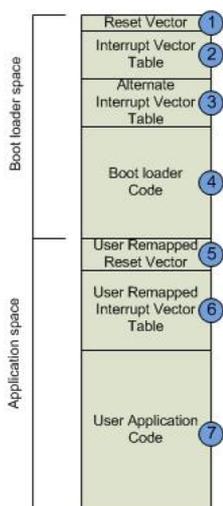
#### Description

#### 1.6.3.2.3.2.5.1 Memory Region Definitions

This section describes how each of the memory regions gets defined.

#### Description

First let's take a look how each of the memory regions are defined. The address ranges for each of the regions seen in the diagram below must be defined in either the application linker file or the boot loader linker files.



Below is an excerpt from one of the HID boot loader linker files. This is from the linker script for the boot loader itself so this will be covering sections (1), (2), (3), and (4).

```

/*
** Memory Regions
*/
MEMORY
{
  data (a!xr) : ORIGIN = 0x800,          LENGTH = 0x4000
  reset       : ORIGIN = 0x0,           LENGTH = 0x4
  ivt        : ORIGIN = 0x4,           LENGTH = 0xFC
  aivt       : ORIGIN = 0x104,         LENGTH = 0xFC
  program (xr) : ORIGIN = 0x400,        LENGTH = 0x1000
  config4    : ORIGIN = 0x2ABF8,        LENGTH = 0x2
  config3    : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFA,        LENGTH = 0x2
  config2    : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFC,        LENGTH = 0x2
  config1    : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFE,        LENGTH = 0x2
}

```

The region named "reset" is defined to start at address 0x0 and has a length of 0x4. This means that the first two instructions of the device are used for the reset vector. This is just enough for one 'goto' instruction. This corresponds to hardware implementation and should not be changed. This defines section (1).

Section (2) is the IVT table. This is defined with the "ivt" memory entry. It starts at address 0x4 and is 0xFC bytes long. This corresponds to hardware implementation and should not be changed.

Section (3) is the AIVT table. This is defined with the "aivt" memory entry. It starts at address 0x104 and is 0xFC bytes long. This corresponds to hardware implementation and should not be changed.

Section (4) is the section for the boot loader code. This section is covered by the "program" entry in the memory table. This section starts at address 0x400 and is 0x1000 bytes long in this example (ends at 0x1400). As you can see with this section it has been decreased from the total size of the device to limit the boot loader code to this specific area. This is how the linker knows where the boot loader code is allowed to reside.

Looking in the corresponding application linker file will result in a similar table.

```

/*
** Memory Regions
*/
MEMORY
{
  data (a!xr) : ORIGIN = 0x800,      LENGTH = 0x4000
  reset      : ORIGIN = 0x0,        LENGTH = 0x4
  ivt       : ORIGIN = 0x4,        LENGTH = 0xFC
  aivt      : ORIGIN = 0x104,      LENGTH = 0xFC
  app_ivt   : ORIGIN = 0x1400,     LENGTH = 0x10C
  program (xr) : ORIGIN = 0x1510,   LENGTH = 0x296E8
  config4   : ORIGIN = 0x2ABF8,    LENGTH = 0x2
  config3   : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFA,    LENGTH = 0x2
  config2   : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFC,    LENGTH = 0x2
  config1   : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFE,    LENGTH = 0x2
}

```

Note that the "reset", "ivt", and "aivt" sections are all still present in the application linker script. These sections remain here so that applications compiled with the boot loader can be programmed with or without the boot loader. This aids in the development of the application without having to use the boot loader while maintaining identical interrupt latency and memory positioning.

Sections (5) and (6) are created in the special "app\_ivt" section. The following discussion topic describes how the content of this section is created. This entry in the memory table is how the space for that area is allocated. Note that the "app\_ivt" section starts at address 0x1400 (the same address that the boot loader ended at). Since different parts have different number of interrupts, the size of the "app\_ivt" section may change.

The "program" memory section has changed for the application space. It starts at address 0x1510 in this example. This will vary from part to part based on the size of the "app\_ivt" section. The "program" memory section corresponds to the user application code (section (7)). Note that it takes up the rest of the memory of the device that is available to load.

### 1.6.3.2.3.2.5.2 Special Region Creation

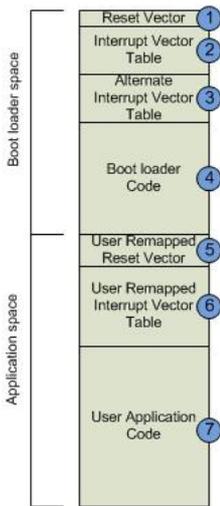
This section covers how each of the special memory regions are created/populated within the linker files.

#### Description

The Memory Region Definitions section described how each of the memory regions are defined. This allocates the room for each of the memory regions.

This discussion covers how the values of some of the special memory regions are created/populated. Please refer to the earlier sections for an understanding of how the reset and interrupt remapping works before proceeding through this section.

Let's take a look at each of the memory regions in order. Please note that there are two linker scripts, one for the boot loader and one for the application. In order for some of these section definitions to make sense, we will be showing excerpts from either or both of these files for any given section. Please pay close attention to which linker file we are referring to when we show an example.



1) Section (1) is the reset vector. This belongs to the boot loader space so this is located in the boot loader linker file. What we need at the reset vector is a jump to the start of the boot loader code. In the boot loader linker script:

```

/*
** Reset Instruction
*/
.reset :
{
    SHORT(ABSOLUTE(__reset));
    SHORT(0x04);
    SHORT((ABSOLUTE(__reset) >> 16) & 0x7F);
    SHORT(0);
} >reset
    
```

The code in this section generates a "goto \_\_reset" instruction located in the "reset" memory section. This will cause the CPU to jump to the boot loader startup code after any device reset. This is common code that is present in any default linker script for PIC24F.

2) The second section is the IVT. In the IVT we need to jump to the user's remapped IVT table.

```

__APP_IVT_BASE = 0x1400;
.ivt __IVT_BASE :
{
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__APP_IVT_BASE) + 0x004); /* __ReservedTrap0*/
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__APP_IVT_BASE) + 0x008); /* __OscillatorFail*/
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__APP_IVT_BASE) + 0x00C); /* __AddressError*/
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__APP_IVT_BASE) + 0x010); /* __StackError*/
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__APP_IVT_BASE) + 0x014); /* __MathError*/
    ...
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__DEFAULT_VECTOR)); /* __Interrupt116 not implemented */
    LONG(ABSOLUTE(__DEFAULT_VECTOR)); /* __Interrupt117 not implemented */
} >ivt
    
```

This linker code will place the `__APP_IVT_BASE` constant + an offset address at each of the IVT vector entries. This will cause the CPU to jump to the specified vector in the user's remapped IVT table.

Note that each entry is 4 bytes away from the previous entry. It is because the resulting remapped IVT will need to use "goto" instructions at each entry in order to reach the desired handler. The "goto" instruction takes two instruction words at 2 bytes of memory address each.

3) Section (3), the AIVT, is either not used or is used by the boot loader and shouldn't be used by the application. If the boot loader requires interrupts, then it uses the AIVT and switches to AIVT interrupts before starting and switches back to the IVT before jumping to the customer code. No linker modifications are required here. For boot loaders that don't require interrupts, some have the AIVT section removed since they are not remapped to the user space and not used by the boot loader.

4) Section (4), the boot loader code - the only modification required in the linker script for the boot loader code is the changes to the memory region definitions discussed previously in the Memory Region Definitions section.

5) Section (5) is the user remapped reset. This is the address where the boot loader jumps upon completion. This address

needs to be at a fixed location in code that both the boot loader and the application know about. At this address there needs to be a jump to the user application code. In the application linker script:

```
.application_ivt __APP_IVT_BASE :
{
    SHORT(ABSOLUTE(__reset)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT((ABSOLUTE(__reset) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__ReservedTrap0) ? ABSOLUTE(__ReservedTrap0) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__ReservedTrap0) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__ReservedTrap0) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__OscillatorFail) ? ABSOLUTE(__OscillatorFail) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__OscillatorFail) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__OscillatorFail) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__AddressError) ? ABSOLUTE(__AddressError) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__AddressError) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__AddressError) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
```

This section of code has been added to the default linker script. This creates a section in code located at `__APP_IVT_BASE` address. In this case the `__APP_IVT_BASE` address is also defined in the application linker file:

```
__APP_IVT_BASE = 0x1400;
```

This address must match exactly between the boot loader code, boot loader linker file, and the application linker file. If any of these do not match then the linkage between the interrupt remapping or reset remapping will not work and the application will fail to run properly.

The first entry in this table is the user remapped reset. This code generates a "goto `__reset`" at address `__APP_IVT_BASE`. This allows the boot loader to jump to this fixed address to then jump to the start of the user code (located at the `__reset` label).

6) Section (6) is the remapped IVT table. This section allows the interrupt to be remapped from the boot loader space to the application space. In order to do this the boot loader must either know the exact address of every interrupt handler, or must have another jump table that it jumps to in order to redirect it to the correct interrupt handler. The second approach is the one used in the implemented boot loaders. This is implemented in the following table:

```
.application_ivt __APP_IVT_BASE :
{
    SHORT(ABSOLUTE(__reset)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT((ABSOLUTE(__reset) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__ReservedTrap0) ? ABSOLUTE(__ReservedTrap0) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__ReservedTrap0) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__ReservedTrap0) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__OscillatorFail) ? ABSOLUTE(__OscillatorFail) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__OscillatorFail) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__OscillatorFail) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
    SHORT(DEFINED(__AddressError) ? ABSOLUTE(__AddressError) :
ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt)); SHORT(0x04); SHORT(DEFINED(__AddressError) ?
(ABSOLUTE(__AddressError) >> 16) & 0x7F : (ABSOLUTE(__DefaultInterrupt) >> 16) & 0x7F);
SHORT(0);
```

This first entry in the table is the remapped reset vector that we just discussed. The second entry in the table is the first possible interrupt. In this case it is the `ReservedTrap0` interrupt. This line of linker code will look for the `__ReservedTrap0` interrupt function. If it exists it will insert a "goto `__ReservedTrap0`" at the second address in this table. If it doesn't find the `__ReservedTrap0` function, it will put a "goto `__DefaultInterrupt`" at this entry in the table. In this way just by defining the appropriate interrupt handler function in the application code, the linker will automatically create the jump table entry .required.

Looking at an example `application_ivt` table as generated by the linker script where the `ReservedTrap0` interrupt is not defined and the `OscillatorFail` and `AddressError` handlers are defined, starting at address `__APP_IVT_BASE` you will have the following entries in program memory:

```
goto __reset
```

```
goto __DefaultInterrupt
goto __OscillatorFail
goto __AddressError
...
```

7) Section (7), the user application code - the only modification to the linker script required for the application code is the changes to the memory region definitions discussed previously in the Memory Region Definitions section.

### 1.6.3.2.3.2.5.3 Changing the memory footprint of the boot loader

This section covers how to modify how much memory is used by the boot loader. This can be useful when adding features to the boot loader that increase the size beyond the default example or if a version of the compiler is used that doesn't provide a sufficient level of optimizations to fit the default boot loader.

#### Description

This section covers how to modify the size of the HID boot loader. This can be useful when adding features to the boot loader that increase the size beyond the default example or if a version of the compiler is used that doesn't provide a sufficient level of optimizations to fit the default boot loader. The boot loaders provided by default assume full optimizations and may not work with compilers that don't have access to full optimizations.

Please read all of the other topics in the PIC24F boot loader section before proceeding in this topic. This topic will show where the modifications need to be made and how they need to match up, but will not describe what the sections that are being modified are or how they are implemented. This information is in previous sections.

There are three places that require corresponding changes: the boot loader linker script, the application linker script, and the boot loader code. You may wish to make copies of the original files so that you preserve the original non-modified files.

In the following examples we will be increasing the size of the boot loader from 0x1400 to 0x2400 in length.

First start by determining the size that you want the boot loader to be. This must be a multiple of an erase page. On many PIC24F devices there is a 512 instruction word erase page (1024 addresses per page). Please insure that the address you select for the end of the boot loader corresponds to a page boundary. There are several ways to determine the size of the boot loader application. Below is an example of one method.

- 1) Remove the boot loader linker script provided if it is causing link errors due either to optimization settings or added code.
- 2) Build the project
- 3) Open the memory window and find the last non-blank address in the program memory space.
- 4) Find the next flash erase page address after this address. Add any additional buffer room that you might want for future boot loader development, growth, or changes. Use this address as your new boot loader end address.

Once the end address of the boot loader is known, start by modifying the boot loader linker script program memory region to match that change. The boot loader linker script can either be found in the folder containing the boot loader project file or in a folder that is specified for boot loader linker scripts. In the linker script find the memory regions.

```
MEMORY
{
  data (a!xr) : ORIGIN = 0x800, LENGTH = 0x4000
  reset : ORIGIN = 0x0, LENGTH = 0x4
  ivt : ORIGIN = 0x4, LENGTH = 0xFC
  aivt : ORIGIN = 0x104, LENGTH = 0xFC
  program (xr) : ORIGIN = 0x400, LENGTH = 0x2000
  config4 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABF8, LENGTH = 0x2
  config3 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFA, LENGTH = 0x2
  config2 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFC, LENGTH = 0x2
  config1 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFE, LENGTH = 0x2
}
```

Change the LENGTH field of the program memory section to match the new length. Note that this is length and not the end address. To get the end address, please add LENGTH + ORIGIN.

Next, locate the \_\_APP\_IVT\_BASE definition in the linker file. Change this to equal the end address of your boot loader.

```
__APP_IVT_BASE = 0x2400;
```

Once the length of the boot loader is changed, you will need to make similar changes in the application boot loader linker script. The application boot loader linker scripts are typically found in a folder with the boot loader project. In the application linker file, locate the memory regions section. In this section there are three items that need to change.

1. The first is the ORIGIN of the app\_ivt section. This needs to be modified to match the new end address of the boot loader.
2. Second, move the ORIGIN of the program memory section to the ORIGIN of app\_ivt + the LENGTH of the app\_ivt section so that the program memory starts immediately after the app\_ivt section.
3. Last, change the LENGTH field of the program section so that it goes to the end of the program memory of the device. Remember that the LENGTH field is the length starting from the origin and not the end address. An easy way to make sure that this address is correct is by just subtracting off from the LENGTH the same amount that was added to the ORIGIN.

```
MEMORY
{
data (a!xr) : ORIGIN = 0x800, LENGTH = 0x4000
reset : ORIGIN = 0x0, LENGTH = 0x4
ivt : ORIGIN = 0x4, LENGTH = 0xFC
aivt : ORIGIN = 0x104, LENGTH = 0xFC
app_ivt : ORIGIN = 0x2400, LENGTH = 0x110
program (xr) : ORIGIN = 0x2510, LENGTH = 0x286E8
config4 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABF8, LENGTH = 0x2
config3 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFA, LENGTH = 0x2
config2 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFC, LENGTH = 0x2
config1 : ORIGIN = 0x2ABFE, LENGTH = 0x2
}
```

The final changes that needs to be made are in the boot loader code itself. Open up the boot loader project.

1. Find the ProgramMemStart definition in the main.c file. Change the start address to match the new address.

```
#define ProgramMemStart 0x00002400
```

2. Next find the #ifdef section that applies to the device that you are working with. This section will contain definitions used by the boot loader to determine what memory is should erase and re-write.

```
#if defined(__PIC24FJ256GB110__) || defined(__PIC24FJ256GB108__) ||
defined(__PIC24FJ256GB106__)
#define BeginPageToErase 5 //Bootloader and vectors occupy first six 1024 word (1536 bytes
due to 25% unimplemented bytes) pages
#define MaxPageToEraseNoConfigs 169 //Last full page of flash on the PIC24FJ256GB110, which
does not contain the flash configuration words.
#define MaxPageToEraseWithConfigs 170 //Page 170 contains the flash configurations words on
the PIC24FJ256GB110. Page 170 is also smaller than the rest of the (1536 byte) pages.
#define ProgramMemStopNoConfigs 0x0002A800 //Must be instruction word aligned address. This
address does not get updated, but the one just below it does:
//IE: If AddressToStopPopulating = 0x200, 0x1FF is the last programmed address (0x200 not
programmed)
#define ProgramMemStopWithConfigs 0x0002ABF8 //Must be instruction word aligned address.
This address does not get updated, but the one just below it does: IE: If
AddressToStopPopulating = 0x200, 0x1FF is the last programmed address (0x200 not programmed)
#define ConfigWordsStartAddress 0x0002ABF8 //0x2ABFA is start of CW3 on PIC24FJ256GB110
Family devices
#define ConfigWordsStopAddress 0x0002AC00
```

3. Modify the BeginPageToErase to indicate which page is the first page it should erase. This will be the ProgramMemStart/Page Size. In this case we are starting at 0x2400 and each page is 0x400 so this should now be 9.

```
#define BeginPageToErase 9
```

4. Locate the start of the main() function. In the first few lines of code there is a check to determine of the code should stay in the boot loader or jump to the application code. Change the address in the "goto" statement to match the new end of the boot loader and start of the application.

```
__asm__("goto 0x2400");
```

This should be all of the changes required in order to change the size of the HID boot loader.

Please note that since the boot loader and the application code are developed as two separate applications, they do not need to use the same optimization settings.

### 1.6.3.2.4 Flash Signature

Discusses what a flash signature is, why it is important, and how it is used.

#### Description

The flash signature feature is a robustness/recoverability feature, which is particularly useful for applications that are not using an I/O pin for entry into the bootloader mode, and instead rely on entry into the bootloader only by software from the application firmware image.

Consider the following situation:

1. User boots up microcontroller and begins running application image.
2. User runs special PC application (or something similar) that sends command to the application image, to switch into the bootloader mode.
3. Firmware executes a goto 0x001C jump straight into the bootloader mode (via software entry).
4. User starts an erase/program/verify sequence using the PC GUI program for bootloading new application firmware images.
5. The firmware erases some or all of the application flash contents.
6. Before the flash has been reprogrammed with the new values, the user unplugs the USB cable and/or AC power is lost to the entire system.

At this point, the application would normally be permanently “bricked” (unless the user plugs in a conventional ICSP programmer like the MPLAB ICD3), since the application image would be corrupt or missing, and that may have been the only method for receiving the command to jump into bootloader mode.

The above scenario can however be made recoverable, through the use of a “flash signature” process.

The flash signature is a special program memory word that gets programmed (only after the entire erase/program/verify process is completed successfully) with a magic/known value. This value, when present and correctly programmed at the magic address with the proper value, indicates to the bootloader code that the application firmware image is fully intact.

A typical (successful) bootloading sequence, that uses a flash signature, would be as follows:

1. User boots up microcontroller, which first checks the flash signature word is intact, with the correct/expected value.
  1. Assuming the value is correct, this implies that the application image is intact, and the code jumps into the application firmware run mode.
2. User runs special PC application or something that sends command to the application image, to switch into the bootloader mode.
3. Firmware executes a goto 0x001C jump straight into the bootloader mode.
4. User starts an erase/program/verify sequence using the PC GUI program for bootloading new firmware images.
5. The firmware begins erasing pages of flash memory. Special care is taken in the implementation to ensure that the flash signature word is located on the very first flash erase page that gets erased.
6. After total erasure of the application image is complete, the PC GUI sends commands to reprogram the entire application firmware space with the new image.
7. The PC GUI performs a full verify read back of the flash contents, and verifies that every address contains exactly the correct values from the hex file.
8. Assuming the entire “verify” operation is successful, the PC GUI sends a “sign flash” command to the bootloader firmware.
9. The bootloader firmware programs the special/magic known value into the special/fixed signature address.

At this point the bootloading process is complete. Upon rebooting the microcontroller, the bootup code checks the flash signature address to verify that the contents of that flash memory word contain the correct/expected flash signature value.

1. If the value matches the correct/expected value, this implies that the previous erase/program/verify sequence was fully successful, and therefore, it is safe to jump into and begin executing the application firmware image.
2. If the value does not match (ex: the flash signature word contains an invalid or erased value, like 0xFFFF), then the bootup code knows that the previous erase/program/verify sequence failed at some point, and therefore, the bootup code makes sure to stay in bootload mode, allowing the PC GUI application to connect to the firmware and perform another

attempt to erase/program/verify/sign flash sequence.

NOTE: In order for the flash signature feature to fully protect the application from bricking in the event of USB cable disconnect and/or lost AC power, it is necessary for the flash signature word to be located on the very first erase page during the erase sequence, and must also be the very last portion of the program memory that gets re-programmed, only after the rest of the program/verify sequence has been fully completed successfully.

In the current implementation, the flash signature word is located within the application program memory space, at a specific fixed address. For PIC18 devices, the default address for the flash signature word is 0x1006 (and 1007 for the MSB). For PIC16 devices, the address for the flash signature word is 0x900.

## 1.6.4 Device - CDC Basic Demo

This example shows how to create a basic CDC demo. CDC devices appear like COM ports on the host computer and be communicated with via regular terminal software.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/cdc_basic/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

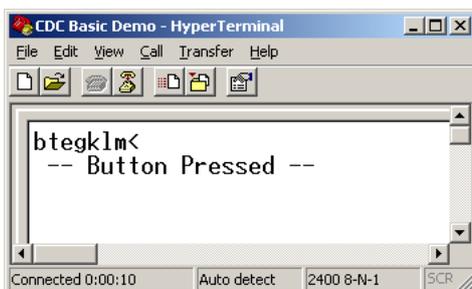
For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

This demo allows the device to appear like a serial (COM) port to the host. In order to run this demo first compile and program the target device. Please see the following Windows, Linux, and Macintosh sections for how to connect to the device on each of these systems.

Once connected to the device, there are two ways to run this example project. Typing a key in the terminal window will result in the device echoing that key plus one. So if the user presses "a", the device will echo "b". If the pushbutton is pressed the device will echo " -- Button Pressed -- " to the terminal window.

Note: Some terminal programs, like hyperterminal, require users to click the disconnect button before removing the device from the computer. Failing to do so may result in having to close and open the program again in order to reconnect to the device.

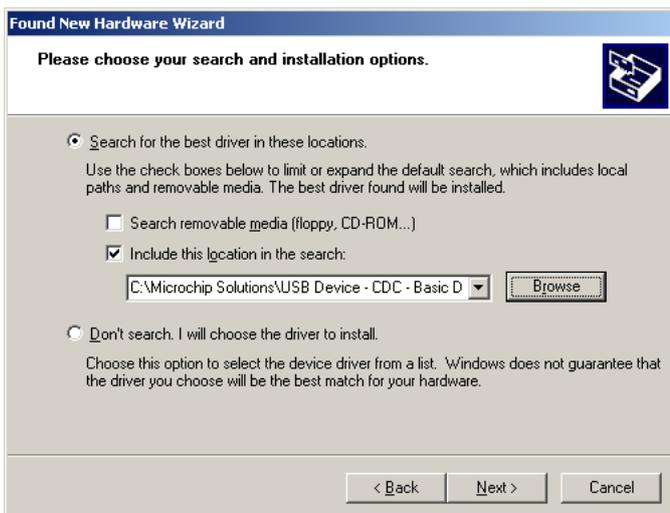


### 1.6.4.1 Windows

Attach the device to the host. If the host is a PC and this is the first time you have plugged this device into the computer then you may be asked for a .inf file.



Select the “Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)” option. Point to the “<Install Directory>USB Device - CDC – Basic Demo\inf\win2k\_winxp” directory.



Once the device is successfully installed, open up a terminal program, such as hyperterminal. Select the appropriate COM port. On most machines this will be COM5 or higher.

### 1.6.4.2 Linux

Upon plugging in a USB CDC ACM virtual COM port device into a Linux machine, the OS will automatically enumerate the USB device successfully, and a new object should show up as:

`/dev/ttyACMx`

(where ttyACMx is usually ttyACM0, but could be some other number such as ttyACM1, if some other ACM device is already attached to the machine).

To determine the exact number value of “x”, a procedure like follows can be used:

1. Open a console.
2. Make sure the USB device has been plugged into the machine.
3. Type: `lsusb`
4. You should see a line like: Bus 005 Device 004: ID 04d8:000a Microchip Technology, Inc.
5. Type: `modprobe cdc-acm vendor=0x04d8 product=0x000a`
6. Type: `dmesg`
7. You should get the status, showing the `ttyACMx` value, ex: `cdc_acm 5-1:1.0: ttyACM0: USB ACM device`

Once you know the `ttyACMx` value, applications and terminal programs (such as `GtkTerm`) can interface with the USB serial port by configuring them to connect up to the `/dev/ttyACMx` object.

### 1.6.4.3 Macintosh

Upon plugging in a USB CDC ACM virtual COM port device into a Mac OS X based machine, the OS should automatically enumerate the USB device successfully, and a new object should show up as:

```
/dev/tty.usbmodemXXXX
```

(where XXXX is some value, such as "3d11")

To run the example demo project: "USB\Device - CDC - Basic Demo" on a Mac OS X based machine, a procedure like follows can be used:

Open **TERMINAL**. This can be done by clicking **SPOTLIGHT** and searching for **TERMINAL**. Spotlight is the little magnifying glass in the upper right of the screen.

In Terminal, with the USB CDC ACM device NOT plugged in (yet), type:

```
ls /dev/tty.*
```

This will show all serial devices currently connected to the Mac. In the author's case, the following list appears:

```
/dev/tty.Bluetooth-Modem
```

```
/dev/tty.Bluetooth-PDA-Sync
```

```
/dev/tty.Rob-1
```

Now, plug the USB CDC device into a USB port of the Mac. Hit the UP cursor, which will bring the search command back ( `ls /dev/tty.*` ) and hit return. You should get the exact same list as before, but this time, with a new serial device. In the author's case, it was:

```
/dev/tty.usbmodem3d11
```

Once the complete name is known, the received serial port data can be displayed by typing:

```
screen /dev/tty.usbmodem3d11
```

(replace "3d11" in the above line with the value for your machine). If the microcontroller was programmed with the "USB\Device - CDC - Basic Demo", you can then press the user pushbutton, and the standard demo text should be printed to the screen (ex: "BUTTON PRESSED ---").

If the USB device is being operated as a USB to UART translator device (ex: using "USB\Device - CDC - Serial Emulator" firmware, the baud rate can be set by using syntax like follows:

```
screen -U /dev/tty.usbmodem3d11 38400
```

Where "usbmodem3d11" should be replaced with the actual value of the device, and "38400" should be replaced with actual desired baud rate (ex: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200, etc.). More details and usage information for `screen` can be found in the man page.

Note: Composite CDC + (any other interface) USB devices (such as the MCP2200, which is a composite CDC+HID device)

will only work on Mac OS X 10.7 (or later). Mac OS X 10.7 is the first OS X version that supports USB Interface Association Descriptors (IADs), which are needed when implementing composite USB devices with multiple interfaces, with at least one CDC-ACM function. Prior versions of Mac OS X did not support IADs, and therefore can only support non-composite, single function CDC-ACM devices.

---

## 1.6.5 Device - HID - Custom Demo

Demo showing how to create a device that can transfer custom application data without the need of a driver installation using the HID class.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_custom/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a HID class USB device, but uses the HID class for general purpose I/O operations. Typically, the HID class is used to implement human interface products, such as mice and keyboards. The HID protocol is however quite flexible, and can be adapted and used to send/receive general purpose data to/from a USB device. Using the HID class for general purpose I/O operations is quite advantageous, in that it does not require any kind of custom driver installation process. HID class drivers are already provided by and are distributed with common operating systems. Therefore, upon plugging in a HID class device into a typical computer system, no user installation of drivers is required, the installation is fully automatic.

HID devices primarily communicate through one interrupt IN endpoint and one interrupt OUT endpoint. In most applications, this effectively limits the maximum achievable bandwidth for full speed HID devices to 64kBytes/s of IN traffic, and 64kBytes/s of OUT traffic (64kB/s, but effectively “full duplex”).

The `GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe` program, and the associated firmware demonstrate how to use the HID protocol for basic general purpose USB data transfer. To make the PC source code as easy to understand as possible, the demo has deliberately been made simple, and only sends/receives small amounts of data.

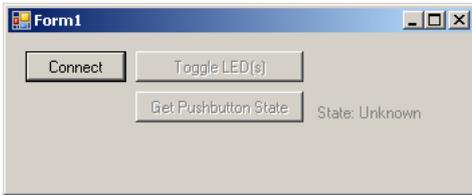
Before you can run the `GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe` executable, you will need to have the Microsoft® .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package (later versions probably okay, but not tested) installed on your computer. Programs which were built in the Visual Studio® .NET languages require the .NET redistributable package in order to run. The redistributable package can be freely downloaded from Microsoft’s website. Users of Windows Vista® operating systems will not need to install the .NET framework, as it comes pre-installed as part of the operating system.

The source code for `GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe` file was created in Microsoft Visual C++® 2005 Express Edition. The source code can be found in the “<Install Directory>\ USB Device - HID - Custom Demos\Generic HID - Simple Demo - PC Software” directory. Microsoft currently distributes Visual C++ 2005 Express Edition for free, and can be downloaded from Microsoft’s website. When downloading Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 Express Edition, also make sure to download and install the Platform SDK, and follow Microsoft’s instructions for integrating it with the development environment.

It is not necessary to install either Microsoft Visual C++ 2005, or the Platform SDK in order to begin using the

GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe program. These are only required if the source code will be modified or compiled.

To launch the application, simply double click on the executable “GenericHIDSimpleDemo.exe” in the “<Install Directory>\USB Device - HID - Custom Demos” directory. A window like that shown below should appear:



If instead of this window, an error message pops up while trying to launch the application, it is likely the Microsoft .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package has not yet been installed. Please install it and try again.

In order to begin sending/receiving packets to the device, you must first find and “connect” to the device. As configured by default, the application is looking for HID class USB devices with VID = 0x04D8 and PID = 0x003F. The device descriptor in the firmware project meant to be used with this demo uses the same VID/PID. If you plug in a USB device programmed with the correct precompiled .hex file, and hit the “Connect” button, the other pushbuttons should become enabled. If hitting the connect button has no effect, it is likely the USB device is either not connected, or has not been programmed with the correct firmware.

Hitting the Toggle LED(s) should send a single packet of general purpose generic data to the HID class USB peripheral device. The data will arrive on the interrupt OUT endpoint. The firmware has been configured to receive this generic data packet, parse the packet looking for the “Toggle LED(s)” command, and should respond appropriately by controlling the LED(s) on the demo board.

The “Get Pushbutton State” button will send one packet of data over the USB to the peripheral device (to the interrupt OUT endpoint) requesting the current pushbutton state. The firmware will process the received Get Pushbutton State command, and will prepare an appropriate response packet depending upon the pushbutton state.

The PC then requests a packet of data from the device (which will be taken from the interrupt IN endpoint). Once the PC application receives the response packet, it will update the pushbutton state label.

Try experimenting with the application by holding down the appropriate pushbutton on the demo board, and then simultaneously clicking on the “Get Pushbutton State” button. Then try to repeat the process, but this time without holding down the pushbutton on the demo board.

To make for a more fluid and gratifying end user experience, a real USB application would probably want to launch a separate thread to periodically poll the pushbutton state, so as to get updates regularly. This is not done in this simple demo, so as to avoid cluttering the PC application project with source code that is not related to USB communication.

### Running the demo on an Android v3.1+ device

There are two main ways to get the example application on to the target Android device: the Android Market and by compiling the source code.

1. The demo application can be downloaded from Microchip’s Android Marketplace page:  
<https://market.android.com/developer?pub=Microchip+Technology+Inc>



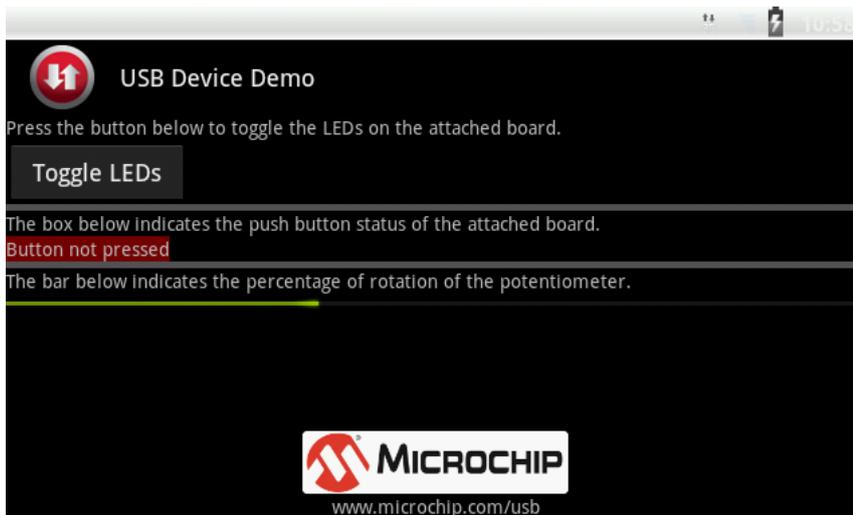
2. The source code for this demo is also provided in the demo project folder. For more information about how to build and load Android applications, please refer to the following pages:

- <http://developer.android.com/index.html>
- <http://developer.android.com/sdk/index.html>
- <http://developer.android.com/sdk/installing.html>

While there are no devices attached, the Android application will indicate that no devices are attached.



When the device is attached, the an alternative screen will allow various control/status features with the hardware on the board.



## 1.6.6 Device - HID - Digitizer Demos

These are examples of HID digitizers. There are single, and various multi-point touch examples.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_digitizer/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

These demos use the selected hardware platform as a USB HID class digitizer device. The Single-Touch demo is a HID class pen digitizer demo, which emulates a pen digitizer touch screen capable of sensing a single contact point. The Multi-Touch demo emulates a touch sensitive touch screen, capable of sensing two simultaneous contact points. The multi-touch demo can potentially be expanded to support additional simultaneous contacts (by modifying the HID report descriptor), however, the standard built in gestures that are recognized by the Microsoft Windows 7 platform only use one or two contacts.

To use the Single-Touch pen digitizer demo, plug the demo board into a free USB port on a Windows Vista or Windows 7 machine. The device should automatically enumerate as a HID class pen digitizer device, and certain additional functions and capabilities built into the operating system will become activated. No manual USB driver installation is necessary, as the built in HID class drivers are used for this device.

To use the Multi-Touch digitizer demo, plug the demo board into a free USB port on a Windows 7 machine. Windows 7 has significantly more "Windows Touch" capabilities than Vista. Although the device will enumerate and provide limited functionality on Windows Vista, multi-touch gestures will not be recognized unless run on Windows 7.

Since the standard demo boards that these demos are meant to be run on do not have an actual touch sensitive contact

area, the firmware demos emulate the data that would be generated by a real touch screen. Both demo projects use a single user pushbutton. By pressing the button, the firmware will send a flurry of USB packets to the host, which contain contact position data that is meant to mimic an actual “gesture” of various types. Each subsequent press of the pushbutton will advance the internal state machine, and cause the firmware to send a gesture to the PC.

To use the demos, it is best to have Microsoft Internet Explorer installed on the machine (although some demo functions can be observed using the pen flick practice area available from the control panel). The latest versions of Internet Explorer (when run on the proper OS: preferably Windows 7, but some function on Windows Vista) supports recognition and use of certain basic gestures, such as “back”, “forward”, as well as certain scroll and zoom operations.

Other Info: Windows 7 adds support for Windows messages such as “WM\_GESTURE” and “WM\_TOUCH”. These messages can be used to help build customized “touch enabled” PC applications. Documentation for these messages can be found in MSDN.

The following Microsoft developer blog contains useful additional information relating to Windows Touch:

<http://blogs.msdn.com/e7/archive/2009/03/25/touching-windows-7.aspx>

---

## 1.6.7 Device - HID - Joystick Demo

This demo shows how to create a USB joystick.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

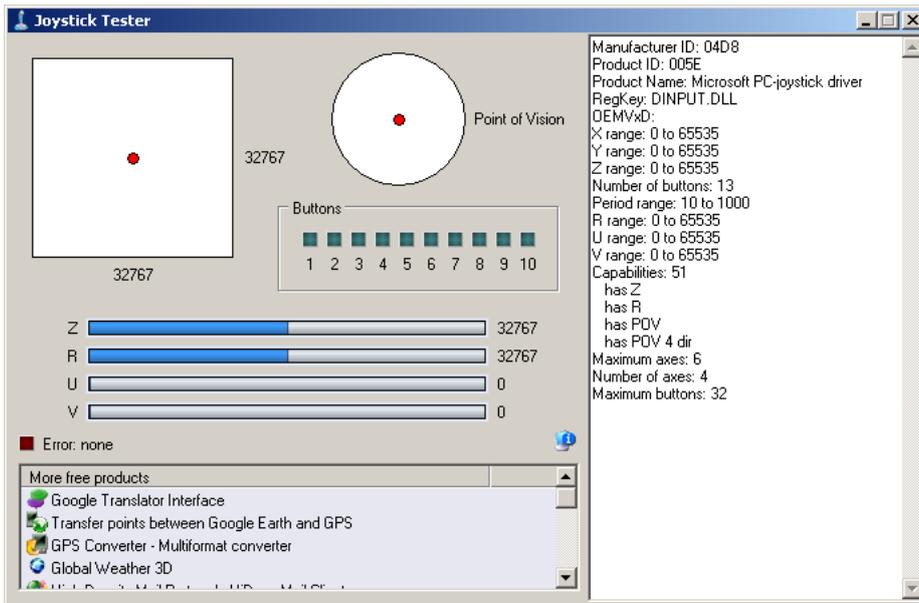
Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_joystick/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

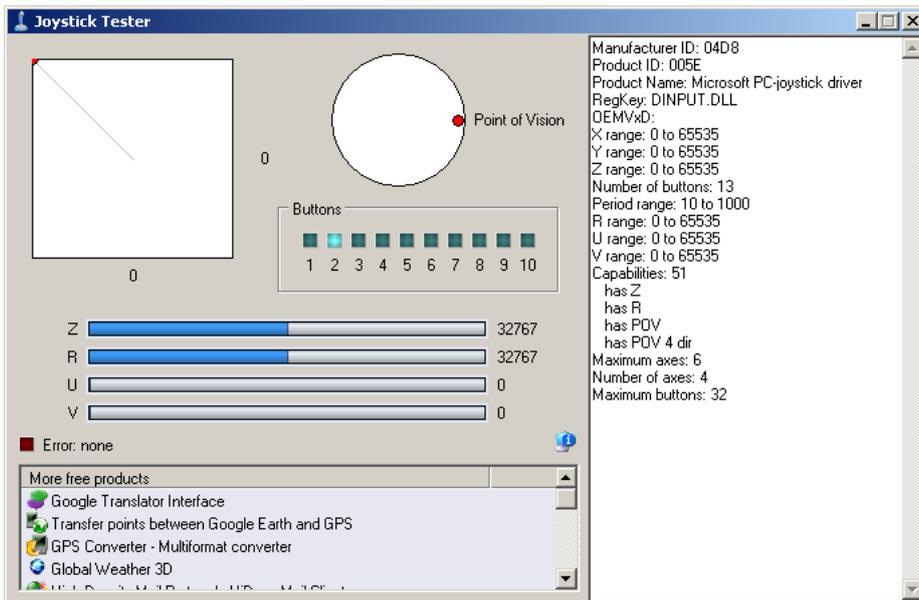
#### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a USB Joystick. To test the joystick feature, open the `JoystickTester.exe` in the demo project folder. This will launch a window as seen below:



Pressing the button will cause the device to to:

- Indicate that the “x” button is pressed, but none others;
- Move the hat switch to the "east" position;
- Move the X and Y coordinates to the their extreme values;



## 1.6.8 Device - CDC - Serial Emulator

This demo shows how to use the CDC class to create a USB to UART bridge device. This demo is very similar to the Device - CDC Basic Demo, with the following differences:

1. The CDC serial emulator firmware enables the hardware UART of the microcontroller and forwards any received UART RX bytes to the host terminal program through the virtual COMx port. Similarly, any bytes received from the host terminal program over the COMx port get forwarded out the hardware UART TX microcontroller pin. This provides a bi-directional USB to UART bridge functionality.

- The CDC serial emulator firmware uses SET\_LINE\_CODING information to update the hardware UART baud rate setting. The host automatically sends one or more SET\_LINE\_CODING requests upon the user opening the COMx port or changing the COMx port baud rate (or other data encoding settings) from the terminal program. This allows the host software to control the hardware UART's baud rate value.

The CDC serial emulator demo uses the same USB drivers that are needed for the CDC Basic Demo. Upon plugging in a USB CDC serial emulator device, and installing any necessary drivers (for Windows, for Mac/Linux OSes, the drivers are normally automatically installed and come with the OS), the device will produce a COMx port (on Windows, on Mac a /dev/tty.usbmodemXXXX object, and on a Linux machine a /dev/ttyACMx object) that PC applications such as serial terminal programs can connect to.

See the Device - CDC Basic Demo information for more details.

---

## 1.6.9 Device - HID - Keyboard Demo

This example shows how to create a USB keyboard and how to send data to the host.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the io\_mapping.h file in the demo folder under the system\_config folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an io\_mapping.h file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_keyboard/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a USB keyboard. Before pressing the button, select a window in which it is safe to type text freely. Pressing the button will cause the device to print a character on the screen. The characters will print a new letter/number for each press. If a key is held, it will emulate as if the key was held on a keyboard. Pressing the CapsLock button on the host PC will cause an LED to light on the board.

---

## 1.6.10 Device - HID - Mouse Demo

This demo is a simple mouse demo that causes the mouse to move in a circle on the screen.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these

components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_mouse/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a USB mouse. Before connecting the board to the computer through the USB cable please be aware that the device will start moving the mouse cursor around on the computer. There are two ways to stop the device from making the cursor to continue to move. The first way is to disconnect the device from the computer. The second is to press the correct button on the hardware platform. Pressing the button again will cause the mouse cursor to start moving in a circle again.

---

## 1.6.11 Device - HID - Uninterruptible Power Supply

This demo shows how to create a Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) device.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/hid_ups/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a HID class USB Uninterruptible power supply (UPS). When the device is plugged into a computer, the computer should have an indicator showing that it is connected to a UPS and it should show a charge percentage of the battery of the UPS. This demo uses a fixed time derived from the USB start of frame (SOF) packets to emulate the battery charging by sending updates about the battery status to the computer.

Holding the specified button on the demo board puts the UPS in a emulated discharge state, as if the main power has been removed/failed. As time progresses the board sends updated information about the charge left on the battery. As the battery approaches the minimum threshold, the UPS will send a command to shut down the computer. Release the button at any point of time to simulate a reconnection of the main power supply and to emulate the UPS returning to a charging state.

---

## 1.6.12 Device - Mass Storage - Internal Flash Demo

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as an drive on the computer using the internal flash of the device as the drive storage media.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/msd_internal_flash/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a drive on the computer using the internal flash of the device as the drive storage media. Connect the hardware platform to a computer through a USB cable.

The device should appear as a new drive on the computer named "Drive Name". The volume label or file information can be changed in the `Files.c` file located in the project directory.

## 1.6.12.1 Troubleshooting

**Issue 1:** The device appears correctly in the device manager, but no new drive letters appear on a Windows® operating system based machine.

**Solution:** See Microsoft knowledge base article 297694: <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/297694>

If there is a drive letter conflict (ex: because a network drive has been mapped to a letter low in the alphabet), on some operating systems the newly attached USB drive may not appear. If this occurs, either obtain the hotfix from Microsoft, or remap the conflicting mapped network drive to a letter at the end of the alphabet (ex: Z:).

**Issue 2:** The device enumerates correctly and I can access the new drive. Even though the drive is not full yet, when I try to write to the drive, I get an error message something like, "Cannot copy (some name): The directory or file cannot be created."

**Solution:** In order to copy new files onto the drive volume, both the file contents themselves must be copied to the drive, and the FAT table must also be updated in order to accommodate the new file name and path. Even if the drive has plenty of free space available, the FAT table may have reached its limit. In order to keep the default demos small, the FAT table is configured to be only 512 bytes long. This is not very large, and can easily be exceeded, especially if the files on the drive have long file names. In order to use the remaining space available on the drive, it is recommended to keep the individual file names as short as possible to minimize their size in the FAT table. Alternatively, the firmware can be modified so that the FAT table is larger, and therefore able to accommodate more file name and path characters.

**Issue 3:** When I try to format the drive, I get an error message and the drive does not get formatted properly.

**Solution:** By default, common Windows based operating systems will try to place a large FAT table on the newly formatted disk (larger than the default 512 bytes of the demo firmware). If the FAT table is larger than the total drive space, the drive cannot be formatted. In order to successfully format the drive, an alternative method of formatting will be needed that places a smaller FAT table on the drive. For example, the drive can be effectively reformatted by reprogramming the microcontroller with the original HEX file. Alternatively, if the firmware is modified to increase the total drive space, the Windows operating system managed FAT table may be able to fit. Unfortunately, this will shrink the effective drive size, making less of it available for actual file data.

**Issue 4:** When I format the drive, the drive size shrinks.

**Solution:** See the solution to issue #3 above.

## 1.6.13 Device - Mass Storage - SD Card Reader

This demo shows how to implement a simple SD card reader

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

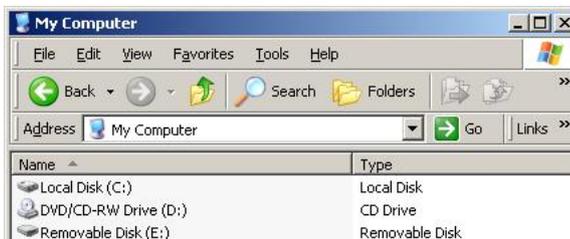
```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/msd_sd_card_reader/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

Connect the hardware platform to a computer through a USB cable. If the device was attached to the computer while the data logging occurred, you may need to remove the SD card from the card slot or disconnect and reconnect the device from the computer for the files to appear. Most computers are not expecting the files on an attached drive to change if they are not making the change so some operating systems will not look for additional drive changes.

The device should appear as a new drive on the computer named "Removable Drive".



If no SD Card is inserted in the SD Card PICTail Plus, the following dialog will pop-up.



Once a compatible card is inserted in the card reader, files can be read, deleted, and manipulated like any other drive on the computer.

## 1.6.14 Device - Vendor Driver Basic Demo

This demo creates a simple vendor class device using the libusb and WinUSB drivers. It includes PC/host software examples as well.

## Description

### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/vendor_basic/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

## 1.6.14.1 Windows

Running the demo on a Windows machine.

### Description

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a Libusb class USB device. Libusb-Win32 is a USB Library for the Windows operating systems. The library allows user space applications to access any USB device on Windows in a generic way without writing any line of kernel driver code. This driver allows users to have access to interrupt, bulk, and control transfers directly.

The SimpleLibUSBDemo.exe program and the associated firmware demonstrate how to use the Libusb device drivers for basic general purpose USB data transfer. To make the PC source code as easy to understand as possible, the demo has deliberately been made simple, and only sends/receives small amounts of data.

Before you can run the SimpleLibUSBDemo.exe executable, you will need to have the Microsoft® .NET Framework Version 3.5 Redistributable Package (later versions probably okay, but not tested) installed on your computer. Programs which were built in the Visual Studio® .NET languages require the .NET redistributable package in order to run. The redistributable package can be freely downloaded from Microsoft's website. Users of Windows Vista® operating systems will not need to install the .NET framework, as it comes pre-installed as part of the operating system.

The source code for SimpleLibUSBDemo.exe file was created in Microsoft Visual C++® 2008 Express Edition. The source code can be found in the "<Install Directory>\ USB Device - Libusb - Generic Driver Demo\ Libusb Simple Demo - Windows Application\ Libusb Simple Demo - PC Application - MS VC++ 2008 Express" directory. Microsoft currently distributes Visual C++ 2008 Express Edition for free, and can be downloaded from Microsoft's website.

To launch the application, simply double click on the executable "SimpleLibusbDemo.exe" in the "<Install Directory>\USB Device - Libusb - Generic Driver Demo\Windows Application" directory. A window like that shown below should appear:



If instead of this window, an error message pops up while trying to launch the application, it is likely the Microsoft .NET Framework Version 3.5 Redistributable Package has not yet been installed. Please install it and try again.

In order to begin sending/receiving packets to the device, you must first find and "connect" to the device. As configured by

default, the application is looking for USB devices with VID = 0x04D8 and PID = 0x0204. The device descriptor in the firmware project meant to be used with this demo uses the same VID/PID. To run the demo program the USB device with the correct precompiled .hex file. If you are connecting the device for the first time, Windows pops up a window asking you to install the driver for the device. When asked for the driver point it to the inf file provided along with the demo. Windows takes while to install the driver for the USB device that is just plugged in. Open the Device manager and ensure that the USB device is listed under the 'Libusb Demo Devices'. Once the driver is installed hit the "Connect" button, the other pushbuttons should become enabled. If hitting the connect button has no effect, it is likely the USB device is either not connected, or has not been programmed with the correct firmware.

If a different VID/PID combination from the default is desired, then the descriptors in the firmware must be changed as well as the inf file. The easiest way to change the inf file is to use the utility provided with the LibUSB download for windows on the LibUSB [website](#). This utility can create a new inf file based on a connected device. So make sure to change the VID/PID combination first in the firmware, connect the device, and then run the inf file creator utility. After completing the utility, a new signed driver with inf file is created.

Once the driver is installed hit the "Connect" button, the other pushbuttons should become enabled. If hitting the connect button has no effect, it is likely the USB device is either not connected, or has not been programmed with the correct firmware.

Hitting the Toggle LED(s) should send a single packet of general purpose generic data to the Custom class USB peripheral device. The data will arrive on the Bulk OUT endpoint. The firmware has been configured to receive this generic data packet, parse the packet looking for the "Toggle LED(s)" command, and should respond appropriately by controlling the LED(s) on the demo board.

The "Get Pushbutton State" button will send one packet of data over the USB to the peripheral device (to the Bulk OUT endpoint) requesting the current pushbutton state. The firmware will process the received Get Pushbutton State command, and will prepare an appropriate response packet depending upon the pushbutton state.

The PC then requests a packet of data from the device (which will be taken from the Bulk IN endpoint). Once the PC application receives the response packet, it will update the pushbutton state label.

Try experimenting with the application by holding down the appropriate pushbutton on the demo board, and then simultaneously clicking on the "Get Pushbutton State" button. Then try to repeat the process, but this time without holding down the pushbutton on the demo board.

To make for a more fluid and gratifying end user experience, a real USB application would probably want to launch a separate thread to periodically poll the pushbutton state, so as to get updates regularly. This is not done in this simple demo, so as to avoid cluttering the PC application project with source code that is not related to USB communication.

In order to build the application, copy the file <libusb-win32 unzipped folder>\libusb-win32-device-bin-0.1.12.1\lib\msvc\libusb.lib and paste to 'lib' folder of the VC++. Also copy the file

<libusb-win32 unzipped folder>\libusb-win32-device-bin-0.1.12.1\include\usb.h and paste to the "<Install Directory>\USB Device - Libusb - Generic Driver Demo\Windows Application\Microsoft VC++ 2008 Express\SimpleLibusbDemo' folder.

## 1.6.14.2 Linux

Running the demo on a Linux machine.

### Description

The SimpleLibUSB Demo program and the associated firmware demonstrate how to use the Libusb device drivers for basic general purpose USB data transfer. To make the PC source code as easy to understand as possible, the demo has deliberately been made simple, and only sends/receives small amounts of data.

Before you can run the SimpleLibUSB Demo executable, you will need to have the libusb 0.1 driver installed on your computer. The libusb can be downloaded from [sourceforge.net](http://sourceforge.net).

The source code for SimpleLibUSB Demo.exe file was created using QT3 Designer. The source code can be found in the

"<Install Directory>\ USB Device - Libusb - Generic Driver Demo\Libusb Simple Demo - Linux Application\ Libusb Simple Demo - Linux Application -QT3" directory.

To launch the application, open the Terminal and navigate to the "<Install Directory>\USB Device - LibUSB - Generic Driver Demo\Linux Application" directory and execute the following commands

1. `chmod a+x SimpleLibusbDemo_Linux` (This command gives executable right to the file on this Linux computer)
2. `sudo ./SimpleLibusbDemo_Linux`.

Enter the Super user password when requested. A window like that shown below should appear:



In order to begin sending/receiving packets to the device, you must first find and "connect" to the device. As configured by default, the application is looking for USB devices with VID = 0x04D8 and PID = 0x0204. The device descriptor in the firmware project meant to be used with this demo uses the same VID/PID. To run the demo program the USB device with the correct precompiled .hex file. If you are connecting the device for the first time, Windows pops up a window asking you to install the driver for the device. When asked for the driver point it to the inf file provided along with the demo. Windows takes while to install the driver for the USB device that is just plugged in. Open the Device manager and ensure that the USB device is listed under the 'Libusb Demo Devices'. Once the driver is installed hit the "Connect" button, the other pushbuttons should become enabled. If hitting the connect button has no effect, it is likely the USB device is either not connected, or has not been programmed with the correct firmware.

Hitting the Toggle LED(s) should send a single packet of general purpose generic data to the Custom class USB peripheral device. The data will arrive on the Bulk OUT endpoint. The firmware has been configured to receive this generic data packet, parse the packet looking for the "Toggle LED(s)" command, and should respond appropriately by controlling the LED(s) on the demo board.

The "Get Pushbutton State" button will send one packet of data over the USB to the peripheral device (to the Bulk OUT endpoint) requesting the current pushbutton state. The firmware will process the received Get Pushbutton State command, and will prepare an appropriate response packet depending upon the pushbutton state.

The PC then requests a packet of data from the device (which will be taken from the Bulk IN endpoint). Once the PC application receives the response packet, it will update the pushbutton state label.

Try experimenting with the application by holding down the appropriate pushbutton on the demo board, and then simultaneously clicking on the "Get Pushbutton State" button. Then try to repeat the process, but this time without holding down the pushbutton on the demo board.

To make for a more fluid and gratifying end user experience, a real USB application would probably want to launch a separate thread to periodically poll the pushbutton state, so as to get updates regularly. This is not done in this simple demo, so as to avoid cluttering the PC application project with source code that is not related to USB communication.

In order to build the application navigate to the "<Install Directory>\USB Device - LibUSB - Generic Driver Demo\Linux Application\Qt3" directory and execute the command "make".

### 1.6.14.3 Android 3.1+

Running the demo on an Android device.

#### Description

There are two main ways to get the example application on to the target Android device: the Android Market and by compiling the source code.

1. The demo application can be downloaded from Microchip's Android Marketplace page:  
<https://market.android.com/developer?pub=Microchip+Technology+Inc>

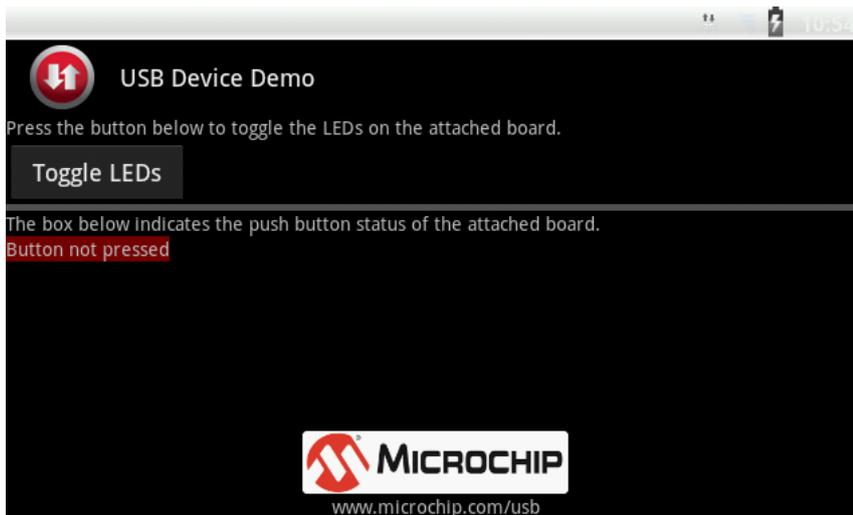


2. The source code for this demo is also provided in the demo project folder. For more information about how to build and load Android applications, please refer to the following pages:
  - <http://developer.android.com/index.html>
  - <http://developer.android.com/sdk/index.html>
  - <http://developer.android.com/sdk/installing.html>

While there are no devices attached, the Android application will indicate that no devices are attached.



When the device is attached, the an alternative screen will allow various control/status features with the hardware on the board.



## 1.6.15 Device - Vendor High Bandwidth Demo

This demo shows how to get (and measures) the maximum throughput using a vendor class driver.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC18F46J50 PIM this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/device/vendor_throughput_test/firmware/src/system_config/pic18f46j50_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

#### Demo Operation

This demo uses the selected hardware platform as a WinUSB class USB device. WinUSB is a vendor specific driver produced by Microsoft for use with Windows® XP service pack 2 and later operating systems. This driver allows users to have access to interrupt, bulk, and control transfers directly.

The HighBandwidthWinUSB.exe program, and the associated firmware demonstrate how to use the WinUSB device drivers for USB Bulk data transfers. Total Time taken to transmit the data & data transmission rate (Bytes/Sec) is shown in the GUI once the data transmission of 9,60,000 bytes is completed from the PC side.

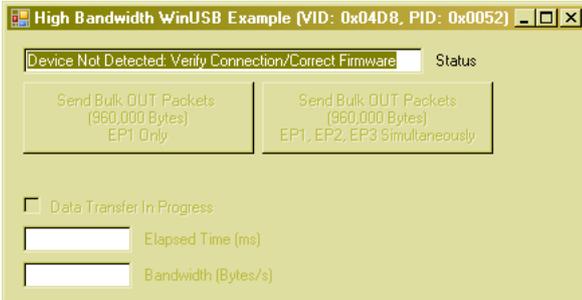
Before you can run the HighBandwidthWinUSB.exe executable, you will need to have the Microsoft® .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package (later versions probably okay, but not tested) installed on your computer. Programs which were built in the Visual Studio® .NET languages require the .NET redistributable package in order to run. The redistributable package can be freely downloaded from Microsoft's website. Users of Windows Vista® operating systems will not need to install the .NET framework, as it comes pre-installed as part of the operating system.

The source code for HighBandwidthWinUSB.exe file was created in Microsoft Visual C++® 2005 Express Edition. The source code can be found in the "<Install Directory>\ USB Device - WinUSB - High Bandwidth DemoWinUSB High Bandwidth Demo - PC Application - MS VC++ 2005 Express" directory. Microsoft currently distributes Visual C++ 2005

Express Edition for free, and can be downloaded from Microsoft’s website. When downloading Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 Express Edition, also make sure to download and install the Platform SDK, and follow Microsoft’s instructions for integrating it with the development environment.

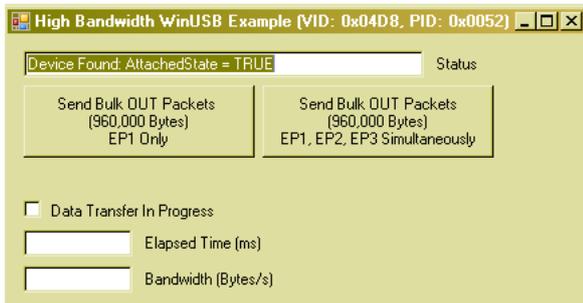
It is not necessary to install either Microsoft Visual C++ 2005, or the Platform SDK in order to begin using the HighBandwidthWinUSB.exe program. These are only required if the source code will be modified or compiled.

To launch the application, simply double click on the executable “HighBandwidthWinUSB.exe” in the “<Install Directory>\USB Device - WinUSB - High Bandwidth Demo” directory. A window like that shown below should appear:



If instead of this window, an error message pops up while trying to launch the application, it is likely the Microsoft .NET Framework Version 2.0 Redistributable Package has not yet been installed. Please install it and try again.

As configured by default, the application is looking for USB devices with VID = 0x04D8 and PID = 0x0052. The device descriptor in the firmware project meant to be used with this demo uses the same VID/PID. Once the device flashed with corresponding firmware is connected to the PC, the below window appears:



Hitting the “Send Bulk OUT Packets” tab will transmit 960,000 bytes of data on the USB bus to the corresponding endpoints ( EP1 Only or EP1,EP2, EP3 Simultaneously depending upon the button pressed in the GUI). Elapsed Time (ms) & Bandwidth (Bytes/Sec) are displayed in the GUI once the data transmission is complete.

---

## 1.6.16 Host - CDC Serial Demo

This demo shows how to interface to USB CDC devices. This typically includes many cell phone models and USB modems.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the io\_mapping.h file in

the demo folder under the system\_config folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an io\_mapping.h file in it. For example, for the PIC24FJ256GB110 PIM for the Explorer 16, this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/host/cdc_basic/firmware/src/system_config/exp16/pic24fj256gb110_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

This is a simple demo to show how an embedded CDC host can be implemented. When a CDC-RS232 device is attached to the host, the demo host application polls for input data from the device and displays the data on the LCD mounted on the explorer 16 board.

---

## 1.6.17 Host - HID - Keyboard Demo

This demo shows how to interface to USB keyboards. Many USB barcode scanners also appear as a USB keyboard.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the io\_mapping.h file in the demo folder under the system\_config folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an io\_mapping.h file in it. For example, for the PIC24FJ256GB110 PIM for the Explorer 16, this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/host/hid_keyboard/firmware/src/system_config/exp16/pic24fj256gb110_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

When the device is programmed correctly with the HID host keyboard application the LCD screen on the Explorer 16 should read "Device Detached" if there is no device attached to the USB port. At this point plug in a USB keyboard, bar code scanner that supports HID keyboard emulation, or magnetic card reader that supports HID keyboard emulation. Type a key on the keyboard. This character should be printed on the LCD screen. Pressing the "ESC" key will clear the screen and return the cursor to the first position.

#### Limitations:

- Neither compound nor composite devices are supported. Some keyboards are either compound or composite.
- The "~" prints as an arrow character instead ("~>"). This is an effect of the LCD screen on the Explorer 16. The ascii character for "~" is remapped in the LCD controller.
- The "\" prints as a "¥" character instead. This is an effect of the LCD screen on the Explorer 16. The ascii character for "\" is remapped in the LCD controller.
- Backspace and arrow keys may have issues on Explorer 16 boards with certain LCD modules

---

## 1.6.18 Host - HID - Mouse Demo

This demo shows how to read the basic position and button information from a standard USB mouse.

## Description

### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC24FJ256GB110 PIM for the Explorer 16, this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/host/hid_mouse/firmware/src/system_config/exp16/pic24fj256gb110_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

When a device is not attached, the LCD screen indicates to attach a device. When a device is attached, the X/Y coordinates, and left/right mouse button information should be shown on the LCD screen. Some screens don't have enough space to show all of this information and might be truncated. Other boards might not have a screen or the demo has not been ported yet to use their screen. These boards likely print the messages to RAM, which can be viewed using a debugger after the device has been attached.

#### Limitations:

- Composite and compound device are not currently supported. These devices may not enumerate or operate correctly. Devices with built in USB hubs are a compound device. Many multimedia devices with mouse as one of the interface are composite devices.

---

## 1.6.19 Host - Mass Storage - Thumb Drive Data Logger

## Description

### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

### Demo Board I/O Mapping

Each demo board has a different number of push buttons, LEDs, and other features with various different names for these components. To determine which board features are used for which demo features, please refer to the `io_mapping.h` file in the demo folder under the `system_config` folder. Each demo board will have a corresponding folder with an `io_mapping.h` file in it. For example, for the PIC24FJ256GB110 PIM for the Explorer 16, this would be the following file:

```
<install_directory>/apps/usb/host/msd_data_logger/firmware/src/system_config/exp16/pic24fj256gb110_pim/io_mapping.h
```

For more information about each demo board, please refer to the Demo Board Information section.

### Demo Operation

This demo will cause the host to start logging the potentiometer data to a thumb drive once the drive is plugged into the board. An LED will blink indicating that the data is being logged to the file. Press the pushbutton on the board to stop the logging to the file. If the drive has an activity LED, wait for it to stop blinking. If it doesn't, wait a few seconds for the write to complete before removing the drive.

NOTE: remove the drive without stopping the write first by pressing the button can result in corrupted or missing data.

## 1.6.20 Host - Mass Storage (MSD) - Simple Demo

This demo is a simple example of how to write a file to a USB thumb drive.

### Description

#### Supported Demo Boards

The matrix of which demos are supported on a specific board can be found in the Release Notes demo board support section. Verify that the board you wish to use will work with this demo. This table also describes some of the limitations that the board might have while running this demo.

#### Demo Operation

This demo is a simple example of how to write files to a thumb drive through the Microchip MDD file system library. When a thumb drive is plugged in the code will create a text file on the drive. This process only takes a brief moment. Connect the thumb drive to the board and wait for a couple of seconds. If the drive has an activity LED on it, wait for , remove the drive and plug it back into a computer. There should be an additional text file created named "test.txt".

#### Limitations:

- Due to the size of this demo, optimizations must be enabled in the compiler in order for this demo to work on the certain hardware platforms. Optimizations are not available on all versions of the compilers.

## 1.6.21 Configuring the Demo

### Low Pin Count USB Development Kit

1. Short J14 between pins 2 and 3. This will power the board from the USB port.
2. Make sure that J12 is left open.

### PICDEM FS USB:

- No board specific settings are required

### PIC18 Explorer Based Demos

For all of the PIC18 Explorer based demo boards, please follow the following instructions:

1. Set switch S4 to the "ICE" position
2. Follow any processor specific instructions below. All instructions apply to the PIM unless otherwise stated:
  - *PIC18F46J50 Plug-In-Module:*
    1. Short JP2 such that the "R" and the "U" options are shorted together.
    2. Short JP3. This allows the demo board to be powered through the USB bus power.
  - *PIC18F47J53 Plug-In-Module:*
    1. Short JP2 such that the "R" and the "U" options are shorted together.
    2. Short JP3. This allows the demo board to be powered through the USB bus power.
  - *PIC18F87J50 Plug-In-Module:*
    1. Short JP1 such that the "R" and the "U" options are shorted together.
    2. Short JP4. This allows the demo board to be powered through the USB bus power.

3. Short JP5. This enabled the LED operation on the board.

#### Explorer 16 Based Demos

For all of the Explorer 16-based demo boards, please follow the following instructions

1. Connect the USB PICTail+ Daughter Board to the Explorer 16.
2. Short JP1 on the USB PICTail+ board
3. Open JP2, JP3, and JP4 on the USB PICTail+ board
4. Make sure that S2 on the Explorer 16 is switched to the "PIM" setting.
5. Short JP2 on the Explorer 16 to enable the LEDs.
6. Follow any processor specific instructions below. All instructions apply to the PIM unless otherwise stated:
  - *PIC24FJ64GB004 PIM*
    1. Set switch S1 to the "PGX1" setting
    2. Short J1 pin 1 (marked "POT") to the center pin
    3. Short J2 pin 1 (marked "Temp") to the center pin
    4. Short J3 pin 1 (marked "EEPROM CS") to the center pin
  - *PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM*
    1. Short JP1 "U" option to the center pin
    2. Short JP2 "U" option to the center pin
    3. Short JP3 "U" option to the center pin
    4. Short JP4
  - *PIC24EP512GU810 PIM*
    1. Short pins 2 and 3 on jumpers J1, J2, J3, J4, and J5
    2. Open jumpers J6, J7, J8, J9, and J10
  - *dsPIC33EP512MU810 PIM*
    1. Short pins 2 and 3 on jumpers J1, J2, J3, J4, and J5
    2. Open jumpers J6, J7, J8, J9, and J10
  - *PIC32MX795F512L PIM*
    1. Open J10
    2. Short pins 1 (marked "USB") and pin 2 (center) of jumpers J1 and J2

---

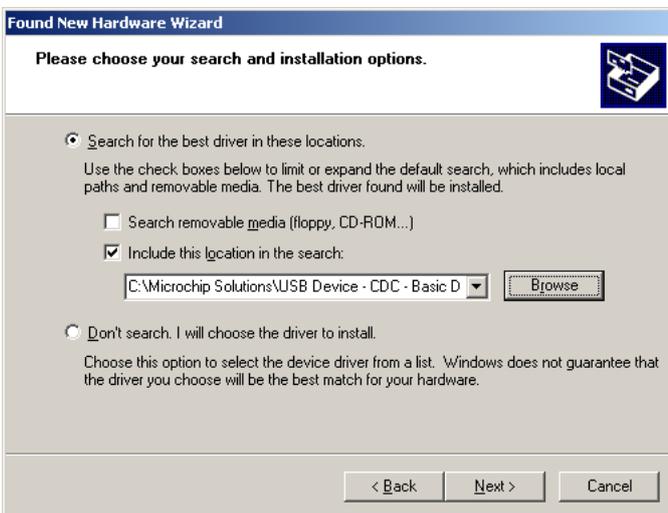
## 1.6.22 Running the Demo

This demo allows the device to appear like a serial (COM) port to the host. This demo will take data sent over the USB CDC interface and send it on the UART of the microcontroller.

In order to run this demo first compile and program the target device. Attach the device to the host with the USB cable. Also connect the RS232 port of the demo board to a computer. This computer can be the same computer as the USB connection or it can be a different computer. If the host is a PC and this is the first time you have plugged this device into the computer then you may be asked for a .inf file.



Select the “Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)” option. Point to the “<Install Directory>\USB Device - CDC – Serial Emulator\inf\” directory



Once the device is successfully installed, open up a terminal program, such as hyperterminal. Select the appropriate COM port for the USB virtual COM port. On most machines this will be COM5 or higher. On the computer where the RS232 cable it attached, open a second terminal program. Select the hardware COM port associated with that computer. Please insure that the baud rate for both terminal windows is the same.

Once everything is configured correctly, typing a key in one terminal window will result in the same data to show up in the second terminal window.

**Note: Some terminal programs, like hyperterminal, require users to click the disconnect button before removing the device from the computer. Failing to do so may result in having to close and open the program again in order to reconnect to the device.**

### 1.6.23 Supported Demo Boards

Demo Board (click link for board information)	Notes
Low Pin Count USB Development Kit	
PICDEM FS USB	1

PIC18F46J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 2
PIC18F47J53 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 2
PIC18F87J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 2
PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
PIC32 USB Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3
PIC32 CAN-USB Plug-In-Module (PIM)	1, 3

**Notes:**

1. These boards require the Speech Playback PICTail/PICTail+ daughter board in order to run this demo.
2. This board can not be used by itself. It requires a PIC18 Explorer board in order to operate with this demo.
3. This board can not be used by itself. It requires an Explorer 16 and a USB PICTail+ Daughter Board in order to operate.

# 1.7 Appendix (FAQs, Important Information, Reference Material, etc.)

This section contains other useful information about various topics and more detailed information about topics already presented in the help document.

## Description

### 1.7.1 Using breakpoints in USB host applications

This section describes how to use breakpoints when running a USB host application without causing communication issues.

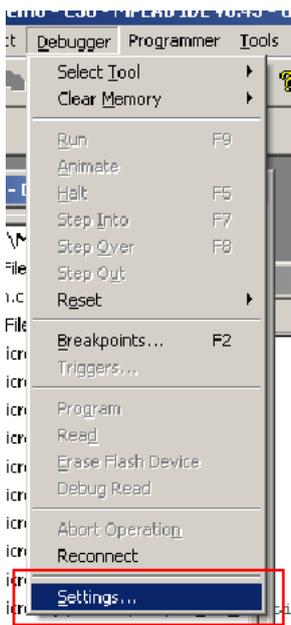
#### Description

This section describes how to use breakpoints when running a USB host application without causing communication issues.

USB has a periodic packet that is sent on the bus once every millisecond, called the start of frame (SOF) packet, that is used to keep the bus from going into an idle/suspended state. When a the microcontroller hits a breakpoint, both the CPU and the modules on the device stop operation. This will cause the attached USB device to enter the suspend mode. Some programmers implement a method that allows specified peripherals to continue to run even after a breakpoint occurs. This section describes how to enable this feature for the USB peripheral on PIC24F and PIC32 devices.

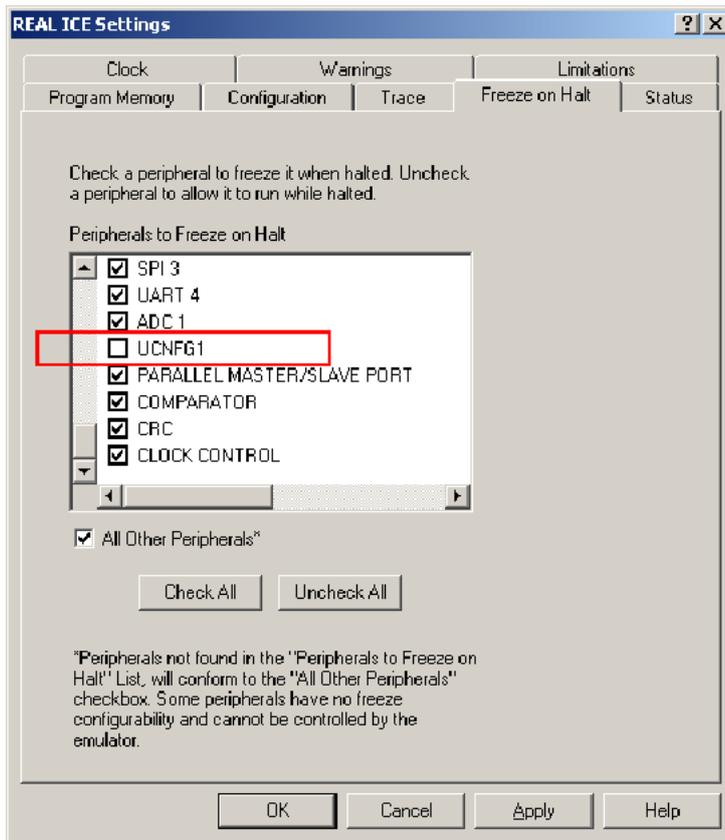
#### MPLAB v8.x

- 1) Select the desired debugger from the debugger menu
- 2) Go to the “Debugger->Settings” menu option

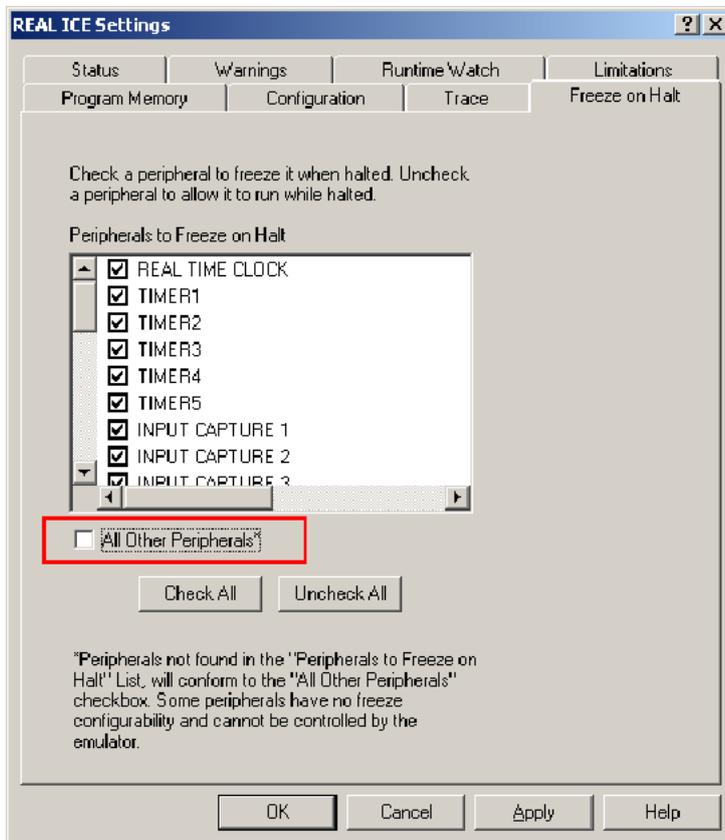


- 3) Go to the Freeze on Halt tab. For PIC24F devices, uncheck the UCNFG1 box. For PIC32 devices, uncheck the “All other peripherals” box located below the scrolling menu.

**PIC24F**

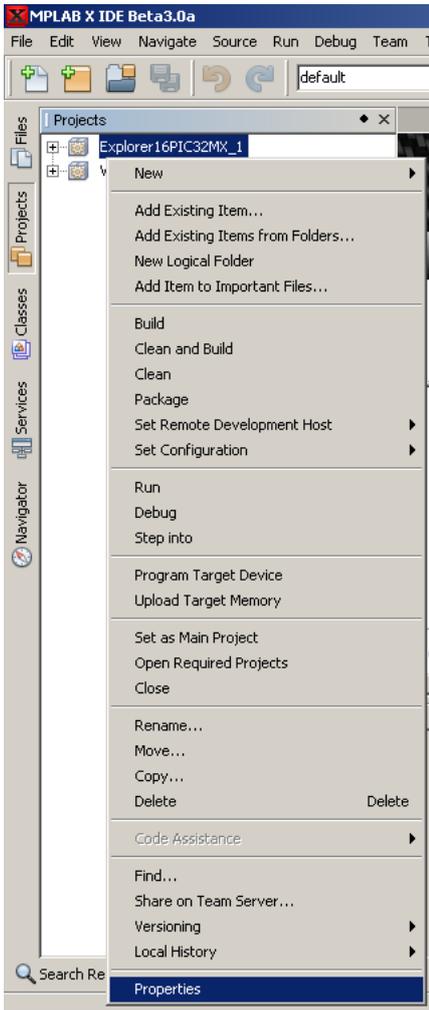


**PIC32**



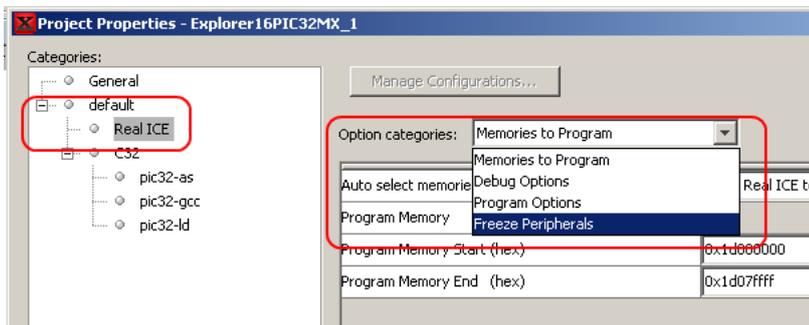
### MPLAB X

1) In the projects window, right click on the project you are working on and select properties from the menu that appears.

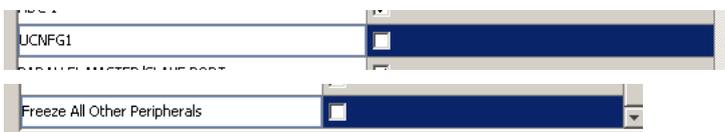


2) In the properties window, select the debugger that you are currently using from the Categories navigation pane.

3) In the resulting form, select "Freeze Peripherals" in the "Option Categories" drop down box.



4) In the resulting list uncheck the box corresponding to the USB peripheral. If there is not one on the list, uncheck "All other peripherals". Please note that on PIC24F the USB module may be named UCNFG1.



---

## 1.7.2 Notes on .inf Files

Describes important information about .inf file usage and behavior.

### Description

Upon initially plugging in a USB device, in some cases Windows will prompt the user for a driver. Rather than having users manually copy .sys files (driver binary files) into important system directories (such as within the “\Windows\system32\” directory structure) and manually add registry entries, Windows automates the driver installation process through the use of .INF files. INF files are plain text (can be edited with notepad) installation instruction script files.

Some types of USB devices will not require .INF files or user provided drivers (for example, a HID class mouse). For these types of devices, the operating system makes use of drivers already built into/distributed with the operating system, so no user provided driver or .INF file is necessary.

For other types of devices, Windows will prompt the user for a driver. In these cases, point Windows to the .INF file relevant for the USB device. All of the example projects included in the MCHPFSUSB framework which need an INF file are provided with an example INF file. The INF file will need slight modification (most importantly to change the VID and PID) before commercial distribution.

The INF file for the custom demo can be found in <Install Directory>\USB Tools\MCHPUSB Custom Driver\MCHPUSB Driver\Release.

The INF file for the CDC demos can be found in <Install Directory>\USB Tools\USB CDC Serial Demo\inf\win2k\_winxp.

---

## 1.7.3 Vendor IDs (VID) and Product IDs (PID)

Describes important information about Vendor IDs (VID) and Product IDs (PID).

### Description

Every USB product line must have a unique combination of VID and PID. All firmware examples use Microchip's VID (0x04d8) and a unique PID. Prior to manufacturing and marketing a new USB product, the VID and PID need to be changed. New VID and PID numbers can be obtained by purchasing a VID from the USB Implementers Forum:

<http://www.usb.org/developers/vendor>

Alternatively, Microchip has a free VID sublicensing program. An application form for obtaining a PID (for use with Microchip's VID: 0x04d8) from Microchip can be obtained through the following link: <http://www.microchip.com/usblicensing/Default.aspx>

Once a new VID/PID combination is obtained, both the firmware and the .INF file (when applicable) will need to be updated.

To modify the VID/PID in one of the example USB firmware projects, open the usb\_descriptors.c file (found in each of the demo folders). They should appear in the table used for the USB Device Descriptor. Change both values as needed.

To modify the VID/PID in the .INF file, open the relevant INF file and search for the “[DeviceList]” sections. There are two sections, one for 32-bit and one for 64-bit, both sections should be identical. In these sections, some text will appear with the form “USB\VID\_xxxx&PID\_yyyy”. Update the “xxxx” and “yyyy” sections with the new hexadecimal format VID/PID values.

---

## 1.7.4 Using a Diff Tool

Refer to the Section "Using a Diff Tool" in help\_mla\_getting\_started file for more details.

---

## 1.7.5 Driver Signing and Windows 8

This section provides information related to USB driver signatures, the types of signatures needed for the different versions of Windows operating system, and how to get a signed driver package.

### 1.7.5.1 What are "Signed" Drivers?

#### What are "Signed" Drivers?

Most USB drivers operate in what is known as "kernel mode" on Windows based PCs. Kernel mode drivers have low level access to the PC and its resources. This low level access to the PC is normally necessary to implement the kind of functionality that the driver is intended to provide to top level applications.

However, low level access to a PC has potential security implications. Kernel mode is typically the "ideal" place where malicious software developers would want their software to operate, since it provides the greatest control and access to the PC. Therefore, in the interest of protecting Windows security, Windows OSes place restrictions on what code is allowed to be operated in kernel mode.

Windows "trusts" drivers and executable programs that have been signed, more so than software that is unsigned. Signing a driver package is analogous to placing an embossed wax seal on an envelope. The signature/wax seal does not effect or alter the contents of the package, but it provides proof that the contents have not been modified or tampered with, since the time that the signature/wax seal was first applied.

There are three types of USB driver signatures to be aware of:

**Embedded digital signatures:** This type of signature resides inside of driver .sys files (kernel mode driver binary files). No additional/external files are associated with this type of signature. These types of signatures only protect against tampering with the .sys file itself, and do not include other files that may be a part of the driver package (ex: .inf and .dll files). All Microsoft OS provided driver .sys files, as well as most third party kernel mode drivers will contain at least this level of signature.

**"Full driver package" digital signature – Microsoft Authenticode:** This type of signature can be thought of as a "wrapper" over the entire driver package content files. A driver package can be as simple as a single .inf file (a plain text installation instruction file that Windows uses when installing new drivers), or may encompass additional files (such as .dll and/or .sys files). The full driver package signature comes in the form of a properly created security catalog file (.cat), which will be part of the driver package distribution. A driver package signed with an Authenticode signature is relatively easy to create, but it is less trustworthy to that of a WHQL digital signature.

**"Full driver package" digital signature – WHQL:** This type of signature is the most trusted by Windows, and is very similar to the full driver package Microsoft Authenticode signature above, but is more expensive and harder to obtain. To obtain a Windows Hardware Quality Labs (WHQL) signature, a driver package must undergo extensive testing, and passing log files and submission fees must be supplied to Microsoft. If a driver package has already previously been tested and WHQL certified, but has since been modified, in some cases it is possible to get the driver re-certified through a simpler and cheaper "Driver Update Acceptable" process with Microsoft.

Any modifications to a driver package once the signature has been applied, including adding or deleting a single character of whitespace in the driver .inf file, will invalidate a full driver package signature. A driver package can however have two simultaneous signatures, one covering the full driver package, and one embedded inside the driver binary file(s). Inf file modifications do not invalidate an embedded digital signature inside of a driver binary file.

Once a signature has been invalidated, Windows will no longer trust the driver package as much, and will place restrictions on its installation (or outright prevent its installation on some OSes). The driver package can however be re-signed, to restore the trustworthiness of the driver to Windows.

## 1.7.5.2 Minimum Driver Signature Requirements

### Minimum Driver Signature Requirements

Full driver package WHQL signatures are the best and most trusted by all versions of Windows. Windows allows the installation of properly WHQL signed drivers, without producing a prompt warning the user about the driver's trustworthiness.

However, current Windows versions do not require WHQL signatures to allow installation. Lesser signatures (or no signatures in some cases) are allowed, but will generate user dialogs/warnings during the installation process.

Operating System	Minimum Signature to Allow Installation
Windows 2000	None
Windows XP 32-bit	None
Windows XP 64-bit	None
Windows Vista 32-bit	None
Windows Vista 64-bit	Embedded
Windows 7 32-bit	Embedded
Windows 7 64-bit	Embedded
Windows 8 32-bit	Embedded
Windows 8 64-bit	Embedded + Full package authenticode
Windows RT (ARM)	Third party drivers and driver packages are not currently allowed. All USB devices for this OS must use Microsoft supplied drivers.

## 1.7.5.3 Using Older Drivers with Windows 8

### Using Older Drivers with Windows 8

In general, USB driver packages that are designed for Windows 7 and prior OS versions will also work in Windows 8, but there is one important exception to this.

Starting with Windows 8 64-bit, all drivers must contain a proper "full driver package" digital signature (prior OSes only required an embedded signature in the .sys file, rather than the entire driver package including the .inf file). The driver package signature exists as a .cat file that comes with the driver package, and needs to be correctly referenced from within

the .inf file. If either the .cat file is entirely missing, or it is not being correctly referenced from the .inf file, Windows 8 will generate an error message, when the user attempts to install the driver:

**“The third party INF does not contain digital signature information”.**

If the .cat file is present and is correctly referenced, but something in the driver package was modified since the signature was applied, a slightly different error message will occur:

**“The hash for the file is not present in the specified catalog file. The file is likely corrupt or the victim of tampering.”**

In both cases, Windows 8 64-bit will not allow the driver package to be installed, even though it may technically be capable of functioning correctly. To fix this, the driver package must be properly signed with a full package signature. This signature may be either a WHQL signature (which is the best kind of signature), or a “Microsoft Authenticode” signature.

In the February 2013 or later version of the Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA, available from [www.microchip.com/mla](http://www.microchip.com/mla)), the CDC, WinUSB, and MCHPUSB driver packages all include a WHQL signature and can be installed successfully on Windows 8 32 and 64 bit (as well as prior OSes). When the firmware is using the same VID/PID as the default value from the demo, then the latest driver package from the MLA should install directly.

When the application uses a customized .inf file (ex: VID/PID and/or strings are different), then it will not be possible to directly use the driver package from the MLA. The reason for this, is that anytime anyone makes any changes whatsoever to the driver package (including adding or deleting one character of whitespace in the .inf file), this will break and invalidate the driver package signature. Therefore, even if the .cat file is present, the signature will be invalid (and still won't install correctly).

Therefore, if an application needs to use a custom modified driver package, the only practical solution is to make the modifications, and then re-sign the driver package. A driver package can be signed with an authenticode signature using the procedure outlined in the section “Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages”. A package signed with the Microsoft authenticode signature will install successfully on Windows 8, but will still produce a user prompt asking if they would like to trust the company that signed the driver package. This user dialog can be suppressed if the driver package instead contains a WHQL signature.

Although not very suitable for end consumers, Windows 8 does have a feature that allows one to temporarily disable driver package signing enforcement. This is particularly useful for development and testing purposes. The feature is hidden under several layers of menus and requires the following steps to enable:

1. From the desktop, move the mouse to the lower right hand corner of the screen, to launch the charm bar.
2. Click the Settings “gear” icon.
3. Click the “Change PC Settings” option.
4. In the PC Settings menu on the left, select the “General” option.
5. In the right hand pane, scroll down to the bottom of the options list. Under the “Advanced startup” section, click the “Restart now” button. This doesn't directly reboot the computer, but launches a page that provides additional restart options.
6. In the “Choose an option” page, select the “Troubleshoot” option.

7. From the Troubleshoot menu, click on “Advanced options”.
8. In the “Advanced options” dialog, click the “Startup Settings” option.
9. From the “Startup Settings” dialog, click the “Restart” button.
10. The computer should now begin a reboot cycle. During the boot up sequence, a special “Startup Settings” dialog screen should appear.
11. On the “Startup Settings” dialog, press the “F7” key, to select the “Disable driver signature enforcement” option.
12. Allow Windows 8 to finish booting up.

Once driver signing enforcement is disabled, unsigned driver packages can then be installed. After rebooting the machine, driver signing enforcement will be re-enabled, but Windows 8 will continue to allow the unsigned driver(s) that were installed to be loaded for the hardware, without requiring the system to be repeatedly rebooted into the driver signing enforcement disabled mode.

## 1.7.5.4 Driver Signatures in the Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA) Projects

### Driver Signatures in the Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA) Projects

**Projects based on WinUSB:** WinUSB is a Microsoft created/supplied driver. All Microsoft supplied drivers contain an embedded signature from Microsoft. Additionally, WinUSB driver packages supplied in the February 2013 MLA release (or later) also contain a full driver package Microsoft WHQL signature.

In operating systems prior to Windows 8, WinUSB based devices require the user to install a driver package for the hardware. However, starting with Windows 8, it is possible to make WinUSB based devices that are fully plug and play, and do not require any user supplied driver package. Windows 8 allows for automatic installation of the WinUSB driver, when the device firmware implements the correct Microsoft specific “OS” and related USB descriptors. These special descriptors are optional, but when implemented, allow for automatic driver installation using the in-box provided WinUSB driver that is distributed with the operating system installation. These special OS descriptors are implemented starting the WinUSB based firmware projects in the 2012-10-15 MLA Release. For all new application designs, it is recommended to include these special descriptors as they will result in a better end user experience, free of any driver package/signing/installation concerns.

**Projects based on CDC:** When used with Windows, the CDC projects in the MLA use the Microsoft created/supplied “usbser.sys” driver. This driver contains an embedded signature from Microsoft. Additionally, CDC driver packages supplied in the February 2013 MLA release (or later), also contain a full driver package Microsoft WHQL signature.

**Projects based on MCHPUSB:** The MCHPUSB driver is a Microchip created/supplied driver. This driver contains an embedded signature from Microchip. Additionally, this driver package contains a WHQL signature. However, when designing a new application, it is suggested to consider using the WinUSB driver instead.

**Projects based on libusb:** There are multiple versions of the “libusb driver”. Libusb version 0.1 devices rely on a custom driver that can be signed with “libwdi”. Libusb version 1.0 devices, when attached to Windows based machines, relies on the Microsoft supplied WinUSB driver (see WinUSB section).

**Projects based on PHDC:** The PHDC projects in the MLA rely on the libusb driver (see libusb section).

**Projects based on HID, MSD, audio class, CCID:** These USB device classes/projects rely on Microsoft supplied drivers that are distributed with the operating system, and do not require any user supplied driver packages or .inf files. Therefore, driver package signing is usually not relevant for these types of applications, as the drivers will normally get installed automatically when the hardware is attached to the machine.

## 1.7.5.5 Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate

### Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate

There are several Certificate Authority (CA) companies that can sell your organization a signing certificate that will allow you to sign your own driver packages. However, when submitting a driver package to Microsoft for WHQL certification, either as a new device/driver, or by reusing a previous submission through the "Driver Update Acceptable" (DUA) process, Microsoft currently requires that the submitted files be signed with an authenticode signing certificate issued by VeriSign.

Therefore, it is generally preferred to obtain the Microsoft Authenticode code signing certificate from VeriSign (now a part of Symantec Corporation). Before purchasing the certificate, it is recommended to search for possible promotional/discounted rates. Historically Microsoft has run a program providing for discounted prices for first time purchasers of VeriSign certificates.

Authenticode code signing certificates are usually sold on an annual or multi-year basis. Once purchased, the signing certificate can normally be used to sign an unlimited number of driver package security catalog files (ex: .cat files), along with other types of files (ex: .exe executable programs). The certificate itself (ex: typically a .pvk file, though other extensions are possible) needs to be kept physically secure, and should never be distributed publicly.

## 1.7.5.6 Code Signing Certificates (Other Uses)

### Code Signing Certificates – Other Uses

In addition to signing driver packages, a Microsoft Authenticode signing certificate can be used to sign certain other types of files, such as executable (.exe) programs. Windows, especially Windows 8, does not trust unsigned executables as much as signed executables. In Windows 8, an unsigned executable that has "no history" and has no reputation established with Microsoft will be treated as relatively untrustworthy, and is blocked from execution, unless the user manually overrides the OS behavior, through an advanced options dialogue that is typically hard for new users to find.

Additionally, some virus scanning applications also rely on executable signatures, to help establish relative trustworthiness. In some cases, unsigned executables, free of malware/viruses, can still be blocked from execution by the virus scanning software, until a history/reputation is built up establishing the executable as trustworthy. Signing the executable with a Microsoft Authenticode signing certificate will generally make the executable more trustworthy and less likely to be (incorrectly) flagged as malware.

## 1.7.5.7 Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages

### Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages

If you make modifications to a driver package and need to re-sign the package, the easiest method is to sign it with a Microsoft Authenticode code signing certificate. This can be done with the following procedure:

1. Start from a known working driver package .inf file from the latest MLA release.
2. Modify the .inf as desired. The .inf file is a plain text (ex: editable with Notepad) installation instruction/information file that tells the OS what driver needs to be used for the hardware, and anything else that may need to happen during the driver installation process. When changing the .inf file device list sections, please remove all existing Microchip VID/PIDs, before replacing them with your own. The manufacturer and product strings should also be updated as applicable for your device.
3. Delete the security catalog file (.cat) that is already supplied with the package. After modifying the .inf file, the security catalog file will no longer be valid and you will need to create a new one.
4. Download the latest version of the Windows Driver Kit (WDK) from Microsoft (this is currently at: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/gg487428.aspx>). Version 8.0 or later is needed (prior versions don't have awareness of Windows 8 specifics).
5. Use the "Inf2Cat" utility in the WDK to re-generate a new .cat file from the modified .inf file.
  1. Inf2Cat is a command line utility. Open a command prompt, navigate to the directory of the inf2cat tool, and then run it at the command line to get a small help/explanation of usage syntax. The program is typically located in the following location: C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\8.0\bin\x64 (or \x86 folder for 32-bit OS)
  2. Typical usage syntax would be similar to the following (all on one line):

```
inf2cat /driver:C:[path to dir with .inf file]
/os:XP_X86,XP_X64,Vista_X86,Vista_X64,7_X86,7_X64,8_X86,8_X64,Server2003_X86,Server2003_X64,Server2008_X86,
Server2008_X64,Server2008R2_X64,Server8_X64
```

Assuming the inf2cat utility runs successfully, it will generate a "raw" .cat file. The .cat file will still need to be signed, in order to be useful.

6. If your organization does not already have one, purchase a code signing certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) such as VeriSign (now Symantec Corporation). See the section "Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate" for more details.
7. Use the "signtool.exe" utility, along with the signing certificate purchased from the CA, to sign the .cat file. The signtool utility is small Microsoft program that is distributed in the Windows SDK (and/or in older versions of the WDK, prior to v8.0). The Windows SDK can currently be obtained from:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/desktop/hh852363.aspx>

Typical syntax when using the signtool would be as follows (when executed in the directory of the .cat file, assuming directory to the signtool is in the path, and the certificate has a .pfx extension without a password, and that the certificate resides on "E:", like a typical USB flash drive):

```
signtool sign /v /f "E:[path to certificate][certificate file name].pfx" /t http://timestamp.verisign.com/scripts/timestamp.dll
[FileNameToSign.cat]
```

8. Verify that the signature has been properly applied using the verify command line option:

```
signtool verify /a /pa [FileNameToSign.cat]
```

The verify step should report success. The driver package should now be correctly signed with a Microsoft Authenticode signature. Test it on all target OSes. Distribute both the .inf file and .cat file together to the end consumer (along with any other driver package files that may be necessary, which may include .dll files, particularly in the case of the WinUSB driver package). Never distribute the signing certificate that you purchased from the CA, this should be kept in a safe place, out of the hands of the public (the certificate can be re-used to sign any number of driver packages, as well as .exe files, which will have some benefits).

## Index

\_\_\_  
 \_\_USBHOST\_H\_\_ 126  
 \_\_USBHOST\_H\_\_ macro 126  
 \_CLIENT\_DRIVER\_TABLE 117  
 \_CLIENT\_DRIVER\_TABLE structure 117  
 \_COMM\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS 137  
 \_COMM\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS structure 137  
 \_DATA\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS 138  
 \_DATA\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS structure 138  
 \_HID\_COLLECTION 173  
 \_HID\_COLLECTION structure 173  
 \_HID\_DATA\_DETAILS 174  
 \_HID\_DATA\_DETAILS structure 174  
 \_HID\_GLOBALS 175  
 \_HID\_GLOBALS structure 175  
 \_HID\_ITEM\_INFO 176  
 \_HID\_ITEM\_INFO structure 176  
 \_HID\_REPORT 176  
 \_HID\_REPORT structure 176  
 \_HID\_REPORTITEM 177  
 \_HID\_REPORTITEM structure 177  
 \_HID\_STRINGITEM 177  
 \_HID\_STRINGITEM structure 177  
 \_HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA 178  
 \_HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure 178  
 \_HID\_USAGEITEM 178  
 \_HID\_USAGEITEM structure 178  
 \_HOST\_TRANSFER\_DATA 118  
 \_HOST\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure 118  
 \_USB\_CDC\_ACM\_FN\_DSC 138  
 \_USB\_CDC\_ACM\_FN\_DSC structure 138  
 \_USB\_CDC\_CALL\_MGT\_FN\_DSC 139  
 \_USB\_CDC\_CALL\_MGT\_FN\_DSC structure 139  
 \_USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP 139  
 \_USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP union 139  
 \_USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_INFO 140  
 \_USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_INFO structure 140  
 \_USB\_CDC\_HEADER\_FN\_DSC 141  
 \_USB\_CDC\_HEADER\_FN\_DSC structure 141

\_USB\_CDC\_LINE\_CODING 141  
 \_USB\_CDC\_LINE\_CODING union 141  
 \_USB\_CDC\_UNION\_FN\_DSC 142  
 \_USB\_CDC\_UNION\_FN\_DSC structure 142  
 \_USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_ID 179  
 \_USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_ID structure 179  
 \_USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_RPT\_INFO 180  
 \_USB\_HID\_DEVICE\_RPT\_INFO structure 180  
 \_USB\_HID\_ITEM\_LIST 181  
 \_USB\_HID\_ITEM\_LIST structure 181

## A

Adding a boot loader to your project 249  
 Android 3.1+ 275  
 Appendix (FAQs, Important Information, Reference Material, etc.) 285  
 Application Version Information 232  
 Audio Function Driver 69

## B

Boot Loader Entry 238  
 BOOT\_INTF\_SUBCLASS 89  
 BOOT\_INTF\_SUBCLASS macro 89  
 BOOT\_PROTOCOL 89  
 BOOT\_PROTOCOL macro 89

## C

C18 Compiler 244  
 CDC Client Driver 126  
 CDC Function Driver 70  
 CDCInitEP 73  
 CDCInitEP function 73  
 CDCNotificationHandler 74  
 CDCNotificationHandler function 74  
 CDCSetBaudRate 79  
 CDCSetBaudRate macro 79  
 CDCSetCharacterFormat 79  
 CDCSetCharacterFormat macro 79  
 CDCSetDataSize 80  
 CDCSetDataSize macro 80  
 CDCSetLineCoding 80  
 CDCSetLineCoding macro 80

- CDCSetParity 81
  - CDCSetParity macro 81
  - CDCTxService 74
  - CDCTxService function 74
  - Changing the Memory Footprint 244
  - Changing the memory footprint of the boot loader 257
  - CLIENT\_DRIVER\_TABLE 117
  - CLIENT\_DRIVER\_TABLE structure 117
  - Code Signing Certificates (Other Uses) 293
  - COMM\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS 137
  - COMM\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS structure 137
  - Command Set 233
  - Configuration Bits 231
  - Configuring the Demo 281
  - Customizing for an Application 230
- D**
- Data Types and Constants 63, 84, 89, 92, 116, 135, 170, 200
  - DATA\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS 138
  - DATA\_INTERFACE\_DETAILS structure 138
  - Demo Board Information 210
  - Demos 223
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t 64
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_uint32\_t macro 64
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_uint8\_t 64
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_uint8\_t macro 64
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD 64
  - DESC\_CONFIG\_WORD macro 64
  - Device - Audio Microphone Basic Demo 223
  - Device - Audio MIDI Demo 225
  - Device - Boot Loader - HID 229
  - Device - CDC - Serial Emulator 268
  - Device - CDC Basic Demo 260
  - Device - HID - Custom Demo 263
  - Device - HID - Digitizer Demos 266
  - Device - HID - Joystick Demo 267
  - Device - HID - Keyboard Demo 269
  - Device - HID - Mouse Demo 269
  - Device - HID - Uninterruptible Power Supply 270
  - Device - Mass Storage - Internal Flash Demo 270
  - Device - Mass Storage - SD Card Reader 272
  - Device - Vendor Driver Basic Demo 272
  - Device - Vendor High Bandwidth Demo 277
  - Device (Slave) Demo Board Support and Limitations 28
  - Device Stack 37
  - Device/Peripheral 37
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_CDC 142
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_CDC macro 142
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_HID 183
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_HID macro 183
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_MASS\_STORAGE 201
  - DEVICE\_CLASS\_MASS\_STORAGE macro 201
  - DEVICE\_INTERFACE\_PROTOCOL\_BULK\_ONLY 201
  - DEVICE\_INTERFACE\_PROTOCOL\_BULK\_ONLY macro 201
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_CD\_DVD 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_CD\_DVD macro 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_FLOPPY\_INTERFACE 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_FLOPPY\_INTERFACE macro 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_RBC 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_RBC macro 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_REMOVABLE 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_REMOVABLE macro 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_SCSI 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_SCSI macro 202
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_TAPE\_DRIVE 203
  - DEVICE\_SUBCLASS\_TAPE\_DRIVE macro 203
  - deviceRptInfo 183
  - deviceRptInfo variable 183
  - Driver Signatures in the Microchip Libraries for Applications (MLA) Projects 292
  - Driver Signing and Windows 8 289
  - DSC\_HID 184
  - DSC\_HID macro 184
  - DSC\_PHY 184
  - DSC\_PHY macro 184
  - dsPIC33EP512MU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 221
- E**
- Embedded Host API 97
  - Embedded Host Stack 97
  - ERASE\_DEVICE 235
  - EVENT\_CDC\_ATTACH 142
  - EVENT\_CDC\_ATTACH macro 142
  - EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_READ\_DONE 142
  - EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_READ\_DONE macro 142

EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_WRITE\_DONE 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_COMM\_WRITE\_DONE macro 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_READ\_DONE 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_READ\_DONE macro 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_WRITE\_DONE 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_DATA\_WRITE\_DONE macro 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_NAK\_TIMEOUT 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_NAK\_TIMEOUT macro 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_NONE 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_NONE macro 143  
 EVENT\_CDC\_OFFSET 144  
 EVENT\_CDC\_OFFSET macro 144  
 EVENT\_CDC\_RESET 144  
 EVENT\_CDC\_RESET macro 144  
 EVENT\_HID\_ATTACH 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_ATTACH macro 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_BAD\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_BAD\_REPORT\_DESCRIPTOR macro 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_DETACH 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_DETACH macro 184  
 EVENT\_HID\_NONE 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_NONE macro 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_OFFSET 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_OFFSET macro 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_READ\_DONE 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_READ\_DONE macro 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_RESET 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_RESET macro 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_RESET\_ERROR 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_RESET\_ERROR macro 185  
 EVENT\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_PARSED 186  
 EVENT\_HID\_RPT\_DESC\_PARSED macro 186  
 EVENT\_HID\_WRITE\_DONE 186  
 EVENT\_HID\_WRITE\_DONE macro 186  
 EVENT\_MSD\_ATTACH 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_ATTACH macro 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_MAX\_LUN 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_MAX\_LUN macro 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_NONE 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_NONE macro 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_OFFSET 203  
 EVENT\_MSD\_OFFSET macro 203

EVENT\_MSD\_RESET 204  
 EVENT\_MSD\_RESET macro 204  
 EVENT\_MSD\_TRANSFER 204  
 EVENT\_MSD\_TRANSFER macro 204  
 Explorer 16 219

## F

Flash Signature 259  
 From v2.10 to v2.11 32  
 From v2.5 to v2.6 35  
 From v2.6 to v2.6a 35  
 From v2.6a to v2.7 35  
 From v2.7 to v2.7a 35  
 From v2.7a to v2.8 34  
 From v2.8 to v2.9 34  
 From v2.9 to v2.9a 34  
 From v2.9a to v2.9b 34  
 From v2.9b to v2.9c 34  
 From v2.9c to v2.9d 34  
 From v2.9d to v2.9e 34  
 From v2.9e to v2.9f 34  
 From v2.9f to v2.9g 34  
 From v2.9g to v2.9h 34  
 From v2.9h to v2.9i 33  
 From v2.9i to v2.9j 33  
 From v2.9j to v2.10 32  
 Functions 37, 69, 72, 86, 91, 94, 97, 128, 159, 194

## G

Garage Band '08 [Macintosh Computers] 225  
 GET\_DATA 236  
 getsUSBUSART 75  
 getsUSBUSART function 75

## H

HID Client Driver 158  
 HID Function Driver 86  
 HID\_COLLECTION 173  
 HID\_COLLECTION structure 173  
 HID\_DATA\_DETAILS 174  
 HID\_DATA\_DETAILS structure 174  
 HID\_DESIGITEM 174

- HID\_DESIGITEM structure 174
  - HID\_GLOBALS 175
  - HID\_GLOBALS structure 175
  - HID\_ITEM\_INFO 176
  - HID\_ITEM\_INFO structure 176
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_KEYBOARD 89
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_KEYBOARD macro 89
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_MOUSE 90
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_MOUSE macro 90
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_NONE 90
  - HID\_PROTOCOL\_NONE macro 90
  - HID\_REPORT 176
  - HID\_REPORT structure 176
  - HID\_REPORTITEM 177
  - HID\_REPORTITEM structure 177
  - HID\_STRINGITEM 177
  - HID\_STRINGITEM structure 177
  - HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA 178
  - HID\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure 178
  - HID\_USAGEITEM 178
  - HID\_USAGEITEM structure 178
  - HID\_USER\_DATA\_SIZE 179
  - HID\_USER\_DATA\_SIZE type 179
  - HIDReportTypeEnum 179
  - HIDReportTypeEnum enumeration 179
  - HIDRxHandleBusy 86
  - HIDRxHandleBusy macro 86
  - HIDRxPacket 87
  - HIDRxPacket macro 87
  - HIDTxHandleBusy 87
  - HIDTxHandleBusy macro 87
  - HIDTxPacket 88
  - HIDTxPacket macro 88
  - Host - CDC Serial Demo 278
  - Host - HID - Keyboard Demo 279
  - Host - HID - Mouse Demo 279
  - Host - Mass Storage - Thumb Drive Data Logger 280
  - Host - Mass Storage (MSD) - Simple Demo 281
  - Host Application Responsibilities 232
  - Host Demo Board Support and Limitations 29
  - HOST\_DSC\_RPT 186
  - HOST\_DSC\_RPT macro 186
  - HOST\_TRANSFER\_DATA 118
  - HOST\_TRANSFER\_DATA structure 118
- ## I
- Implementation Details 233
  - Importance of Change the VID/PID 230
  - INIT\_CL\_SC\_P 120
  - INIT\_CL\_SC\_P macro 120
  - INIT\_VID\_PID 120
  - INIT\_VID\_PID macro 120
  - Input Button/Hardware Entry 238
  - Interrupt Remapping 252
  - Introduction 16
  - itemListPtrs 183
  - itemListPtrs variable 183
- ## L
- Legal Information 17
  - Library Interface 37
  - Library Migration 32
  - Linking Options for PIC16 Devices 245
  - Linking Options for PIC18 Devices 247
  - Linux 261, 274
  - Low Pin Count USB Development Board 210
  - LUN\_FUNCTIONS 92
  - LUN\_FUNCTIONS structure 92
- ## M
- Macintosh 262
  - Mass Storage Client Driver 194
  - Memory Map 240, 249
  - Memory Region Definitions 253
  - Merging Bootloader and Application Project Output 248
  - Minimum Driver Signature Requirements 290
  - MSD Function Driver 91
  - MSD\_COMMAND\_FAILED 204
  - MSD\_COMMAND\_FAILED macro 204
  - MSD\_COMMAND\_PASSED 204
  - MSD\_COMMAND\_PASSED macro 204
  - MSD\_PHASE\_ERROR 204
  - MSD\_PHASE\_ERROR macro 204
  - MSDTasks 91

MSDTasks function 91  
 mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady 81  
 mUSBUSARTIsTxTrfReady macro 81  
 mUSBUSARTTxRam 82  
 mUSBUSARTTxRam macro 82  
 mUSBUSARTTxRom 82  
 mUSBUSARTTxRom macro 82

## N

Notes on .inf Files 288  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1 84  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1 macro 84  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1\_5 84  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_1\_5 macro 84  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_2 84  
 NUM\_STOP\_BITS\_2 macro 84

## O

Obtaining a Microsoft Authenticode Code Signing Certificate 293  
 Online Reference and Resources 28  
 Operating System Support and Limitations 30  
 Optimization Mode Requirements 245

## P

PARITY\_EVEN 85  
 PARITY\_EVEN macro 85  
 PARITY\_MARK 85  
 PARITY\_MARK macro 85  
 PARITY\_NONE 85  
 PARITY\_NONE macro 85  
 PARITY\_ODD 85  
 PARITY\_ODD macro 85  
 PARITY\_SPACE 85  
 PARITY\_SPACE macro 85  
 PIC16 and PIC18 240  
 PIC18 Starter Kit 213  
 PIC18F46J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 214  
 PIC18F47J53 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 215  
 PIC18F87J50 Plug-In-Module (PIM) Demo Board 216  
 PIC24EP512GU810 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 221  
 PIC24F 249

PIC24F Starter Kit 217  
 PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board 217  
 PIC24FJ256GB110 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 220  
 PIC24FJ256GB210 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 220  
 PIC24FJ64GB004 Plug-In-Module (PIM) 220  
 PICDEM FS USB Board 212  
 Processor Specific Implementation Details 240  
 PROGRAM\_COMPLETE 236  
 PROGRAM\_DEVICE 236  
 putsUSBUSART 76  
 putsUSBUSART function 76  
 putsUSBUSART 77  
 putsUSBUSART function 77  
 putUSBUSART 77  
 putUSBUSART function 77

## Q

QUERY\_DEVICE 233  
 QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO 238  
 QUERY\_EXTENDED\_INFO Response 243

## R

Release Notes 18  
 RESET\_DEVICE 237  
 Revision History 18  
 Running the Demo 282

## S

Safe Boot Loading Considerations 231  
 SIGN\_FLASH 237  
 Software/Application Entry 239  
 Special Region Creation 254  
 Startup Sequence and Reset Remapping 251  
 Support 27  
 Supported Demo Boards 283

## T

Tool Information 32  
 TPL\_ALLOW\_HNP 120  
 TPL\_ALLOW\_HNP macro 120  
 TPL\_CLASS\_DRV 120

- TPL\_CLASS\_DRV macro 120
  - TPL\_EP0\_ONLY\_CUSTOM\_DRIVER 121
  - TPL\_EP0\_ONLY\_CUSTOM\_DRIVER macro 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_CLASS 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_CLASS macro 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_PID 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_PID macro 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_PROTOCOL 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_PROTOCOL macro 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_SUBCLASS 121
  - TPL\_IGNORE\_SUBCLASS macro 121
  - TPL\_SET\_CONFIG 122
  - TPL\_SET\_CONFIG macro 122
  - TRANSFER\_ATTRIBUTES 118
  - TRANSFER\_ATTRIBUTES type 118
  - Troubleshooting 271
- ## U
- Understanding and Customizing the Boot Loader Implementation 253
  - UNLOCK\_CONFIG 235
  - USB Library 15
  - USB PICTail Plus Daughter Board 221
  - USB\_APPLICATION\_EVENT\_HANDLER 40
  - USB\_APPLICATION\_EVENT\_HANDLER function 40
  - USB\_CDC\_ABSTRACT\_CONTROL\_MODEL 144
  - USB\_CDC\_ABSTRACT\_CONTROL\_MODEL macro 144
  - USB\_CDC\_ACM\_FN\_DSC 138
  - USB\_CDC\_ACM\_FN\_DSC structure 138
  - USB\_CDC\_ATM\_NETWORKING\_CONTROL\_MODEL 144
  - USB\_CDC\_ATM\_NETWORKING\_CONTROL\_MODEL macro 144
  - USB\_CDC\_CALL\_MGT\_FN\_DSC 139
  - USB\_CDC\_CALL\_MGT\_FN\_DSC structure 139
  - USB\_CDC\_CAPI\_CONTROL\_MODEL 144
  - USB\_CDC\_CAPI\_CONTROL\_MODEL macro 144
  - USB\_CDC\_CLASS\_ERROR 145
  - USB\_CDC\_CLASS\_ERROR macro 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMM\_INTF 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMM\_INTF macro 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_FAILED 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_FAILED macro 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_PASSED 145
  - USB\_CDC\_COMMAND\_PASSED macro 145
  - USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_LINE\_LENGTH 145
  - USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_LINE\_LENGTH macro 145
  - USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP 139
  - USB\_CDC\_CONTROL\_SIGNAL\_BITMAP union 139
  - USB\_CDC\_CS\_ENDPOINT 146
  - USB\_CDC\_CS\_ENDPOINT macro 146
  - USB\_CDC\_CS\_INTERFACE 146
  - USB\_CDC\_CS\_INTERFACE macro 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DATA\_INTF 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DATA\_INTF macro 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_BUSY 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_BUSY macro 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_DETACHED 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_DETACHED macro 146
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_HOLDING 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_HOLDING macro 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_INFO 140
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_INFO structure 140
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_MANAGEMENT 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_MANAGEMENT macro 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_NOT\_FOUND 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DEVICE\_NOT\_FOUND macro 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DIRECT\_LINE\_CONTROL\_MODEL 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DIRECT\_LINE\_CONTROL\_MODEL macro 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_ACM 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_ACM macro 147
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_CALL\_MGT 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_CALL\_MGT macro 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_COUNTRY\_SELECTION 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_COUNTRY\_SELECTION macro 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_DLM 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_DLM macro 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_HEADER 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_HEADER macro 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_RPT\_CAPABILITIES 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_RPT\_CAPABILITIES macro 148
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TEL\_OP\_MODES 149
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TEL\_OP\_MODES macro 149
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TELEPHONE\_RINGER 149
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_TELEPHONE\_RINGER macro 149
  - USB\_CDC\_DSC\_FN\_UNION 149

---

USB_CDC_DSC_FN_UNION macro 149	USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR 153
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL 149	USB_CDC_PHASE_ERROR macro 153
USB_CDC_DSC_FN_USB_TERMINAL macro 149	USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD 153
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL 149	USB_CDC_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD macro 153
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_EMULATION_MODEL macro 149	USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR 153
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL L 150	USB_CDC_RESET_ERROR macro 153
USB_CDC_ETHERNET_NETWORKING_CONTROL_MODEL L macro 150	USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE 153
USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE 150	USB_CDC_RESETTING_DEVICE macro 153
USB_CDC_GET_COMM_FEATURE macro 150	USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK 154
USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST 150	USB_CDC_SEND_BREAK macro 154
USB_CDC_GET_ENCAPSULATED_REQUEST macro 150	USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND 154
USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING 150	USB_CDC_SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND macro 154
USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING macro 150	USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE 154
USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC 141	USB_CDC_SET_COMM_FEATURE macro 154
USB_CDC_HEADER_FN_DSC structure 141	USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE 154
USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST 150	USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE macro 154
USB_CDC_ILLEGAL_REQUEST macro 150	USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING 154
USB_CDC_INITIALIZING 151	USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING macro 154
USB_CDC_INITIALIZING macro 151	USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL 155
USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR 151	USB_CDC_TELEPHONE_CONTROL_MODEL macro 155
USB_CDC_INTERFACE_ERROR macro 151	USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC 142
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING 141	USB_CDC_UNION_FN_DSC structure 142
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING union 141	USB_CDC_V25TER 155
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH 151	USB_CDC_V25TER macro 155
USB_CDC_LINE_CODING_LENGTH macro 151	USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL 155
USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE 151	USB_CDC_WIRELESS_HANDSET_CONTROL_MODEL macro 155
USB_CDC_MAX_PACKET_SIZE macro 151	USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER 118
USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL 152	USB_CLIENT_EVENT_HANDLER type 118
USB_CDC_MOBILE_DIRECT_LINE_MODEL macro 152	USB_CLIENT_INIT 119
USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL 152	USB_CLIENT_INIT type 119
USB_CDC_MULTI_CHANNEL_CONTROL_MODEL macro 152	usb_device.h 66
USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL 152	usb_device_audio.h 70
USB_CDC_NO_PROTOCOL macro 152	usb_device_cdc.h 71
USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR 152	usb_device_generic.h 96
USB_CDC_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR macro 152	usb_device_hid.h 90
USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING 152	usb_device_msd.h 93
USB_CDC_NORMAL_RUNNING macro 152	USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS 63
USB_CDC_OBEX 153	USB_DEVICE_STACK_EVENTS type 63
USB_CDC_OBEX macro 153	USB_DEVICE_STATE 64
	USB_DEVICE_STATE type 64
	USB_EP0_BUSY 65
	USB_EP0_BUSY macro 65

---

---

USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO	65	USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR	189
USB_EP0_INCLUDE_ZERO macro	65	USB_HID_PHASE_ERROR macro	189
USB_EP0_NO_DATA	65	USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD	189
USB_EP0_NO_DATA macro	65	USB_HID_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR_BAD macro	189
USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS	65	USB_HID_RESET_ERROR	189
USB_EP0_NO_OPTIONS macro	65	USB_HID_RESET_ERROR macro	189
USB_EP0_RAM	65	USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE	189
USB_EP0_RAM macro	65	USB_HID_RESETTING_DEVICE macro	189
USB_EP0_ROM	66	USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR	182
USB_EP0_ROM macro	66	USB_HID_RPT_DESC_ERROR enumeration	182
USB_HANDLE	66	usb_host.h	123
USB_HANDLE macro	66	USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER	98, 122
USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR	186	USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER function	98
USB_HID_CLASS_ERROR macro	186	USB_HOST_APP_DATA_EVENT_HANDLER macro	122
USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED	186	USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER	99, 122
USB_HID_COMMAND_FAILED macro	186	USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER function	99
USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED	187	USB_HOST_APP_EVENT_HANDLER macro	122
USB_HID_COMMAND_PASSED macro	187	usb_host_cdc.h	155
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY	187	usb_host_cdc_interface.h	158
USB_HID_DEVICE_BUSY macro	187	usb_host_hid.h	190
USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED	187	usb_host_hid_parser.h	192
USB_HID_DEVICE_DETACHED macro	187	usb_host_msdc.h	208
USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING	187	USB_HostInterruptHandler	100
USB_HID_DEVICE_HOLDING macro	187	USB_HostInterruptHandler function	100
USB_HID_DEVICE_ID	179	USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR	205
USB_HID_DEVICE_ID structure	179	USB_MSD_CBW_ERROR macro	205
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	187	USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED	205
USB_HID_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND macro	187	USB_MSD_COMMAND_FAILED macro	205
USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO	180	USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED	205
USB_HID_DEVICE_RPT_INFO structure	180	USB_MSD_COMMAND_PASSED macro	205
USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST	188	USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR	205
USB_HID_ILLEGAL_REQUEST macro	188	USB_MSD_CSW_ERROR macro	205
USB_HID_INITIALIZING	188	USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY	205
USB_HID_INITIALIZING macro	188	USB_MSD_DEVICE_BUSY macro	205
USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR	188	USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED	206
USB_HID_INTERFACE_ERROR macro	188	USB_MSD_DEVICE_DETACHED macro	206
USB_HID_ITEM_LIST	181	USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND	206
USB_HID_ITEM_LIST structure	181	USB_MSD_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND macro	206
USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR	188	USB_MSD_ERROR	206
USB_HID_NO_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR macro	188	USB_MSD_ERROR macro	206
USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING	188	USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE	206
USB_HID_NORMAL_RUNNING macro	188	USB_MSD_ERROR_STATE macro	206

---

USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST 206	USBCheckVendorRequest 94
USB_MSD_ILLEGAL_REQUEST macro 206	USBCheckVendorRequest function 94
USB_MSD_INITIALIZING 207	USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage 41
USB_MSD_INITIALIZING macro 207	USBCtrlEPAllowDataStage function 41
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN 207	USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage 41
USB_MSD_INVALID_LUN macro 207	USBCtrlEPAllowStatusStage function 41
USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR 207	USBDeferINDataStage 41
USB_MSD_MEDIA_INTERFACE_ERROR macro 207	USBDeferINDataStage function 41
USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING 207	USBDeferOUTDataStage 43
USB_MSD_NORMAL_RUNNING macro 207	USBDeferOUTDataStage function 43
USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY 207	USBDeferStatusStage 44
USB_MSD_OUT_OF_MEMORY macro 207	USBDeferStatusStage function 44
USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR 208	USBDeviceAttach 44
USB_MSD_PHASE_ERROR macro 208	USBDeviceAttach function 44
USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR 208	USBDeviceDetach 45
USB_MSD_RESET_ERROR macro 208	USBDeviceDetach function 45
USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE 208	USBDeviceInit 46
USB_MSD_RESETTING_DEVICE macro 208	USBDeviceInit function 46
USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS 122	USBDeviceTasks 47
USB_NUM_BULK_NAKS macro 122	USBDeviceTasks function 47
USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES 122	USBEnableEndpoint 48
USB_NUM_COMMAND_TRIES macro 122	USBEnableEndpoint function 48
USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS 123	USBEP0Receive 49
USB_NUM_CONTROL_NAKS macro 123	USBEP0Receive function 49
USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES 123	USBEP0SendRAMPtr 49
USB_NUM_ENUMERATION_TRIES macro 123	USBEP0SendRAMPtr function 49
USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS 123	USBEP0SendROMPtr 50
USB_NUM_INTERRUPT_NAKS macro 123	USBEP0SendROMPtr function 50
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR 190	USBEP0Transmit 50
USB_PROCESSING_REPORT_DESCRIPTOR macro 190	USBEP0Transmit function 50
USB_TPL 120	USBGEN_H 95
USB_TPL type 120	USBGEN_H macro 95
USBCancelIO 40	USBGenRead 95
USBCancelIO function 40	USBGenRead macro 95
USBCDCEventHandler 78	USBGenWrite 95
USBCDCEventHandler function 78	USBGenWrite macro 95
USBCheckAudioRequest 70	USBGetDeviceState 51
USBCheckAudioRequest function 70	USBGetDeviceState function 51
USBCheckCDCRequest 78	USBGetNextHandle 52
USBCheckCDCRequest function 78	USBGetNextHandle function 52
USBCheckMSDRequest 91	USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus 53
USBCheckMSDRequest function 91	USBGetRemoteWakeupStatus function 53

USBGetSuspendState 54	USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor 113
USBGetSuspendState function 54	USBHostGetDeviceDescriptor macro 113
USBHandleBusy 55	USBHostGetStringDescriptor 113
USBHandleBusy function 55	USBHostGetStringDescriptor macro 113
USBHandleGetAddr 56	USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect 167
USBHandleGetAddr function 56	USBHostHID_ApiDeviceDetect macro 167
USBHandleGetLength 56	USBHostHID_ApiFindBit 160
USBHandleGetLength function 56	USBHostHID_ApiFindBit function 160
USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request 128	USBHostHID_ApiFindValue 160
USBHostCDC_Api_ACM_Request function 128	USBHostHID_ApiFindValue function 160
USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data 129	USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum 161
USBHostCDC_Api_Get_IN_Data function 129	USBHostHID_ApiGetCurrentInterfaceNum function 161
USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data 129	USBHostHID_ApiGetReport 167
USBHostCDC_Api_Send_OUT_Data function 129	USBHostHID_ApiGetReport macro 167
USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect 130	USBHostHID_ApiImportData 161
USBHostCDC_ApiDeviceDetect function 130	USBHostHID_ApiImportData function 161
USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete 130	USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice 168
USBHostCDC_ApiTransferIsComplete function 130	USBHostHID_ApiResetDevice macro 168
USBHostCDCDeviceStatus 131	USBHostHID_ApiSendReport 168
USBHostCDCDeviceStatus function 131	USBHostHID_ApiSendReport macro 168
USBHostCDCEventHandler 131	USBHostHID_ApiTransferIsComplete 168
USBHostCDCEventHandler function 131	USBHostHID_ApiTransferIsComplete macro 168
USBHostCDCInitAddress 132	USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo 168
USBHostCDCInitAddress function 132	USBHostHID_GetCurrentReportInfo macro 168
USBHostCDCInitialize 132	USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers 169
USBHostCDCInitialize function 132	USBHostHID_GetItemListPointers macro 169
USBHostCDCResetDevice 133	USBHostHID_HasUsage 162
USBHostCDCResetDevice function 133	USBHostHID_HasUsage function 162
USBHostCDCTasks 133	USBHostHIDDeviceDetect 162
USBHostCDCTasks function 133	USBHostHIDDeviceDetect function 162
USBHostCDCTransfer 134	USBHostHIDDeviceStatus 163
USBHostCDCTransfer function 134	USBHostHIDDeviceStatus function 163
USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete 134	USBHostHIDEventHandler 163
USBHostCDCTransferIsComplete function 134	USBHostHIDEventHandler function 163
USBHostClearEndpointErrors 100	USBHostHIDInitialize 164
USBHostClearEndpointErrors function 100	USBHostHIDInitialize function 164
USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver 101	USBHostHIDRead 169
USBHostDeviceSpecificClientDriver function 101	USBHostHIDRead macro 169
USBHostDeviceStatus 101	USBHostHIDResetDevice 164
USBHostDeviceStatus function 101	USBHostHIDResetDevice function 164
USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor 112	USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait 165
USBHostGetCurrentConfigurationDescriptor macro 112	USBHostHIDResetDeviceWithWait function 165

---

USBHostHIDTasks 165	USBHostReadIsochronous 114
USBHostHIDTasks function 165	USBHostReadIsochronous macro 114
USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer 166	USBHostResetDevice 106
USBHostHIDTerminateTransfer function 166	USBHostResetDevice function 106
USBHostHIDTransfer 166	USBHostResumeDevice 106
USBHostHIDTransfer function 166	USBHostResumeDevice function 106
USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete 167	USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration 107
USBHostHIDTransferIsComplete function 167	USBHostSetDeviceConfiguration function 107
USBHostHIDWrite 170	USBHostSetNAKTimeout 107
USBHostHIDWrite macro 170	USBHostSetNAKTimeout function 107
USBHostInit 102	USBHostShutdown 108
USBHostInit function 102	USBHostShutdown function 108
USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate 103	USBHostSuspendDevice 108
USBHostIsochronousBuffersCreate function 103	USBHostSuspendDevice function 108
USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy 103	USBHostTasks 109
USBHostIsochronousBuffersDestroy function 103	USBHostTasks function 109
USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset 104	USBHostTerminateTransfer 110
USBHostIsochronousBuffersReset function 104	USBHostTerminateTransfer function 110
USBHostIssueDeviceRequest 104	USBHostTransferIsComplete 110
USBHostIssueDeviceRequest function 104	USBHostTransferIsComplete function 110
USBHostMSDDeviceStatus 195	USBHostVbusEvent 111
USBHostMSDDeviceStatus function 195	USBHostVbusEvent function 111
USBHostMSDEventHandler 195	USBHostWrite 111
USBHostMSDEventHandler function 195	USBHostWrite function 111
USBHostMSDInitialize 196	USBHostWriteIsochronous 115
USBHostMSDInitialize function 196	USBHostWriteIsochronous macro 115
USBHostMSDRead 199	USBINDataStageDeferred 57
USBHostMSDRead macro 199	USBINDataStageDeferred function 57
USBHostMSDResetDevice 196	USBIsBusSuspended 57
USBHostMSDResetDevice function 196	USBIsBusSuspended function 57
USBHostMSDTasks 197	USBIsDeviceSuspended 58
USBHostMSDTasks function 197	USBIsDeviceSuspended function 58
USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer 198	USBMSDInit 91
USBHostMSDTerminateTransfer function 198	USBMSDInit function 91
USBHostMSDTransfer 198	USBOUTDataStageDeferred 59
USBHostMSDTransfer function 198	USBOUTDataStageDeferred function 59
USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete 199	USBRxOnePacket 59
USBHostMSDTransferIsComplete function 199	USBRxOnePacket function 59
USBHostMSDWrite 200	USBSoftDetach 60
USBHostMSDWrite macro 200	USBSoftDetach function 60
USBHostRead 105	USBStallEndpoint 60
USBHostRead function 105	USBStallEndpoint function 60

USBTransferOnePacket 61

USBTransferOnePacket function 61

USBTxOnePacket 62

USBTxOnePacket function 62

USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady 83

USBUSARTIsTxTrfReady macro 83

Using a Code Signing Certificate to Sign Driver Packages 293

Using a Diff Tool 288

Using breakpoints in USB host applications 285

Using Linux MultiMedia Studio (LMMS) [Linux and Windows Computers] 227

Using Older Drivers with Windows 8 290

## V

v2.10 18

v2.11 18

v2.7 25

v2.7a 25

v2.8 24

v2.9 23

v2.9a 23

v2.9b 22

v2.9c 22

v2.9d 21

v2.9e 21

v2.9f 20

v2.9g 20

v2.9h 19

v2.9i 19

v2.9j 19

Vendor Class (Generic) Function Driver 93

Vendor IDs (VID) and Product IDs (PID) 288

## W

What are "Signed" Drivers? 289

What's Next 27

Windows 261, 273

## X

XC8 Compiler 245